

# **VOLUME ONE**

**PROJECT MANUAL  
CONTAINING  
ARCHITECTURAL  
SPECIFICATIONS AND  
RELATED DOCUMENTS**



## **100% CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS**

### **PARKING GARAGE**

**LOUIS A. JOHNSON VA MEDICAL CENTER  
ONE MEDICAL CENTER DRIVE  
CLARKSBURG, WV 26301**

---

**VAMC PROJECT NO. 540-320**

**IKM PROJECT NO. 10-163**



**IKM INCORPORATED  
ARCHITECTS  
ONE PPG PLACE  
PITTSBURGH, PA 15222**

**Issued 10 July, 2015**

DEPARTMENT OF VETERANS AFFAIRS  
VHA MASTER SPECIFICATIONS  
VAMC Clarksburg Parking Garage  
2015-06-04  
VA Project #540-320

TABLE OF CONTENTS  
Section 00 01 10

	<b>DIVISION 00 - SPECIAL SECTIONS</b>	<b>DATE</b>
00 01 15	List of Drawing Sheets	05-15
	Project Directory	05-15
	<b>DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS</b>	
01 00 00	General Requirements	05-15
01 32 16.13	Network Analysis Schedules	05-15
01 33 23	Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples	05-15
01 42 19	Reference Standards	05-15
01 45 29	Testing Laboratory Services	05-15
01 57 19	Temporary Environmental Controls	05-15
01 74 19	Construction Waste Management	05-15
	<b>DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS</b>	
02 41 00	Demolition	05-15
	<b>DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE</b>	
03 30 00	Cast in Place Concrete	05-15
03 41 33	Precast Structural Pretension Concrete	05-15
03 45 00	Precast Architectural Concrete	05-15
	<b>DIVISION 04 - MASONRY</b>	
04 05 13	Masonry Mortaring	05-15
04 20 00	Unit Masonry	05-15
	<b>DIVISION 05 - METALS</b>	
05 12 00	Structural Steel Framing	05-15
05 31 00	Steel Decking	05-15
05 50 00	Metal Fabrications	05-15
05 51 00	Metal Stairs	05-15
	<b>DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES</b>	
06 10 00	Rough Carpentry	05-15
	<b>DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION</b>	
07 12 00	Built-Up Bituminous Waterproofing	05-15
07 19 16	Water-Repellent Coating	05-15
07 22 00	Roof and Deck Insulation	05-15
07 40 00	Roofing and Siding Panels	05-15
07 53 23	Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer Roofing	05-15
07 60 00	Flashing and Sheet Metal	05-15
07 72 00	Roof Accessories	05-15

07 92 00	Joint Sealants	05-15
07 95 13	Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies	05-15
	<b>DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS</b>	
08 11 13	Hollow Metal Doors and Frames	05-15
08 33 00	Coiling Doors and Grilles	05-15
08 41 13	Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts	05-15
08 44 13	Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls	05-15
08 71 00	Door Hardware	05-15
08 71 13	Automatic Door Operators	05-15
08 71 13.11	Low Energy Power Assist Door Operators	05-15
08 80 00	Glazing	05-15
08 90 00	Louvers and Vents	05-15
	<b>DIVISION 09 - FINISHES</b>	
09 06 00	Schedule for Finishes	05-15
09 22 16	Non-Structural Metal Framing	05-15
09 54 23	Linear Metal Ceilings	05-15
09 91 00	Painting	05-15
	<b>DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES</b>	
10 14 00	Signage	05-15
10 44 13	Fire Extinguisher Cabinets	05-15
	<b>DIVISION 14- CONVEYING EQUIPEMENT</b>	
14 21 00	Electric Traction Elevators	05-15
<b>VOLUME TWO</b>		
	<b>DIVISION 21- FIRE SUPPRESSION</b>	
21 05 11	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression	02-12
21 12 00	Fire-Suppression Standpipes	02-12
	<b>DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING</b>	
22 05 11	Common Work Results for Plumbing	02-12
22 05 19	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping	02-12
22 05 23	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping	02-12
22 07 11	Plumbing Insulation	02-12
22 11 00	Facility Water Distribution	02-12
22 14 00	Facility Storm Drainage	02-12
	<b>DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)</b>	
23 05 11	Common Work Results for HVAC	02-12
23 05 12	General Motor Requirements for HVAC and Steam Generation Equipment	02-12
23 05 41	Noise and Vibration Control for HVAC Piping and Equipment	02-12
23 31 00	HVAC Ducts and Casings	02-12
23 34 00	HVAC Fans	02-12
23 37 00	Air Outlets and Inlets	02-12
23 82 00	Convection Heating and Cooling Units	02-12

	<b>DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL</b>	
26 05 11	Requirements for Electrical Installations	02-12
26 05 21	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables (600 Volts and Below)	02-12
26 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems	02-12
26 05 33	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems	02-12
26 05 41	Underground Electrical Construction	02-12
26 05 71	Electrical System Protective Device Study	02-12
26 05 72	Arc Flash Hazard Analysis Study	
26 08 00	Commissioning of Electrical Systems	02-12
26 09 23	Lighting Controls	02-12
26 22 00	Low-Voltage Transformers	02-12
26 24 16	Panelboards	02-12
26 27 26	Wiring Devices	02-12
26 29 11	Motor Starters	02-12
26 29 21	Disconnect Switches	02-12
26 36 23	Automatic Transfer Switches	02-12
26 41 00	Facility Lightning Protection	02-12
26 51 00	Interior Lighting	02-12
26 56 00	Exterior Lighting	02-12
	<b>DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS</b>	
27 05 11	Requirements for Communications Installations	02-12
27 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems	02-12
27 05 33	Raceways and Boxes for Communications Systems	02-12
27 08 00	Commissioning of Communications Systems	02-12
27 10 00	Structured Cabling	02-12
27 15 00	Communications Horizontal Cabling	02-12
27 52 31	Security Emergency Call, Duress Alarm, and Telecommunications	02-12
	<b>DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY</b>	
28 05 00	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security	02-12
28 05 13	Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security	02-12
28 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electronic Safety and Security	02-12
28 05 28.33	Conduits and Backboxes for Electronic Safety and Security	02-12
28 08 00	Commissioning of Electronic Safety and Security Systems	02-12
28 13 53	Security Access Detection	02-12
28 23 00	Video Surveillance	02-12
28 31 00	Fire Detection and Alarm	02-12
	<b>DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK</b>	
31 20 11	Earth Moving (Short Form)	02-12
31 63 26	Drilled Caissons	02-12
	<b>DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS</b>	
32 12 16	Asphalt Paving	02-12
32 17 23	Pavement Markings	02-12
	<b>DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES</b>	

33 10 00	Water Utilities	02-12
33 40 00	Storm Drainage Utilities	02-12

**SECTION 00 01 15**  
**LIST OF DRAWINGS**

The drawings listed below accompanying this specification form a part of the contract.

## Drawing No.

## Title

## SITE PLANNING

C001	General Notes
C100	Existing Site Survey
C101	Site Demolition Plan
C102	Site Plan
C500	Details
L101	Landscape Plan

**ARCHITECTURAL**

GI000	Cover Sheet
GI001	General Notes, Partition Types and Schedules
AS001	Site Plan - Architectural
AS002	Life Safety Plans
AS100	Ground Level Plan
AS101	Level 1 Plan
AS102	Level 2 Plan
AS103	Roof Plan
AS200	East and West Elevations
AS201	North and South Elevations
AS202	Window Elevations
AS300	Building Sections
AS301	Wall Sections and Details
AS302	Details
AS400	Stair A Plans and Sections
AS401	Stair B Plans and Sections
AS402	Elevator Plans and Sections
Underground Storage Tank Drawing (For Reference Only)	

**STRUCTURAL**

S000	General Notes, Abbreviations & Legends
S100	Foundation Plan
S101	Caission Location Plan

S102	Stair & Elevator Framing Plans, Details & Sections
S200	Foundation Typical Details
S201	Foundation Sections

**MECHANICAL**

H101	HVAC Ground Level Plan
H501	Mechanical Schedules, Symbols & General Notes

**PLUMBING**

P001	Plumbing Details, Symbols, Abbreviations & Schedules
P10G	Plumbing Ground Level Plan
P101	Plumbing First Level Plan
P102	Plumbing Second Level Plan
P103	Plumbing Third Level Plan
P104	Plumbing Roof Level Plan

**FIRE PROTECTION**

F001	Fire Protection Details, Symbols and Abbreviations
F101	Fire Protection Ground Level Plan
F102	Fire Protection - Typical 1 <sup>st</sup> Thru 3rd Level Plans
F301	Fire Protection Sections

**ELECTRICAL**

E001	Electrical Abbreviations
E002	Electrical Symbol Legends
E10G	Electrical Ground Level Lighting Plan
E101	Electrical First Level Lighting Plan
E102	Electrical Second Level Lighting Plan
E103	Electrical Third Level Lighting Plan
E104	Electrical Roof Level Lighting Plan
E20G	Electrical Ground Level Power and Signal Plan
E201	Electrical First Level Power and Signal Plan
E202	Electrical Second Level Power and Signal Plan
E203	Electrical Third Level Power and Signal Plan
E204	Electrical Roof Level Power and Signal Plan
E205	Bldgs One & CA First Floor Plan - Electrical
E206	Bldgs One & CA First Floor Plan - Electrical

E301	Electrical Single Line & Panelboard Schedules
E302	Lighting Fixture Schedule
E401	Electrical Lightning Protection Plan
E501	Electrical Details
E502	Electrical Details
E503	Electrical Details
E504	Electrical Wiring Diagrams

- - - E N D - - -



June 4, 2015

**VAMC Clarksburg, WV**  
**Parking Garage**  
**VA Project #540-320**  
**IKM Project #10-163**



architecture  
planning  
interior design

**Project Directory**

**Owner – Louis A. Johnson VA Medical Center**

John Bargo O 304-623-3461 x3560 [john.bargo@va.gov](mailto:john.bargo@va.gov)  
Chief Engineer C 304-476-8976  
One Medical Center Drive  
Clarksburg, WV 26301

Ron Mansfield O 304-623-346z x3858 [ronald.mansfield@va.gov](mailto:ronald.mansfield@va.gov)

**Architect – IKM Incorporated**

Jeff Brown O 412-281-1337 [jbrown@ikminc.com](mailto:jbrown@ikminc.com)  
C 412-303-8409

Jon Lusin O 412-281-1337 [jlusin@ikminc.com](mailto:jlusin@ikminc.com)

**Mechanical/Electrical Engineer – H.F. Lenz Company**

Donald Ditter, C.P.D. O 412.371.9073 [dditter@hflenz.com](mailto:dditter@hflenz.com)  
Senior Engineering Technician  
1051 Brinton Rd  
Pittsburgh, PA 15221

**Structural Engineer – Keystone Structural Solutions**

Tony L. Moscollic, PE O 412-369-9020 [tmoscollic@kss-eng.com](mailto:tmoscollic@kss-eng.com)  
Vice President  
8150 Perry Highway  
Suite 302  
Pittsburgh, PA 15237

**Civil Engineer / Site Survey – Alpha Associates, Inc.**

Charles B. Branch, PE O 304-296-8216 x115 [cbranch@alphaaec.com](mailto:cbranch@alphaaec.com)  
Principal C 304-376-4179  
209 Prairie Avenue  
Morgantown, WV 26501

**Geo-Technical Engineer – Garvin Boward Beitko Engineering, Inc.**

Joseph F. Boward, PE O 412-922-4440 x1 [jboward@garvinbowardeng.com](mailto:jboward@garvinbowardeng.com)  
Principal Engineer C 412-352-1443  
180 Bilmar Drive  
Suite IV  
Pittsburgh, PA 15205

**Environmental Consultant – Langan Engineering and Environmental Services**

Michael Szura, CLA, ASLA O 201-398-4513 [mszura@langan.com](mailto:mszura@langan.com)  
Senior Associate C 201-755-3888  
30 South 17<sup>th</sup> Street  
Suite 1300  
Philadelphia, PA 19103

Dave Charette O 724-514-5100 [dcharette@langan.com](mailto:dcharette@langan.com)  
601 Technology Drive  
Suite 200  
Canonsburg, PA 15317

IKM Incorporated

One PPG Place  
Pittsburgh, PA 15222  
T: 412-281-1337  
F: 412-281-4639

[www.ikminc.com](http://www.ikminc.com)

**SECTION 01 00 00  
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1.1 GENERAL INTENTION .....	1
1.2 STATEMENT OF BID ITEM(S) .....	2
1.3 SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONTRACTOR .....	3
1.4 construction security requirements.....	3
1.5 FIRE SAFETY.....	5
1.6 OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS.....	7
1.7 ALTERATIONS.....	11
1.8 DISPOSAL AND RETENTION.....	11
1.9 PROTECTION OF EXISTING VEGETATION, STRUCTURES, EQUIPMENT, UTILITIES, AND IMPROVEMENTS .....	12
1.10 RESTORATION.....	13
1.11 PHYSICAL DATA .....	14
1.12 PROFESSIONAL SURVEYING SERVICES .....	15
1.13 LAYOUT OF WORK.....	15
1.14 As-Built Drawings.....	17
1.15 USE OF ROADWAYS.....	17
1.16 TEMPORARY USE OF MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT.....	17
1.17 TEMPORARY USE OF NEW ELEVATORS.....	18
1.18 TEMPORARY TOILETS.....	20
1.19 AVAILABILITY AND USE OF UTILITY SERVICES.....	20
1.20 NEW TELEPHONE EQUIPMENT .....	21

1.21 TESTS.....	21
1.22 INSTRUCTIONS.....	22
1.23 CONSTRUCTION SIGN.....	23
1.24 SAFETY SIGN.....	23
1.25 photographic documentation.....	24
1.26 FINAL ELEVATION Digital Images.....	28
1.27 HISTORIC PRESERVATION.....	29

**SECTION 01 00 00  
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

**1.1 GENERAL INTENTION**

- A. Contractor shall completely prepare site for building operations, including demolition and removal of existing structures, and furnish labor and materials and perform work for construction of new parking garage, including new building, with site improvements as required by drawings and specifications.
- B. Visits to the site by Bidders may be made only by appointment with the Medical Center Engineering Officer.
- C. Offices of IKM Incorporated, One PPG Place, Pittsburgh, PA 15222 \_\_\_\_\_, as Architect-Engineers, will render certain technical services during construction. Such services shall be considered as advisory to the Government and shall not be construed as expressing or implying a contractual act of the Government without affirmations by Contracting Officer or his duly authorized representative.
- D. Before placement and installation of work subject to tests by testing laboratory retained by Department of Veterans Affairs, the Contractor shall notify the Resident Engineer in sufficient time to enable testing laboratory personnel to be present at the site in time for proper taking and testing of specimens and field inspection. Such prior notice shall be not less than three work days unless otherwise designated by the Resident Engineer.
- E. All employees of general contractor and subcontractors shall comply with VA security management program and obtain permission of the VA police, be identified by project and employer, and restricted from unauthorized access.
- F. Prior to commencing work, general contractor shall provide proof that an OSHA certified "competent person" (CP) (29 CFR 1926.20(b)(2)) will maintain a presence at the work site whenever the general or subcontractors are present.

## G. Training:

1. OSHA 10-hour training and other relevant competency training as determined by the VA COR is required for all workers on site and the OSHA 30-hour training is required for all Trade Competent Persons (CPs)
2. Submit training records of all such employees for approval before the start of work.

**1.2 STATEMENT OF BID ITEM(S)**

- A. ITEM I, GENERAL CONSTRUCTION: Work includes general construction, alterations, roads, walks, grading, drainage, mechanical and electrical work, utility systems, elevators necessary removal of existing structures and construction and certain other items.
- B. ALTERNATE NO.1: Deduct time, material and fees to delete four (4) overhead coiling grilles (#100C, #100D, #100E, and #100F) completely.
- C. ALTERNATE NO. 2: Deduct time, material and fees required to provide Fluorofinish metal curtain wall system in lieu of the original Bid Documents. \_\_\_\_\_
- D. ALTERNATE NO. 3: Deduct Time, Material and Fees required to delete military emblems \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- E. ALTERNATE NO. 4: Deduct Time and Material and Fees required to delete the screen wall completely. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- F. ALTERNATE NO. 5: Deduct time, material, and fees required to build Level Two of the Garage, including savings for all architectural, structural, electrical and plumbing work. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- G. Guarantee Period of Services for Elevator Maintenance: Provide Cost for maintenance of elevators for period of one (1) year as outlined in Specification Section 14 21 11.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**1.3 SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONTRACTOR**

- A. Drawings, specifications and contract documents may be obtained from the website where the solicitation is posted. Additional copies will be at Contractor's expense.

**1.4 CONSTRUCTION SECURITY REQUIREMENTS**

A. Security Plan:

1. The security plan defines both physical and administrative security procedures that will remain effective for the entire duration of the project.
2. The General Contractor is responsible for assuring that all sub-contractors working on the project and their employees also comply with these regulations.

B. Security Procedures:

1. General Contractor's employees shall not enter the project site without appropriate badge. They may also be subject to inspection of their personal effects when entering or leaving the project site.
2. For working outside the "regular hours" as defined in the contract, The General Contractor shall give 3 days notice to the Contracting Officer so that security arrangements can be provided for the employees. This notice is separate from any notices required for utility shutdown described later in this section.
3. No photography of VApremises is allowed without written permission of the Contracting Officer.
4. VA reserves the right to close down or shut down the project site and order General Contractor's employees off the premises in the event of a national emergency. The General Contractor may return to the site only with the written approval of the Contracting Officer.

C. Key Control:

1. The General Contractor shall provide duplicate keys and lock combinations to the Resident Engineer for the purpose of security

05-2015

inspections of every area of project including tool boxes and parked machines and take any emergency action.

2. The General Contractor shall turn over all permanent lock cylinders to the VA locksmith for permanent installation. See Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE and coordinate.

D. Document Control:

1. Before starting any work, the General Contractor/Sub Contractors shall submit an electronic security memorandum describing the approach to following goals and maintaining confidentiality of "sensitive information".
2. The General Contractor is responsible for safekeeping of all drawings, project manual and other project information. This information shall be shared only with those with a specific need to accomplish the project.
3. Certain documents, sketches, videos or photographs and drawings may be marked "Law Enforcement Sensitive" or "Sensitive Unclassified". Secure such information in separate containers and limit the access to only those who will need it for the project. Return the information to the Contracting Officer upon request.
4. These security documents shall not be removed or transmitted from the project site without the written approval of Contracting Officer.
5. All paper waste or electronic media such as CD's and diskettes shall be shredded and destroyed in a manner acceptable to the VA.
6. Notify Contracting Officer and Site Security Officer immediately when there is a loss or compromise of "sensitive information".
7. All electronic information shall be stored in specified location following VA standards and procedures using an Engineering Document Management Software (EDMS).
  - a. Security, access and maintenance of all project drawings, both scanned and electronic shall be performed and tracked through the EDMS system.

05-2015

- b. "Sensitive information" including drawings and other documents may be attached to e-mail provided all VA encryption procedures are followed.

E. Motor Vehicle Restrictions

1. Vehicle authorization request shall be required for any vehicle entering the site and such request shall be submitted 24 hours before the date and time of access. Access shall be restricted to picking up and dropping off materials and supplies.
2. Separate permits shall be issued for General Contractor and its employees for parking in designated areas only.

**1.5 FIRE SAFETY**

- A. Applicable Publications: Publications listed below form part of this Article to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designations only.

1. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

E84-2009.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building  
Materials

2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

10-2010.....Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers

30-2008.....Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code

51B-2009.....Standard for Fire Prevention During Welding,  
Cutting and Other Hot Work

70-2011.....National Electrical Code

241-2009.....Standard for Safeguarding Construction,  
Alteration, and Demolition Operations

3. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):

29 CFR 1926.....Safety and Health Regulations for Construction



05-2015

- B. Fire Safety Plan: Establish and maintain a fire protection program in accordance with 29 CFR 1926. Prior to start of work, prepare a plan detailing project-specific fire safety measures, including periodic status reports, and submit to Resident Engineer and Facility Safety Officer for review for compliance with contract requirements in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES Prior to any worker for the contractor or subcontractors beginning work, they shall undergo a safety briefing provided by the general contractor's competent person per OSHA requirements. This briefing shall include information on the construction limits, VAMC safety guidelines, means of egress, break areas, work hours, locations of restrooms, use of VAMC equipment, etc. Documentation shall be provided to the Resident Engineer that individuals have undergone contractor's safety briefing.
- C. Site and Building Access: Maintain free and unobstructed access to facility emergency services and for fire, police and other emergency response forces in accordance with NFPA 241.
- D. Separate temporary facilities, such as trailers, storage sheds, and dumpsters, from existing buildings and new construction by distances in accordance with NFPA 241. For small facilities with less than 6 m (20 feet) exposing overall length, separate by 3m (10 feet).
- F. Temporary Heating and Electrical: Install, use and maintain installations in accordance with 29 CFR 1926, NFPA 241 and NFPA 70.
- G. Means of Egress: Do not block exiting for occupied buildings, including paths from exits to roads. Minimize disruptions and coordinate with Resident Engineer and facility Safety Officer.
- H. Egress Routes for Construction Workers: Maintain free and unobstructed egress. Inspect daily. Report findings and corrective actions weekly to Resident Engineer and facility Safety Officer.
- I. Fire Extinguishers: Provide and maintain extinguishers in construction areas and temporary storage areas in accordance with 29 CFR 1926, NFPA 241 and NFPA 10.

05-2015

- J. Flammable and Combustible Liquids: Store, dispense and use liquids in accordance with 29 CFR 1926, NFPA 241 and NFPA 30.
- K. Standpipes: Install and extend standpipes up with each floor in accordance with 29 CFR 1926 and NFPA 241. Do not charge wet standpipes subject to freezing until weather protected.
- L. Smoke Detectors: Prevent accidental operation. Remove temporary covers at end of work operations each day. Coordinate with Resident Engineer and facility Safety Officer.
- M. Hot Work: Perform and safeguard hot work operations in accordance with NFPA 241 and NFPA 51B. Coordinate with Resident Engineer Obtain permits from facility Safety Officer at least \_\_24\_\_ hours in advance Designate contractor's responsible project-site fire prevention program manager to permit hot work.
- N. Fire Hazard Prevention and Safety Inspections: Inspect entire construction areas weekly. Coordinate with, and report findings and corrective actions weekly to Resident Engineer and facility Safety Officer.
- O. Smoking: Smoking is prohibited in and adjacent to construction areas inside existing buildings and additions under construction. In separate and detached buildings under construction, smoking is prohibited except in designated smoking rest areas.
- P. Dispose of waste and debris in accordance with NFPA 241. Remove from buildings daily.
- Q. Perform other construction, alteration and demolition operations in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.

#### **1.6 OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS**

- A. The Contractor shall confine all operations (including storage of materials) on Government premises to areas authorized or approved by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall hold and save the Government, its officers and agents, free and harmless from liability of any nature occasioned by the Contractor's performance.

05-2015

- B. Temporary buildings (e.g., storage sheds, shops, offices) and utilities may be erected by the Contractor only with the approval of the Contracting Officer and shall be built with labor and materials furnished by the Contractor without expense to the Government. The temporary buildings and utilities shall remain the property of the Contractor and shall be removed by the Contractor at its expense upon completion of the work. With the written consent of the Contracting Officer, the buildings and utilities may be abandoned and need not be removed.
- C. The Contractor shall, under regulations prescribed by the Contracting Officer, use only established roadways, or use temporary roadways constructed by the Contractor when and as authorized by the Contracting Officer. When materials are transported in prosecuting the work, vehicles shall not be loaded beyond the loading capacity recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle or prescribed by any Federal, State, or local law or regulation. When it is necessary to cross curbs or sidewalks, the Contractor shall protect them from damage. The Contractor shall repair or pay for the repair of any damaged curbs, sidewalks, or roads.
- D. Working space and space available for storing materials shall be as determined by the Resident Engineer.
- E. Execute work in such a manner as to interfere as little as possible with work being done by others. Keep roads clear of construction materials, debris, standing construction equipment and vehicles at all times.
- F. Execute work so as to interfere as little as possible with normal functioning of Medical Center as a whole, including operations of utility services, fire protection systems and any existing equipment, and with work being done by others. Use of equipment and tools that transmit vibrations and noises through the building structure, are not permitted in buildings that are occupied, during construction, jointly by patients or medical personnel, and Contractor's personnel, except as permitted by Resident Engineer where required by limited working space.
1. Do not store materials and equipment in other than assigned areas.

05-2015

2. Schedule delivery of materials and equipment to immediate construction working areas in use by Department of Veterans Affairs in quantities sufficient for not more than two work days. Provide unobstructed access to Medical Center areas required to remain in operation.
  3. Contractor shall take all measures and provide all material necessary for protecting property in affected areas of construction against dust and debris, so that equipment and affected areas to be used in the Medical Centers operations will not be hindered. Contractor shall permit access to Department of Veterans Affairs personnel and patients through other construction areas which serve as routes of access to such affected areas and equipment. Coordinate alteration work in areas occupied by Department of Veterans Affairs so that Medical Center operations will continue during the construction period.
- G. Construction Fence: Before construction operations begin, Contractor shall provide a chain link construction fence, 2.1m (seven feet) minimum height, around the construction area indicated on the drawings. Provide gates as required for access with necessary hardware, including hasps and padlocks. Fasten fence fabric to terminal posts with tension bands and to line posts and top and bottom rails with tie wires spaced at maximum 375mm (15 inches). Bottom of fences shall extend to 25mm (one inch) above grade. Remove the fence when directed by Resident Engineer.
1. Contractor shall maintain in operating condition existing fire protection and alarm equipment. In connection with fire alarm equipment, Contractor shall make arrangements for pre-inspection of site with Fire Department or Company (Department of Veterans Affairs or municipal) whichever will be required to respond to an alarm from Contractor's employee or watchman.
- H. Utilities Services: Maintain existing utility services for Medical Center at all times. Provide temporary facilities, labor, materials, equipment, connections, and utilities to assure uninterrupted services. Where necessary to cut existing water, steam, gases, sewer or air pipes, or conduits, wires, cables, etc. of utility services or of fire protection systems and communications systems (including telephone),

05-2015

they shall be cut and capped at suitable places where shown; or, in absence of such indication, where directed by Resident Engineer.

1. No utility service such as water, gas, steam, sewers or electricity, or fire protection systems and communications systems may be interrupted without prior approval of Resident Engineer. Electrical work shall be accomplished with all affected circuits or equipment de-energized. When an electrical outage cannot be accomplished, work on any energized circuits or equipment shall not commence without the Medical Center Director's prior knowledge and written approval. Refer to specification Sections 26 05 11, REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS, 27 05 11 REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS INSTALLATIONS and 28 05 11, REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY INSTALLATIONS for additional requirements.
2. Contractor shall submit a request to interrupt any such services to Resident Engineer, in writing, 48 hours in advance of proposed interruption. Request shall state reason, date, exact time of, and approximate duration of such interruption.
3. Contractor will be advised (in writing) of approval of request, or of which other date and/or time such interruption will cause least inconvenience to operations of Medical Center Cemetery. Interruption time approved by Medical Center may occur at other than Contractor's normal working hours.
4. Major interruptions of any system must be requested, in writing, at least 15 calendar days prior to the desired time and shall be performed as directed by the Resident Engineer.
5. In case of a contract construction emergency, service will be interrupted on approval of Resident Engineer. Such approval will be confirmed in writing as soon as practical.
6. Whenever it is required that a connection fee be paid to a public utility provider for new permanent service to the construction project, for such items as water, sewer, electricity, gas or steam, payment of such fee shall be the responsibility of the Government and not the Contractor.

05-2015

- I. Abandoned Lines: All service lines such as wires, cables, conduits, ducts, pipes and the like, and their supports, which are to be abandoned but are not required to be entirely removed, shall be sealed, capped or plugged. The lines shall not be capped in finished areas, but shall be removed and sealed, capped or plugged..
- J. To minimize interference of construction activities with flow of Medical Center traffic, comply with the following:
  - 1. Keep roads, walks and entrances to grounds, to parking and to occupied areas of buildings clear of construction materials, debris and standing construction equipment and vehicles. Wherever excavation for new utility lines cross existing roads, at least one lane must be open to traffic at all times.
  - 2. Method and scheduling of required cutting, altering and removal of existing roads, walks and entrances must be approved by the Resident Engineer.
- K. Coordinate the work for this contract with other construction operations as directed by Resident Engineer. This includes the scheduling of traffic and the use of roadways, as specified in Article, USE OF ROADWAYS.

#### **1.7 ALTERATIONS**

- A. Survey: Before any work is started, the Contractor shall make a thorough survey with the Resident Engineer VA grounds in which alterations occur and areas which are anticipated routes of access, and furnish a report, signed by both to the Contracting Officer.
- B. Protection: Provide the following protective measures:
  - 1. Temporary protection against damage for portions of existing structures and grounds where work is to be done, materials handled and equipment moved and/or relocated.

#### **1.8 DISPOSAL AND RETENTION**

- A. Materials and equipment accruing from work removed and from demolition of buildings or structures, or parts thereof, shall be disposed of as follows:

05-2015

1. Reserved items which are to remain property of the Government are noted on drawings or in specifications. Items that remain property of the Government shall be removed or dislodged from present locations in such a manner as to prevent damage which would be detrimental to re-installation and reuse. Store such items where directed by Resident Engineer.
2. Items not reserved shall become property of the Contractor and be removed by Contractor from Medical Center.

**1.9 PROTECTION OF EXISTING VEGETATION, STRUCTURES, EQUIPMENT, UTILITIES, AND IMPROVEMENTS**

- A. The Contractor shall preserve and protect all structures, equipment, and vegetation (such as trees, shrubs, and grass) on or adjacent to the work site, which are not to be removed and which do not unreasonably interfere with the work required under this contract. The Contractor shall only remove trees when specifically authorized to do so, and shall avoid damaging vegetation that will remain in place. If any limbs or branches of trees are broken during contract performance, or by the careless operation of equipment, or by workmen, the Contractor shall trim those limbs or branches with a clean cut and paint the cut with a tree-pruning compound as directed by the Contracting Officer.
- B. The Contractor shall protect from damage all existing improvements and utilities at or near the work site and on adjacent property of a third party, the locations of which are made known to or should be known by the Contractor. The Contractor shall repair any damage to those facilities, including those that are the property of a third party, resulting from failure to comply with the requirements of this contract or failure to exercise reasonable care in performing the work. If the Contractor fails or refuses to repair the damage promptly, the Contracting Officer may have the necessary work performed and charge the cost to the Contractor.
- C. Refer to Section 01 57 19, TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS, for additional requirements on protecting vegetation, soils and the environment. Refer to Articles, "Alterations", "Restoration", and "Operations and Storage Areas" for additional instructions concerning repair of damage to structures and site improvements.

D. Refer to FAR clause 52.236-7, "Permits and Responsibilities," which is included in General Conditions. A National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit is required for this project. The Contractor is considered an "operator" under the permit and has extensive responsibility for compliance with permit requirements. VA will make the permit application available at the (appropriate medical center) office. The apparent low bidder, contractor and affected subcontractors shall furnish all information and certifications that are required to comply with the permit process and permit requirements. Many of the permit requirements will be satisfied by completing construction as shown and specified. Some requirements involve the Contractor's method of operations and operations planning and the Contractor is responsible for employing best management practices. The affected activities often include, but are not limited to the following:

- Designating areas for equipment maintenance and repair;
- Providing waste receptacles at convenient locations and provide regular collection of wastes;
- Locating equipment wash down areas on site, and provide appropriate control of wash-waters;
- Providing protected storage areas for chemicals, paints, solvents, fertilizers, and other potentially toxic materials; and
- Providing adequately maintained sanitary facilities.

#### **1.10 RESTORATION**

A. Remove, cut, alter, replace, patch and repair existing work as necessary to install new work. Except as otherwise shown or specified, do not cut, alter or remove any structural work, and do not disturb any ducts, plumbing, steam, gas, or electric work without approval of the Resident Engineer. Existing work to be altered or extended and that is found to be defective in any way, shall be reported to the Resident Engineer before it is disturbed. Materials and workmanship used in restoring work, shall conform in type and quality to that of original existing construction, except as otherwise shown or specified.



05-2015

- B. Upon completion of contract, deliver work complete and undamaged. Existing work (lawns, paving, roads, walks, etc.) disturbed or removed as a result of performing required new work, shall be patched, repaired, reinstalled, or replaced with new work, and refinished and left in as good condition as existed before commencing work.
- C. At Contractor's own expense, Contractor shall immediately restore to service and repair any damage caused by Contractor's workmen to existing piping and conduits, wires, cables, etc., of utility services or of fire protection systems and communications systems (including telephone) which are indicated on drawings and which are not scheduled for discontinuance or abandonment.
- D. Expense of repairs to such utilities and systems not shown on drawings or locations of which are unknown will be covered by adjustment to contract time and price in accordance with clause entitled "CHANGES" (FAR 52.243-4 and VAAR 852.236-88) and "DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS" (FAR 52.236-2).

#### **1.11 PHYSICAL DATA**

- A. Data and information furnished or referred to below is for the Contractor's information. The Government shall not be responsible for any interpretation of or conclusion drawn from the data or information by the Contractor.
  - 1. The indications of physical conditions on the drawings and in the specifications are the result of site investigations by Barvin Boward Beitko Engineering, Inc. 180 Bilmar Drive, Suite IV. Pittsburgh, PA 15205.
- B. Subsurface conditions have been developed by core borings and test pits. Logs of subsurface exploration are shown diagrammatically on drawings.
- C. A copy of the soil report will be made available for inspection by bidders upon request to the Engineering Officer at the VA Medical Center, and shall be considered part of the contract documents.
- D. Government does not guarantee that other materials will not be encountered nor that proportions, conditions or character of several materials will not vary from those indicated by explorations. Bidders

are expected to examine site of work and logs of borings; and, after investigation, decide for themselves character of materials and make their bids accordingly. Upon proper application to Department of Veterans Affairs, bidders will be permitted to make subsurface explorations of their own at site.

#### **1.12 PROFESSIONAL SURVEYING SERVICES**

A registered professional land surveyor or registered civil engineer whose services are retained and paid for by the Contractor shall perform services specified herein and in other specification sections. The Contractor shall certify that the land surveyor or civil engineer is not one who is a regular employee of the Contractor, and that the land surveyor or civil engineer has no financial interest in this contract.

#### **1.13 LAYOUT OF WORK**

- A. The Contractor shall lay out the work from Government established base lines and bench marks, indicated on the drawings, and shall be responsible for all measurements in connection with the layout. The Contractor shall furnish, at Contractor's own expense, all stakes, templates, platforms, equipment, tools, materials, and labor required to lay out any part of the work. The Contractor shall be responsible for executing the work to the lines and grades that may be established or indicated by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall also be responsible for maintaining and preserving all stakes and other marks established by the Contracting Officer until authorized to remove them. If such marks are destroyed by the Contractor or through Contractor's negligence before their removal is authorized, the Contracting Officer may replace them and deduct the expense of the replacement from any amounts due or to become due to the Contractor.
- B. Establish and plainly mark center lines for the building and such other lines and grades that are reasonably necessary to properly assure that location, orientation, and elevations established for the structure and parking lots are in accordance with lines and elevations shown on contract drawings.

- C. Following completion of general mass excavation and before any other permanent work is performed, establish and plainly mark (through use of appropriate batter boards or other means) sufficient additional survey control points or system of points as may be necessary to assure proper alignment, orientation, and grade of all major features of work. Survey shall include, but not be limited to, location of lines and grades of footings, exterior walls, center lines of columns in both directions, major utilities and elevations of floor slabs:
1. Such additional survey control points or system of points thus established shall be checked and certified by a registered land surveyor or registered civil engineer. Furnish such certification to the Resident Engineer before any work (such as footings, floor slabs, columns, walls, utilities and other major controlling features) is placed.
- D. During progress of work, and particularly as work progresses from floor to floor, Contractor shall have line grades and plumbness of all major form work checked and certified by a registered land surveyor or registered civil engineer as meeting requirements of contract drawings. Furnish such certification to the Resident Engineer before any major items of concrete work are placed. In addition, Contractor shall furnish to the Resident Engineer certificates from a registered land surveyor or registered civil engineer that the following work is complete in every respect as required by contract drawings.
1. Lines of each building and/or addition.
  2. Elevations of bottoms of footings and tops of floors of each building and/or addition.
  3. Lines and elevations of sewers and of all outside distribution systems.
  5. Lines of elevations of all swales and interment areas.
  6. Lines and elevations of roads, streets and parking lots.

- E. Whenever changes from contract drawings are made in line or grading requiring certificates, record such changes on a reproducible drawing bearing the registered land surveyor or registered civil engineer seal, and forward these drawings upon completion of work to Resident Engineer.
- F. The Contractor shall perform the surveying and layout work of this and other articles and specifications in accordance with the provisions of Article "Professional Surveying Services".

#### **1.14 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS**

- A. The contractor shall maintain two full size sets of as-built drawings which will be kept current during construction of the project, to include all contract changes, modifications and clarifications.
- B. All variations shall be shown in the same general detail as used in the contract drawings. To insure compliance, as-built drawings shall be made available for the Resident Engineer's review, as often as requested.
- C. Contractor shall deliver two approved completed sets of as-built drawings to the Resident Engineer within 15 calendar days after each completed phase and after the acceptance of the project by the Resident Engineer.
- D. Paragraphs A, B, & C shall also apply to all shop drawings.

#### **1.15 USE OF ROADWAYS**

- A. For hauling, use only established public roads and roads on Medical Center property and, when authorized by the Resident Engineer. When necessary to cross curbing, sidewalks, or similar construction, they must be protected by well-constructed bridges.

#### **1.16 TEMPORARY USE OF MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT**

- A. Use of new installed mechanical and electrical equipment to provide heat, ventilation, plumbing, light and power will be permitted subject to compliance with the following provisions:
  - 1. Permission to use each unit or system must be given by Resident Engineer. If the equipment is not installed and maintained in accordance with the following provisions, the Resident Engineer will withdraw permission for use of the equipment.

05-2015

2. Electrical installations used by the equipment shall be completed in accordance with the drawings and specifications to prevent damage to the equipment and the electrical systems, i.e. transformers, relays, circuit breakers, fuses, conductors, motor controllers and their overload elements shall be properly sized, coordinated and adjusted. Voltage supplied to each item of equipment shall be verified to be correct and it shall be determined that motors are not overloaded. The electrical equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned before using it and again immediately before final inspection including vacuum cleaning and wiping clean interior and exterior surfaces.
  3. Units shall be properly lubricated, balanced, and aligned. Vibrations must be eliminated.
  4. Automatic temperature control systems for preheat coils shall function properly and all safety controls shall function to prevent coil freeze-up damage.
  5. The air filtering system utilized shall be that which is designed for the system when complete, and all filter elements shall be replaced at completion of construction and prior to testing and balancing of system.
  6. All components of heat production and distribution system, metering equipment, condensate returns, and other auxiliary facilities used in temporary service shall be cleaned prior to use; maintained to prevent corrosion internally and externally during use; and cleaned, maintained and inspected prior to acceptance by the Government.
- B. Prior to final inspection, the equipment or parts used which show wear and tear beyond normal, shall be replaced with identical replacements, at no additional cost to the Government.
- C. This paragraph shall not reduce the requirements of the mechanical and electrical specifications sections.

**1.17 TEMPORARY USE OF NEW ELEVATORS**

- A. The Contractor and his personnel shall be permitted use of new elevator(s) subject to the following provisions:

05-2015

1. Contractor shall make arrangements with the Resident Engineer for use of elevator(s). Contractor may obtain elevator(s) for exclusive use.
2. Prior to the use of elevator(s), the Contractor shall have the elevator(s) inspected and accepted by an ASME accredited, certified elevator safety inspector. The acceptance report shall be submitted to the Resident Engineer.
3. Submit to the Resident Engineer the schedule and procedures for maintaining equipment. Indicate the day or days of the week and total hours required for maintenance. A report shall be submitted to the Resident Engineer monthly indicating the type of maintenance conducted, hours used, and any repairs made to the elevator(s).
4. The Contractor shall be responsible for enforcing the maintenance procedures.
5. During temporary use of elevator(s) all repairs, equipment replacement and cost of maintenance shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
6. Personnel for operating elevator(s) shall not be provided by the Department of Veterans Affairs.
7. Contractor shall cover and provide maximum protection of the entire elevator(s) installation.
8. The Contractor shall arrange for the elevator company to perform operation of the elevator(s) so that an ASME accredited, certified elevator safety inspector can evaluate the equipment. The Contractor shall be responsible for any costs of the elevator company.
9. All elevator(s) parts worn or damaged during temporary use shall be removed and replaced with new parts. This shall be determined by an ASME accredited certified elevator safety inspector after temporary use and before acceptance by the Government. Submit report to the Resident Engineer for approval.
10. Elevator shall be tested as required by the testing section of the elevator(s) specifications before acceptance by the Department of Veterans Affairs.

**1.18 TEMPORARY TOILETS**

- A. Provide where directed, (for use of all Contractor's workmen) ample temporary sanitary toilet accommodations with suitable sewer and water connections; or, when approved by Resident Engineer, provide suitable dry closets where directed. Keep such places clean and free from flies, and all connections and appliances connected therewith are to be removed prior to completion of contract, and premises left perfectly clean.

**1.19 AVAILABILITY AND USE OF UTILITY SERVICES**

- A. The Contractor, at Contractor's expense and in a workmanlike manner satisfactory to the Contracting Officer, shall install and maintain all necessary temporary connections and distribution lines, and all meters required to measure the amount of electricity used for the purpose of determining charges. Before final acceptance of the work by the Government, the Contractor shall remove all the temporary connections, distribution lines, meters, and associated paraphernalia.
- B. Contractor shall install meters at Contractor's expense and furnish the Medical Center a monthly record of the Contractor's usage of electricity as hereinafter specified.
- C. Heat: Furnish temporary heat necessary to prevent injury to work and materials through dampness and cold. Use of open salamanders or any temporary heating devices which may be fire hazards or may smoke and damage finished work, will not be permitted.
- D. Electricity (for Construction and Testing): Furnish all temporary electric services.
  - 1. Obtain electricity by connecting to the Medical Center electrical distribution system. The Contractor shall meter and pay for electricity required for electric cranes and hoisting devices, electrical welding devices and any electrical heating devices providing temporary heat. Electricity for all other uses is available at no cost to the Contractor.
- E. Water (for Construction and Testing): Furnish temporary water service.

1. Obtain water by connecting to the Medical Center water distribution system. Provide reduced pressure backflow preventer at each connection. Water is available at no cost to the Contractor.
2. Maintain connections, pipe, fittings and fixtures and conserve water-use so none is wasted. Failure to stop leakage or other wastes will be cause for revocation (at Resident Engineer's discretion) of use of water from Medical Center's system.

#### **1.20 NEW TELEPHONE EQUIPMENT**

The contractor shall coordinate with the work of installation of telephone equipment by others. This work shall be completed before the building is turned over to VA.

#### **1.21 TESTS**

- A. Pre-test mechanical and electrical equipment and systems and make corrections required for proper operation of such systems before requesting final tests. Final test will not be conducted unless pre-tested.
- B. Conduct final tests required in various sections of specifications in presence of an authorized representative of the Contracting Officer. Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, equipment, instruments, and forms, to conduct and record such tests.
- C. Mechanical and electrical systems shall be balanced, controlled and coordinated. A system is defined as the entire complex which must be coordinated to work together during normal operation to produce results for which the system is designed. For example, air conditioning supply air is only one part of entire system which provides comfort conditions for a building. Other related components are return air, exhaust air, steam, chilled water, refrigerant, hot water, controls and electricity, etc. Another example of a complex which involves several components of different disciplines is a boiler installation. Efficient and acceptable boiler operation depends upon the coordination and proper operation of fuel, combustion air, controls, steam, feedwater, condensate and other related components.



- D. All related components as defined above shall be functioning when any system component is tested. Tests shall be completed within a reasonably short period of time during which operating and environmental conditions remain reasonably constant.
- E. Individual test result of any component, where required, will only be accepted when submitted with the test results of related components and of the entire system.

#### **1.22 INSTRUCTIONS**

- A. Contractor shall furnish Maintenance and Operating manuals and verbal instructions when required by the various sections of the specifications and as hereinafter specified.
- B. Manuals: Maintenance and operating manuals (four copies each) for each separate piece of equipment shall be delivered to the Resident Engineer coincidental with the delivery of the equipment to the job site. Manuals shall be complete, detailed guides for the maintenance and operation of equipment. They shall include complete information necessary for starting, adjusting, maintaining in continuous operation for long periods of time and dismantling and reassembling of the complete units and sub-assembly components. Manuals shall include an index covering all component parts clearly cross-referenced to diagrams and illustrations. Illustrations shall include "exploded" views showing and identifying each separate item. Emphasis shall be placed on the use of special tools and instruments. The function of each piece of equipment, component, accessory and control shall be clearly and thoroughly explained. All necessary precautions for the operation of the equipment and the reason for each precaution shall be clearly set forth. Manuals must reference the exact model, style and size of the piece of equipment and system being furnished. Manuals referencing equipment similar to but of a different model, style, and size than that furnished will not be accepted.
- C. Instructions: Contractor shall provide qualified, factory-trained manufacturers' representatives to give detailed instructions to assigned Department of Veterans Affairs personnel in the operation and complete maintenance for each piece of equipment. All such training will be at the job site. These requirements are more specifically detailed in the

various technical sections. Instructions for different items of equipment that are component parts of a complete system, shall be given in an integrated, progressive manner. All instructors for every piece of component equipment in a system shall be available until instructions for all items included in the system have been completed. This is to assure proper instruction in the operation of inter-related systems. All instruction periods shall be at such times as scheduled by the Resident Engineer and shall be considered concluded only when the Resident Engineer is satisfied in regard to complete and thorough coverage. The Department of Veterans Affairs reserves the right to request the removal of, and substitution for, any instructor who, in the opinion of the Resident Engineer, does not demonstrate sufficient qualifications in accordance with requirements for instructors above.

#### **1.23 CONSTRUCTION SIGN**

- A. Provide a Construction Sign where directed by the Resident Engineer. All wood members shall be of framing lumber. Cover sign frame with 0.7 mm (24 gage) galvanized sheet steel nailed securely around edges and on all bearings. Provide three 100 by 100 mm (4 inch by 4 inch) posts (or equivalent round posts) set 1200 mm (four feet) into ground. Set bottom of sign level at 900 mm (three feet) above ground and secure to posts with through bolts. Make posts full height of sign. Brace posts with 50 x 100 mm (two by four inch) material as directed.
- B. Paint all surfaces of sign and posts two coats of white gloss paint. Border and letters shall be of black gloss paint, except project title which shall be blue gloss paint.
- C. Maintain sign and remove it when directed by the Resident Engineer.
- D. Detail Drawing of construction sign showing required legend and other characteristics of sign is shown on the drawings.

#### **1.24 SAFETY SIGN**

- A. Provide a Safety Sign where directed by Resident Engineer. Face of sign shall be 19 mm (3/4 inch) thick exterior grade plywood. Provide two 100 mm by 100 mm (four by four inch) posts extending full height of sign and 900 mm (three feet) into ground. Set bottom of sign level at 1200 mm (four feet) above ground.

05-2015

- B. Paint all surfaces of Safety Sign and posts with one prime coat and two coats of white gloss paint. Letters and design shall be painted with gloss paint of colors noted.
- C. Maintain sign and remove it when directed by Resident Engineer.
- D. Standard Detail Drawing Number SD10000-02 (Found on VA TIL) of safety sign showing required legend and other characteristics of sign is // shown on the drawings.
- E. Post the number of accident free days on a daily basis.

Estimated Cost		No. of Photographs
Up to	\$250,000	50 to 100
" "	\$500,000	100 to 150
" "	\$1,000,000	150 to 200
" "	\$2,000,000	200 to 250
" "	\$5,000,000	250 to 300
" "	\$10,000,000	300 to 400
More than	\$10,000,000	400 to 500

#### 1.25 PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

- A. During the construction period through completion, provide photographic documentation of construction progress and at selected milestones including electronic indexing, navigation, storage and remote access to the documentation, as per these specifications. The commercial photographer or the subcontractor used for this work shall meet the following qualifications:
  - 1. Demonstrable minimum experience of three (3) years in operation providing documentation and advanced indexing/navigation systems

05-2015

including a representative portfolio of construction projects of similar type, size, duration and complexity as the Project.

2. Demonstrable ability to service projects throughout North America, which shall be demonstrated by a representative portfolio of active projects of similar type, size, duration and complexity as the Project.

B. Photographic documentation elements:

1. Each digital image shall be taken with a professional grade camera with minimum size of 6 megapixels (MP) capable of producing 200x250mm (8 x 10 inch) prints with a minimum of 2272 x 1704 pixels and 400x500mm (16 x 20 inch) prints with a minimum 2592 x 1944 pixels.
2. Indexing and navigation system shall utilize actual AUTOCAD construction drawings, making such drawings interactive on an on-line interface. For all documentation referenced herein, indexing and navigation must be organized by both time (date-stamped) and location throughout the project.
3. Documentation shall combine indexing and navigation system with inspection-grade digital photography designed to capture actual conditions throughout construction and at critical milestones. Documentation shall be accessible on-line through use of an internet connection. Documentation shall allow for secure multiple-user access, simultaneously, on-line.
4. Before construction, the building pad, adjacent streets, roadways, parkways, driveways, curbs, sidewalks, landscaping, adjacent utilities and adjacent structures surrounding the building pad and site shall be documented. Overlapping photographic techniques shall be used to insure maximum coverage. Indexing and navigation accomplished through interactive architectural drawings. If site work or pad preparation is extensive, this documentation may be required immediately before construction and at several pre-determined intervals before building work commences.
5. Construction progress for all trades shall be tracked at pre-determined intervals, but not less than once every thirty (30)

05-2015

- calendar days ("Progressions"). Progression documentation shall track both the exterior and interior construction of the building. Exterior Progressions shall track 360 degrees around the site and each building. Interior Progressions shall track interior improvements beginning when stud work commences and continuing until Project completion.
6. As-built condition of pre-slab utilities and site utilities shall be documented prior to pouring slabs, placing concrete and/or backfilling. This process shall include all underground and in-slab utilities within the building(s) envelope(s) and utility runs in the immediate vicinity of the building(s) envelope(s). This may also include utilities enclosed in slab-on-deck in multi-story buildings. Overlapping photographic techniques shall be used to insure maximum coverage. Indexing and navigation accomplished through interactive site utility plans.
  7. As-built conditions of mechanical, electrical, plumbing and all other systems shall be documented post-inspection and pre-insulation, sheet rock or dry wall installation. This process shall include all finished systems located in the walls and ceilings of all buildings at the Project. Overlapping photographic techniques shall be used to insure maximum coverage. Indexing and navigation accomplished through interactive architectural drawings.
  8. As-built conditions of exterior skin and elevations shall be documented with an increased concentration of digital photographs as directed by the Resident Engineer in order to capture pre-determined focal points, such as waterproofing, window flashing, radiused steel work, architectural or Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) detailing. Overlapping photographic techniques shall be used to insure maximum coverage. Indexing and navigation accomplished through interactive elevations or elevation details.
  9. As-built finished conditions of the interior of each building including floors, ceilings and walls shall be documented at certificate of occupancy or equivalent, or just prior to occupancy, or both, as directed by the Resident Engineer. Overlapping photographic techniques shall be used to insure maximum coverage.

05-2015

Indexing and navigation accomplished through interactive architectural drawings.

10. Miscellaneous events that occur during any Contractor site visit, or events captured by the Department of Veterans Affairs independently, shall be dated, labeled and inserted into a Section in the navigation structure entitled "Slideshows," allowing this information to be stored in the same "place" as the formal scope.
11. Customizable project-specific digital photographic documentation of other details or milestones. Indexing and navigation accomplished through interactive architectural plans.
12. Monthly (29 max) exterior progressions (360 degrees around the project) and slideshows (all elevations and building envelope). The slideshows allow for the inclusion of Department of Veterans Affairs pictures, aerial photographs, and timely images which do not fit into any regular monthly photopath.
13. Weekly (21 Max) Site Progressions - Photographic documentation capturing the project at different stages of construction. These progressions shall capture underground utilities, excavation, grading, backfill, landscaping and road construction throughout the duration of the project.
14. Regular (8 max) interior progressions of all walls of the entire project to begin at time of substantial framed or as directed by the Resident Engineer through to completion.
15. Detailed Exact-Built of all Slabs for all project slab pours just prior to placing concrete or as directed by the Resident Engineer.
16. Detailed Interior exact built overlapping photos of the entire building to include documentation of all mechanical, electrical and plumbing systems in every wall and ceiling, to be conducted after rough-ins are complete, just prior to insulation and or drywall, or as directed by Resident Engineer.

05-2015

17. Finished detailed Interior exact built overlapping photos of all walls, ceilings, and floors to be scheduled by Resident Engineer prior to occupancy.
18. In event a greater or lesser number of images than specified above are required by the Resident Engineer, adjustment in contract price will be made in accordance with clause entitled "CHANGES" (FAR 52.243-4 and VAAR 852.236-88).
- C. Images shall be taken by a commercial photographer and must show distinctly, at as large a scale as possible, all parts of work embraced in the picture.
- D. Coordination of photo shoots is accomplished through Resident Engineer. Contractor shall also attend construction team meetings as necessary. Contractor's operations team shall provide regular updates regarding the status of the documentation, including photo shoots concluded, the availability of new Progressions or Exact-Built viewable on-line and anticipated future shoot dates.
- E. Contractor shall provide all on-line domain/web hosting, security measures, and redundant server back-up of the documentation.
- F. Contractor shall provide technical support related to using the system or service.
- G. Upon completion of the project, final copies of the documentation (the "Permanent Record") with the indexing and navigation system embedded (and active) shall be provided in an electronic media format, typically a DVD or external hard-drive. Permanent Record shall have Building Information Modeling (BIM) interface capabilities. On-line access terminates upon delivery of the Permanent Record.

#### **1.26 FINAL ELEVATION DIGITAL IMAGES**

- A. A minimum of four (4) images of each elevation shall be taken with a minimum 6 MP camera, by a professional photographer with different settings to allow the Resident Engineer to select the image to be printed. All images are provided to the RE on a CD.

05-2015

- B. Photographs shall be taken upon completion, including landscaping. They shall be taken on a clear sunny day to obtain sufficient detail to show depth and to provide clear, sharp pictures. Pictures shall be 400 mm x 500 mm (16 by 20 inches), printed on regular weight paper, matte finish archival grade photographic paper and produced by a RA4 process from the digital image with a minimum 300 PPI. Identifying data shall be carried on label affixed to back of photograph without damage to photograph and shall be similar to that provided for final construction photographs.
- C. Furnish six (6) 400 mm x 500 mm (16 by 20 inch) color prints of the following buildings constructed under this project (elevations as selected by the RE from the images taken above). Photographs shall be artistically composed showing full front elevations. All images shall become property of the Government. Each of the selected six prints shall be place in a frame with a minimum of 2 inches of appropriate matting as a border. Provide a selection of a minimum of 3 different frames from which the SRE will select one style to frame all six prints. Photographs with frames shall be delivered to the Resident Engineer in boxes suitable for shipping.

**1.27 HISTORIC PRESERVATION**

Where the Contractor or any of the Contractor's employees, prior to, or during the construction work, are advised of or discover any possible archeological, historical and/or cultural resources, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Resident Engineer verbally, and then with a written follow up.

- - - E N D - - -



**SECTION 01 32 16.13**  
**NETWORK ANALYSIS SCHEDULES****PART 1- GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

- A. The Contractor shall develop a Network Analysis System (NAS) plan and schedule demonstrating fulfillment of the contract requirements, shall keep the network up-to-date in accordance with the requirements of this section and shall utilize the plan for scheduling, coordinating and monitoring work under this contract (including all activities of subcontractors, equipment vendors and suppliers). Conventional Critical Path Method (CPM) Precedence Diagramming Method (PDM) technique will be utilized to satisfy both time and cost applications. All schedule data and reports required under this specification section shall be based upon regular total float, not relative total float schedules.

**1.2 CONTRACTOR'S REPRESENTATIVE:**

- A. The Contractor shall designate an authorized representative in the firm who will be responsible for the preparation of the network diagram, review and report progress of the project with and to the Contracting Officer's representative.
- B. The Contractor's representative shall have direct project control and complete authority to act on behalf of the Contractor in fulfilling the requirements of this specification section and such authority shall not be interrupted throughout the duration of the project.

**1.3 CONTRACTOR'S CONSULTANT:**

- A. To prepare the network diagram, and compact disk(s), which reflects the Contractor's project plan, the Contractor shall engage an independent CPM consultant who is skilled in the time and cost application of scheduling using (PDM) network techniques for construction projects, the cost of which is included in the Contractor's bid. This consultant shall not have any financial or business ties to the Contractor, and shall not be an affiliate or subsidiary company of the Contractor, and shall not be employed by an affiliate or subsidiary company of the Contractor.
- B. Prior to engaging a consultant, and within 10 calendar days after award of the contract, the Contractor shall submit to the Contracting Officer:
1. The name and address of the proposed consultant.

2. Sufficient information to show that the proposed consultant has the qualifications to meet the requirements specified in the preceding paragraph.
  3. A list of prior construction projects, along with selected PDM network diagram samples on current projects which the proposed consultant has performed complete project scheduling services. These network diagram samples must show complete project planning for a project of similar size and scope as covered under this contract.
- C. The Contracting Officer has the right to approve or disapprove employment of the proposed consultant, and will notify the Contractor of the VA decision within seven calendar days from receipt of information. In case of disapproval, the Contractor shall resubmit another consultant within 10 calendar days for renewed consideration. The Contractor must have their CPM Consultant approved prior to submitting any diagram

#### **1.4 COMPUTER PRODUCED SCHEDULES**

- A. The contractor shall provide to the VA, Senior Resident Engineer and CPM Schedule Analyst, monthly computer processing of all computer-produced time/cost schedules and reports generated from monthly project updates. This monthly computer service will include: three copies of up to five different reports (inclusive of all pages) available within the user defined reports of Primavera (P3 or P6) to the contracting officer's representative; a hard copy listing of all project schedule changes, and associated data, made at the update and an electronic file of this data in Primavera (P3 or P6) batch format; and the resulting monthly updated schedule in a compressed electronic file in Primavera (P3 or P6), (PDM) format. These must be submitted with and substantively support the contractor's monthly payment request and the signed lookahead report. The resident engineer shall identify the five different report formats that the contractor shall provide based upon the monthly schedule updates.
- B. The contractor is responsible for the correctness and timeliness of the computer-produced reports. The Contractor is also responsible for the accurate and timely submittal of the updated project schedule and all CPM data necessary to produce the computer reports and payment request that is specified.
- C. The VA shall report errors in computer-produced reports to the Contractor's representative within ten calendar days from receipt of reports. The Contractor will reprocess the computer-produced reports and

associated compact disk(s), when requested by the Contracting Officer's representative, to correct errors which affect the payment and schedule for the project.

#### **1.5 THE COMPLETE PROJECT NETWORK DIAGRAM SUBMITTAL**

- A. Within 60 calendar days after receipt of Notice to Proceed, the Contractor shall submit for the Contracting Officer's review; three blue line copies of the complete network diagram on sheets of paper 765 x 1070 mm (30 x 42 inches) and an electronic file in a compressed Primavera (P3 or P6), (PDM) format. The submittal shall also include three copies of a computer-produced activity/event ID schedule showing project duration; phase completion dates; and other data, including event cost. Each activity/event on the computer-produced schedule shall contain as a minimum, but not limited to, activity/event ID, duration, predecessor and successor relationships, trade code, area code, description, budget amount, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date and total float. Work activity/event relationships shall be restricted to finish-to-start and start-to-start without lead or lag constraints. The lead or lag for the SS relationships may only be allowed in limited basis if justified in writing and must be approved by the Contracting Officer. Activity/event date constraints, not required by the contract, will not be accepted unless submitted to and approved by the Contracting Officer. The contractor shall make a separate written detailed request to the Contracting Officer identifying these date constraints and secure the Contracting Officer's written approval before incorporating them into the network diagram. The Contracting Officer's separate approval of the network diagram shall not excuse the contractor of this requirement. Logic events (non-work) will be permitted where necessary to reflect proper logic among work events, but must have a zero duration. The complete working network diagram shall reflect the Contractor's approach to scheduling the complete project. **The final network diagram in its original form shall contain no contract changes or delays which may have been incurred during the final network diagram development period and shall reflect the entire contract duration as defined in the bid documents.** These changes/delays shall be entered at the first update after the final network diagram has been approved. The Contractor should provide their requests for time and supporting time extension analysis for

contract time as a result of contract changes/delays, after this update, and in accordance with Article, ADJUSTMENT OF CONTRACT COMPLETION.

- B. Within 30 calendar days after receipt of the complete project network diagram, the Contracting Officer or his representative, will do one or both of the following:
  - 1. Notify the Contractor concerning his actions, opinions, and objections.
  - 2. A meeting with the Contractor at or near the job site for joint review, correction or adjustment of the proposed plan will be scheduled if required. Within 14 calendar days after the joint review, the Contractor shall revise and shall submit three blue line copies of the revised network diagram, three copies of the revised computer-produced activity/event ID schedule and a revised electronic file as specified by the Contracting Officer. The revised submission will be reviewed by the Contracting Officer and, if found to be as previously agreed upon, will be approved.
- C. The approved baseline network diagram schedule and the corresponding computer-produced schedule(s) shall constitute the approved baseline schedule until subsequently revised in accordance with the requirements of this section.
- D. The Complete Project Network Diagram will contain appropriate work activities/events.

#### **1.6 WORK ACTIVITY/EVENT COST DATA**

- A. The Contractor shall cost load all work activities/events except procurement activities. The cost loading shall reflect the appropriate level of effort of the work activities/events. The cumulative amount of all cost loaded work activities/events (including alternates) shall equal the total contract price. Prorate overhead, profit and general conditions on all work activities/events for the entire project length. The contractor shall generate from this information cash flow curves indicating graphically the total percentage of work activity/event dollar value scheduled to be in place on early finish, late finish. These cash flow curves will be used by the Contracting Officer to assist him in determining approval or disapproval of the cost loading. In the event of disapproval, the Contractor shall revise and resubmit in accordance with Article, THE COMPLETE PROJECT NETWORK DIAGRAM SUBMITTAL. Negative work activity/event cost data will not be acceptable, except on VA issued contract changes.

- B. The Contractor shall cost load work activities/events for guarantee period services, test, balance and adjust various systems in accordance with the provisions in the FAR 52.232 - 5 (PAYMENTS UNDER FIXED-PRICE CONSTRUCTION), Article, and VAAR 852.236 - 83(PAYMENTS UNDER FIXED-PRICE CONSTRUCTION).
- C. In accordance with Article PERFORMANCE OF WORK BY THE CONTRACTOR in FAR 52.236 - 1 and VAAR 852.236 - 72, the Contractor shall submit, simultaneously with the cost per work activity/event of the construction schedule required by this Section, a responsibility code for all activities/events of the project for which the Contractor's forces will perform the work.
- F. Work activities/events for Contractor bond shall have a trade code and area code of BOND.

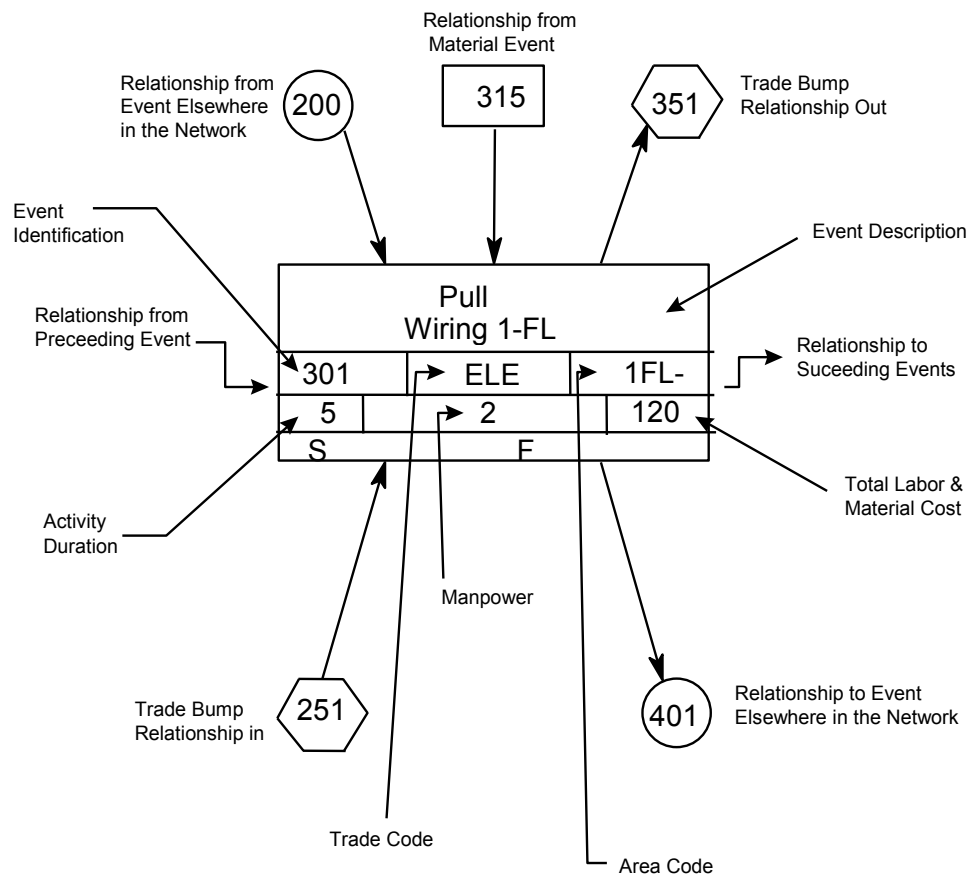
#### **1.7 NETWORK DIAGRAM REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Show on the network diagram the sequence and interdependence of work activities/events required for complete performance of all items of work. In preparing the network diagram, the Contractor shall:
  - 1. Exercise sufficient care to produce a clear, legible and accurate network diagram, refer to the drawing, CPM-1 (Sample CPM Network). Computer plotted network diagrams shall legibly display and plot all information required by the VA CPM activity/event legend or the computer plotted network diagram will not be acceptable. If the computer plotted network diagram is not found acceptable by the contracting officer's representative, then the network diagram will need to be hand drafted and meet legibility requirements. Group activities related to specific physical areas of the project, on the network diagram for ease of understanding and simplification. Provide a key plan on each network diagram sheet showing the project area associated with the work activities/events shown on that sheet.
  - 2. Show the following on each work activity/event:
    - a. Activity/Event ID number.
    - b. Concise description of the work represented by the activity/event. (35 characters or less including spaces preferred).
    - c. Performance responsibility or trade code (five alpha characters or less): GEN, MECH, ELEC, CARP, PLAST, or other acceptable abbreviations.
    - d. Duration (in work days.)

- e. Cost (in accordance with Article, ACTIVITY/EVENT COST DATA of this section and less than \$9,999,999 per activity).
- f. Work location or area code (five characters or less), descriptive of the area involved.
- g. Manpower required (average number of men per day).
- h. The SYMBOL LEGEND format shown below and on the drawing, CPM-1 (Sample CPM Network) is mandatory and shall be followed in preparing final network diagrams.

## SYMBOL LEGEND

Show Network Diagram page number location(s) for all incoming/outgoing node connector(s).



3. Show activities/events as:

- a. Contractor's time required for submittal of shop drawings, templates, fabrication, delivery and similar pre-construction work.

- b. Contracting Officer's and Architect-Engineer's review and approval of shop drawings, equipment schedules, samples, template, or similar items.
- c. Interruption of VA Medical Center utilities, delivery of Government furnished equipment, and rough-in drawings, project phasing and any other specification requirements.
- d. Test, balance and adjust various systems and pieces of equipment, maintenance and operation manuals, instructions and preventive maintenance tasks.
- e. **Commissioning Activities** - Based upon the project specific Commissioning plan and the specification section 01 91 00, the contractor shall include in the **Day 1 CPM Diagram all the systems commissioning activities (see systems covered in Division 7, 8, 21, 22, 23, 26, 28, 31 and others as specified)** such as start up, Pre-functional check list, Pre -test, individual component and system level Functional test, Operator's training, O.& M. Manuals etc.(including any deficiency correction and re-testing). **The majority of commissioning activities should be completed as part of the normal construction schedule and finalized prior to the construction contract completion date.** To this end, it is imperative that the Commissioning Agent and the Contractor collaborate to integrate commissioning activities into the Contractor's overall construction schedule. All commissioning activities shall be cost loaded as required in the earlier paragraphs.
- f. The Commissioning Plan will identify critical commissioning activities and associated construction/start up tasks that must precede these activities to allow for successful execution of the commissioning activities. In order to coordinate these activities with the construction schedule, a **Commissioning Duration Schedule** should be provided by the Commissioning Agent to the VA RE and the Contractor to provide a rational basis for integration of commissioning into the Day 1 diagram and the construction schedule. The Commissioning Duration Schedule should include the following information:
  - 1) Description of Commissioning Activity

- 2) Prerequisite Construction Tasks Required to Execute the Cx Activity
  - 3) Elapsed Time Duration of Each Activity
  - 4) Documentation Associated with Each Task/Document Responsibility
- g. Once the duration schedule is delivered to the Contractor, the Commissioning Agent will collaborate with the Contractor to integrate all commissioning activities into the fixed duration construction schedule in accordance with VA NAS requirements for scheduling the project.
- j. Bid items other than the Base Bid (ITEM 1) shall have trade codes corresponding to the appropriate bid item number (e.g., ITM 3, ITM 4 and other items).
4. Show not only the activities/events for actual construction work for each trade category of the project, but also trade relationships to indicate the movement of trades from one area, floor, or building, to another area, floor, or building, for at least five trades who are performing major work under this contract.
  5. Break up the work into activities/events of a duration no longer than 20 work days each, except as to non-construction activities/events (i.e., procurement of materials, delivery of equipment, concrete and asphalt curing) and any other activities/events for which the Contracting Officer may approve the showing of a longer duration. The duration for VA approval of any required submittal, shop drawing, or other submittals shall not be less than 20 work days. Refer to drawing CPM-1 for VA approval activities/events which will require minimum duration longer than 20 workdays. The construction time as determined by the CPM schedule from early start to late finish for any sub-phase, phase or the entire project shall not exceed the contract time(s) specified or shown.
  6. Describe work activities/events clearly, so the work is readily identifiable for assessment of completion. Activities/events labeled "start," "continue," or "completion," are not specific and will not be allowed. Lead and lag time activities will not be acceptable.
  7. Uniquely number each activity/event with numbers ranging from 1 to 99998 only. The network diagram should be generally numbered in such a way to reflect either discipline, phase or location of the work.



- B. Submit the following supporting data in addition to the network diagram, activity/event ID schedule and electronic file (s). Failure of the Contractor to include this data will delay the review of the submittal until the Contracting Officer is in receipt of the missing data:
1. The proposed number of working days per week.
  2. The holidays to be observed during the life of the contract (by day, month, and year).
  3. The planned number of shifts per day.
  4. The number of hours per shift.
  5. List the major construction equipment to be used on the site, describing how each piece relates to and will be used in support of the submitted network diagram work activities/events.
  6. Provide a typed, doubled spaced, description, at least one page in length, of the plan and your approach to constructing the project.
- C. To the extent that the network diagram or any revised network diagram shows anything not jointly agreed upon, it shall not be deemed to have been approved by the Contracting Officer. Failure to include any element of work required for the performance of this contract shall not excuse the Contractor from completing all work required within any applicable completion date of each phase regardless of the Contracting Officer's approval of the network diagram.
- D. Compact Disk Requirements and CPM Activity/Event Record Specifications: Submit to the VA (Senior resident Engineer and CPM Schedule Analyst) an electronic file(s) containing one file of the data required to produce a Primavera (P3 or P6), (PDM) produced schedule, reflecting all the activities/events of the complete project network diagram being submitted.

**1.8 PAYMENT TO THE CONTRACTOR:**

- A. Monthly, the contractor shall submit the AIA application and certificate for payment documents G702 & G703 reflecting updated schedule activities and cost data in accordance with the provisions of the following Article, PAYMENT AND PROGRESS REPORTING, as the basis upon which progress payments will be made pursuant to Article FAR 52.232 - 5 (PAYMENTS UNDER FIXED-PRICE CONSTRUCTION), and VAAR 852.236 - 83 (PAYMENTS UNDER FIXED-PRICE CONSTRUCTION). The Contractor is entitled to a monthly progress payment upon approval of estimates as determined from the currently approved updated computer-produced calendar-dated schedule unless, in special situations, the Contracting Officer permits an

exception to this requirement. Monthly payment requests shall include: three copies of up to five different reports (inclusive of all pages) available within the user defined reports of Primavera (P3 or P6), (PDM) to the contracting officer's representative; a listing of all project schedule changes, and associated data, made at the update; and an electronic file (s) of the resulting monthly updated schedule in a compressed Primavera (P3 or P6), (PDM) format. These must be submitted with and substantively support the contractor's monthly application and certificate for payment request documents.

- B. When the Contractor fails or refuses to furnish to the Contracting Officer the information and the associated updated Primavera (P3 or P6), (PDM) schedule in electronic format, which, in the sole judgment of the Contracting Officer, is necessary for processing the monthly progress payment, the Contractor shall not be deemed to have provided an estimate and supporting schedule data upon which progress payment may be made.

#### **1.9 PAYMENT AND PROGRESS REPORTING**

- A. Monthly job site progress meetings shall be held on dates mutually agreed to by the Contracting Officer (or Contracting Officer's representative) and the Contractor. Contractor and the CPM consultant will be required to attend all monthly progress meetings. Presence of Subcontractors during progress meeting is optional unless required by the Contracting Officer (or Contracting Officer's representative). The Contractor shall update the project schedule and all other data required by this section shall be accurately filled in and completed prior to the monthly progress meeting. The Contractor shall provide this information to the Contracting Officer or the VA representative in completed form three work days in advance of the progress meeting. Job progress will be reviewed to verify:
1. Actual start and/or finish dates for updated/completed activities/events.
  2. Remaining duration, required to complete each activity/event started, or scheduled to start, but not completed.
  3. Logic, time and cost data for change orders, and supplemental agreements that are to be incorporated into the network diagram and computer-produced schedules. Changes in activity/event sequence and duration which have been made pursuant to the provisions of following Article, ADJUSTMENT OF CONTRACT COMPLETION.
  4. Percentage for completed and partially completed activities/events.

5. Logic and duration revisions required by this section of the specifications.
  6. Activity/event duration and percent complete shall be updated independently.
- B. The Contractor shall submit a narrative report as a part of his monthly review and update, in a form agreed upon by the Contractor and the Contracting Officer. The narrative report shall include a description of problem areas; current and anticipated delaying factors and their estimated impact on performance of other activities/events and completion dates; and an explanation of corrective action taken or proposed. This report is in addition to the daily reports pursuant to the provisions of Article, DAILY REPORT OF WORKERS AND MATERIALS in the GENERAL CONDITIONS.
- C. After completion of the joint review and the Contracting Officer's approval of all entries, the contractor will generate an updated computer-produced calendar-dated schedule and supply the Contracting Officer's representative with reports in accordance with the Article, COMPUTER PRODUCED SCHEDULES, specified.
- D. After completing the monthly schedule update, the contractor's scheduling consultant shall rerun all current period contract change(s) against the prior approved monthly project schedule. The analysis shall only include original workday durations and schedule logic agreed upon by the contractor and resident engineer for the contract change(s). When there is a disagreement on logic and/or durations, the consultant shall use the schedule logic and/or durations provided and approved by the resident engineer. After each rerun update, the resulting electronic project schedule data file shall be appropriately identified and submitted to the VA in accordance to the requirements listed in articles 1.4 and 1.7. This electronic submission is separate from the regular monthly project schedule update requirements and shall be submitted to the resident engineer within fourteen (14) calendar days of completing the regular schedule update. **Before inserting the contract changes durations, care must be taken to ensure that only the original durations will be used for the analysis, not the reported durations after progress. In addition, once the final network diagram is approved, the contractor must recreate all manual progress payment updates on this approved network diagram and associated reruns for contract changes in each of these update periods as**

**outlined above for regular update periods. This will require detailed record keeping for each of the manual progress payment updates.**

- E. After VA acceptance and approval of the final network diagram, and after each monthly update, the contractor shall submit to the Contracting Officer three blue line copies of a revised complete network diagram showing all completed and partially completed activities/events, contract changes and logic changes made on the intervening updates or at the first update on the final diagram. The Contracting Officer may elect to have the contractor do this on a less frequent basis, but it shall be done on a quarterly basis as a minimum.
- F. Following approval of the CPM schedule, the VA, the General Contractor, its approved CPM Consultant, RE office representatives, and all subcontractors needed, as determined by the SRE, shall meet to discuss the monthly updated schedule. The main emphasis shall be to address work activities to avoid slippage of project schedule and to identify any necessary actions required to maintain project schedule during the reporting period. The Government representatives and the Contractor should conclude the meeting with a clear understanding of those work and administrative actions necessary to maintain project schedule status during the reporting period. This schedule coordination meeting will occur after each monthly project schedule update meeting utilizing the resulting schedule reports from that schedule update. If the project is behind schedule, discussions should include ways to prevent further slippage as well as ways to improve the project schedule status, when appropriate.

#### **1.10 RESPONSIBILITY FOR COMPLETION**

- A. Whenever it becomes apparent from the current monthly progress review meeting or the monthly computer-produced calendar-dated schedule that phasing or contract completion dates will not be met, the Contractor shall execute some or all of the following remedial actions:
  - 1. Increase construction manpower in such quantities and crafts as necessary to eliminate the backlog of work.
  - 2. Increase the number of working hours per shift, shifts per working day, working days per week, the amount of construction equipment, or any combination of the foregoing to eliminate the backlog of work.
  - 3. Reschedule the work in conformance with the specification requirements.
- B. Prior to proceeding with any of the above actions, the Contractor shall notify and obtain approval from the Contracting Officer for the proposed

schedule changes. If such actions are approved, the CPM revisions shall be incorporated by the Contractor into the network diagram before the next update, at no additional cost to the Government.

#### **1.11 CHANGES TO NETWORK DIAGRAM AND SCHEDULE**

- A. Within 30 calendar days after VA acceptance and approval of any updated computer-produced schedule, the Contractor will submit a revised network diagram, the associated compact disk(s), and a list of any activity/event changes including predecessors and successors for any of the following reasons:
1. Delay in completion of any activity/event or group of activities/events, indicate an extension of the project completion by 20 working days or 10 percent of the remaining project duration, whichever is less. Such delays which may be involved with contract changes, strikes, unusual weather, and other delays will not relieve the Contractor from the requirements specified unless the conditions are shown on the CPM as the direct cause for delaying the project beyond the acceptable limits.
  2. Delays in submittals, or deliveries, or work stoppage are encountered which make rescheduling of the work necessary.
  3. The schedule does not represent the actual prosecution and progress of the project.
  4. When there is, or has been, a substantial revision to the activity/event costs of the network diagram regardless of the cause for these revisions.
- B. CPM revisions made under this paragraph which affect the previously approved computer-produced schedules for Government furnished equipment, vacating of areas by the VA Medical Center, contract phase(s) and sub phase(s), utilities furnished by the Government to the Contractor, or any other previously contracted item, must be furnished in writing to the Contracting Officer for approval.
- C. Contracting Officer's approval for the revised network diagram and all relevant data is contingent upon compliance with all other paragraphs of this section and any other previous agreements by the Contracting Officer or the VA representative.
- D. The cost of revisions to the network diagram resulting from contract changes will be included in the proposal for changes in work as specified in Article, FAR 52.243 -4 (CHANGES), VAAR 852.236 - 88 (CHANGES -

SUPPLEMENTS), and will be based on the complexity of the revision or contract change, man hours expended in analyzing the change, and the total cost of the change.

- E. The cost of revisions to the network diagram not resulting from contract changes is the responsibility of the Contractor.

#### **1.12 ADJUSTMENT OF CONTRACT COMPLETION**

- A. The contract completion time will be adjusted only for causes specified in this contract. Request for an extension of the contract completion date by the Contractor shall be supported with a justification, CPM data and supporting evidence as the Contracting Officer may deem necessary for determination as to whether or not the Contractor is entitled to an extension of time under the provisions of the contract. Submission of proof based on revised activity/event logic, durations (in work days) and costs is obligatory to any approvals. The schedule must clearly display that the Contractor has used, in full, all the float time available for the work involved in this request. The Contracting Officer's determination as to the total number of days of contract extension will be based upon the current computer-produced calendar-dated schedule for the time period in question and all other relevant information.
- B. Actual delays in activities/events which, according to the computer-produced calendar-dated schedule, do not affect the extended and predicted contract completion dates shown by the critical path in the network, will not be the basis for a change to the contract completion date. The Contracting Officer will within a reasonable time after receipt of such justification and supporting evidence, review the facts and advise the Contractor in writing of the Contracting Officer's decision.
- C. The Contractor shall submit each request for a change in the contract completion date to the Contracting Officer in accordance with the provisions specified under Article, FAR 52.243 -4 (CHANGES), VAAR 852.236 - 88 (CHANGES - SUPPLEMENTS). The Contractor shall include, as a part of each change order proposal, a sketch showing all CPM logic revisions, duration (in work days) changes, and cost changes, for work in question and its relationship to other activities on the approved network diagram.
- D. All delays due to non-work activities/events such as RFI's, WEATHER, STRIKES, and similar non-work activities/events shall be analyzed on a month by month basis.

**1.13 CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE RISK ANALYSIS / MITIGATION PLAN**

- A. Schedule Risk Analysis - The contractor shall conduct the statistical schedule risk analysis based on the above detailed construction activities in the Day 1 approved diagram, identifying major schedule risk areas and recommended risk mitigation plans as outlined below.
- B. The risk analysis shall be conducted by a person or firm skilled in the statistical method of schedule risk analysis based on the (PDM) network techniques for major construction projects, preferably in the major health care related projects. The cost of this service shall be included in the Contractor's proposal.
- C. The Contracting Officer has the right to approve or disapprove the Person or firm designated to perform the risk analysis.

**1.14 RISK ANALYSIS FORMAT / REQUIREMENTS / SUBMITTALS**

- A. Risk Analysis Software / Format - Within 45 calendar days (60 calendar days on projects over \$50,000,000) after receipt of Notice to Proceed, the Contractor shall submit for the Contracting Officer's review; a Risk Analysis software to be utilized, the method of performing the analysis, the format of presenting the data and the reports for VA approval.
- B. Conduct Risk Analysis / Submittals - **Based on the approved software / format, the consultant shall** perform statistical risk analysis on the detailed approved Day 1 diagram. The contractor shall review and utilize any previous Risk analysis performed by the A/E of record based on the "semi-detailed" (yet at an overall level) construction logic and schedule to ensure the continuity of previous schedule risk analysis. The contractor's project manager and Superintendent shall identify the major schedule risk areas and possible risk mitigation strategy/plan and record it in a narrative format, with **electronic file submission** to the VA. **The risk analysis exercise shall be performed or updated at least on a quarterly basis or as directed by the VA Contracting officer.**
- C. The submittal shall include three copies of a computer-produced risk analysis results, predicting the various meaningful probability curves of achieving the contract schedules. It shall also include a detailed narrative list of all major and minor potential and specific schedule and cost risk areas, and a contractor's recommendations of mitigating the identified risks which must be addressed by the VA Project and Resident engineer teams to maintain the contract schedule.

- - - E N D - - -



**SECTION 01 33 23**  
**SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES**

- 1-1. Refer to Articles titled SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONSTRUCTION (FAR 52.236-21) and, SPECIAL NOTES (VAAR 852.236-91), in GENERAL CONDITIONS.
- 1-2. For the purposes of this contract, samples (including laboratory samples to be tested), test reports, certificates, and manufacturers' literature and data shall also be subject to the previously referenced requirements. The following text refers to all items collectively as SUBMITTALS.
- 1-3. Submit for approval, all of the items specifically mentioned under the separate sections of the specification, with information sufficient to evidence full compliance with contract requirements. Materials, fabricated articles and the like to be installed in permanent work shall equal those of approved submittals. After an item has been approved, no change in brand or make will be permitted unless:
  - A. Satisfactory written evidence is presented to, and approved by Contracting Officer, that manufacturer cannot make scheduled delivery of approved item or;
  - B. Item delivered has been rejected and substitution of a suitable item is an urgent necessity or;
  - C. Other conditions become apparent which indicates approval of such substitute item to be in best interest of the Government.
- 1-4. Forward submittals in sufficient time to permit proper consideration and approval action by Government. Time submission to assure adequate lead time for procurement of contract - required items. Delays attributable to untimely and rejected submittals (including any laboratory samples to be tested) will not serve as a basis for extending contract time for completion.
- 1-5. Submittals will be reviewed for compliance with contract requirements by Architect-Engineer, and action thereon will be taken by Resident Engineer on behalf of the Contracting Officer.
- 1-6. Upon receipt of submittals, Architect-Engineer will assign a file number thereto. Contractor, in any subsequent correspondence, shall refer to this file and identification number to expedite replies relative to previously approved or disapproved submittals.

- 1-7. The Government reserves the right to require additional submittals, whether or not particularly mentioned in this contract. If additional submittals beyond those required by the contract are furnished pursuant to request therefor by Contracting Officer, adjustment in contract price and time will be made in accordance with Articles titled CHANGES (FAR 52.243-4) and CHANGES - SUPPLEMENT (VAAR 852.236-88) of the GENERAL CONDITIONS.
- 1-8. Schedules called for in specifications and shown on shop drawings shall be submitted for use and information of Department of Veterans Affairs and Architect-Engineer. However, the Contractor shall assume responsibility for coordinating and verifying schedules. The Contracting Officer and Architect-Engineer assumes no responsibility for checking schedules or layout drawings for exact sizes, exact numbers and detailed positioning of items.
- 1-9. Submittals must be submitted by Contractor only and shipped prepaid. Contracting Officer assumes no responsibility for checking quantities or exact numbers included in such submittals.
- A. Submit samples in single units unless otherwise specified. Submit shop drawings, schedules, manufacturers' literature and data, and certificates in quadruplicate, except where a greater number is specified.
- B. Submittals will receive consideration only when covered by a transmittal letter signed by Contractor. Letter shall be sent via first class mail and shall contain the list of items, name of Medical Center, name of Contractor, contract number, applicable specification paragraph numbers, applicable drawing numbers (and other information required for exact identification of location for each item), manufacturer and brand, ASTM or Federal Specification Number (if any) and such additional information as may be required by specifications for particular item being furnished. In addition, catalogs shall be marked to indicate specific items submitted for approval.
1. A copy of letter must be enclosed with items, and any items received without identification letter will be considered "unclaimed goods" and held for a limited time only.
2. Each sample, certificate, manufacturers' literature and data shall be labeled to indicate the name and location of the Medical Centername of Contractor, manufacturer, brand, contract number and ASTM or Federal Specification Number as applicable and location(s) on project.

3. Required certificates shall be signed by an authorized representative of manufacturer or supplier of material, and by Contractor.
- C. In addition to complying with the applicable requirements specified in preceding Article 1.9, samples which are required to have Laboratory Tests (those preceded by symbol "LT" under the separate sections of the specification shall be tested, at the expense of Contractor, in a commercial laboratory approved by Contracting Officer.
1. Laboratory shall furnish Contracting Officer with a certificate stating that it is fully equipped and qualified to perform intended work, is fully acquainted with specification requirements and intended use of materials and is an independent establishment in no way connected with organization of Contractor or with manufacturer or supplier of materials to be tested.
  2. Certificates shall also set forth a list of comparable projects upon which laboratory has performed similar functions during past five years.
  3. Samples and laboratory tests shall be sent directly to approved commercial testing laboratory.
  4. Contractor shall send a copy of transmittal letter to both Resident Engineer and to Architect-Engineer simultaneously with submission of material to a commercial testing laboratory.
  4. Contractor shall forward a copy of transmittal letter to Resident Engineer simultaneously with submission to a commercial testing laboratory.
  5. Laboratory test reports shall be sent directly to Resident Engineer for appropriate action.
  6. Laboratory reports shall list contract specification test requirements and a comparative list of the laboratory test results. When tests show that the material meets specification requirements, the laboratory shall so certify on test report.
  7. Laboratory test reports shall also include a recommendation for approval or disapproval of tested item.
- D. If submittal samples have been disapproved, resubmit new samples as soon as possible after notification of disapproval. Such new samples shall be marked "Resubmitted Sample" in addition to containing other previously specified information required on label and in transmittal letter.
- E. Approved samples will be kept on file by the Resident Engineer at the site until completion of contract, at which time such samples will be delivered to Contractor as Contractor's property. Where noted in technical sections of specifications, approved samples in good condition

may be used in their proper locations in contract work. At completion of contract, samples that are not approved will be returned to Contractor only upon request and at Contractor's expense. Such request should be made prior to completion of the contract. Disapproved samples that are not requested for return by Contractor will be discarded after completion of contract.

F. Submittal drawings (shop, erection or setting drawings) and schedules, required for work of various trades, shall be checked before submission by technically qualified employees of Contractor for accuracy, completeness and compliance with contract requirements. These drawings and schedules shall be stamped and signed by Contractor certifying to such check.

1. For each drawing required, submit one legible photographic paper or vellum reproducible.
  2. Reproducible shall be full size.
  3. Each drawing shall have marked thereon, proper descriptive title, including Medical Center location, project number, manufacturer's number, reference to contract drawing number, detail Section Number, and Specification Section Number.
  4. A space 120 mm by 125 mm (4-3/4 by 5 inches) shall be reserved on each drawing to accommodate approval or disapproval stamp.
  5. Submit drawings, ROLLED WITHIN A MAILING TUBE, fully protected for shipment.
  6. One reproducible print of approved or disapproved shop drawings will be forwarded to Contractor.
  7. When work is directly related and involves more than one trade, shop drawings shall be submitted to Architect-Engineer under one cover.
- 1-10. Samples (except laboratory samples), shop drawings, test reports, certificates and manufacturers' literature and data, shall be submitted for approval to

IKM Incorporated. One PPG Place, Pittsburgh, PA 15222.

- 1-11. At the time of transmittal to the Architect-Engineer, the Contractor shall also send a copy of the complete submittal directly to the Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 01 42 19  
REFERENCE STANDARDS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies the availability and source of references and standards specified in the project manual under paragraphs APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS and/or shown on the drawings.

**1.2 AVAILABILITY OF SPECIFICATIONS LISTED IN THE GSA INDEX OF FEDERAL SPECIFICATIONS, STANDARDS AND COMMERCIAL ITEM DESCRIPTIONS FPMR PART 101-29 (FAR 52.211-1) (AUG 1998)**

- A. The GSA Index of Federal Specifications, Standards and Commercial Item Descriptions, FPMR Part 101-29 and copies of specifications, standards, and commercial item descriptions cited in the solicitation may be obtained for a fee by submitting a request to - GSA Federal Supply Service, Specifications Section, Suite 8100, 470 East L'Enfant Plaza, SW, Washington, DC 20407, Telephone (202) 619-8925, Facsimile (202) 619-8978.
- B. If the General Services Administration, Department of Agriculture, or Department of Veterans Affairs issued this solicitation, a single copy of specifications, standards, and commercial item descriptions cited in this solicitation may be obtained free of charge by submitting a request to the addressee in paragraph (a) of this provision. Additional copies will be issued for a fee.

**1.3 AVAILABILITY FOR EXAMINATION OF SPECIFICATIONS NOT LISTED IN THE GSA INDEX OF FEDERAL SPECIFICATIONS, STANDARDS AND COMMERCIAL ITEM DESCRIPTIONS (FAR 52.211-4) (JUN 1988)**

The specifications and standards cited in this solicitation can be examined at the following location:

DEPARTMENT OF VETERANS AFFAIRS  
Office of Construction & Facilities Management  
Facilities Quality Service (00CFM1A)  
425 Eye Street N.W, (sixth floor)  
Washington, DC 20001  
Telephone Numbers: (202) 632-5249 or (202) 632-5178  
Between 9:00 AM - 3:00 PM

**1.4 AVAILABILITY OF SPECIFICATIONS NOT LISTED IN THE GSA INDEX OF FEDERAL SPECIFICATIONS, STANDARDS AND COMMERCIAL ITEM DESCRIPTIONS (FAR 52.211-3) (JUN 1988)**

The specifications cited in this solicitation may be obtained from the associations or organizations listed below.

AA	Aluminum Association Inc. <a href="http://www.aluminum.org">http://www.aluminum.org</a>
AABC	Associated Air Balance Council <a href="http://www.aabchq.com">http://www.aabchq.com</a>
AAMA	American Architectural Manufacturer's Association <a href="http://www.aamanet.org">http://www.aamanet.org</a>
AAN	American Nursery and Landscape Association <a href="http://www.anla.org">http://www.anla.org</a>
AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials <a href="http://www.aashto.org">http://www.aashto.org</a>
AATCC	American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists <a href="http://www.aatcc.org">http://www.aatcc.org</a>
ACGIH	American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists <a href="http://www.acgih.org">http://www.acgih.org</a>
ACI	American Concrete Institute <a href="http://www.aci-int.net">http://www.aci-int.net</a>
ACPA	American Concrete Pipe Association <a href="http://www.concrete-pipe.org">http://www.concrete-pipe.org</a>
ACPPA	American Concrete Pressure Pipe Association <a href="http://www.acppa.org">http://www.acppa.org</a>
ADC	Air Diffusion Council <a href="http://flexibleduct.org">http://flexibleduct.org</a>
AGA	American Gas Association <a href="http://www.aga.org">http://www.aga.org</a>

AGC        Associated General Contractors of America  
<http://www.agc.org>

AGMA       American Gear Manufacturers Association, Inc.  
<http://www.agma.org>

AHAM       Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers  
<http://www.aham.org>

AISC       American Institute of Steel Construction  
<http://www.aisc.org>

AISI       American Iron and Steel Institute  
<http://www.steel.org>

AITC       American Institute of Timber Construction  
<http://www.aitc-glulam.org>

AMCA       Air Movement and Control Association, Inc.  
<http://www.amca.org>

ANLA       American Nursery & Landscape Association  
<http://www.anla.org>

ANSI       American National Standards Institute, Inc.  
<http://www.ansi.org>

APA       The Engineered Wood Association  
<http://www.apawood.org>

ARI       Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute  
<http://www.ari.org>

ASAE       American Society of Agricultural Engineers  
<http://www.asae.org>

ASCE       American Society of Civil Engineers  
<http://www.asce.org>

ASHRAE    American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and  
Air-Conditioning Engineers  
<http://www.ashrae.org>

ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers <a href="http://www.asme.org">http://www.asme.org</a>
ASSE	American Society of Sanitary Engineering <a href="http://www.asse-plumbing.org">http://www.asse-plumbing.org</a>
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials <a href="http://www.astm.org">http://www.astm.org</a>
AWI	Architectural Woodwork Institute <a href="http://www.awinet.org">http://www.awinet.org</a>
AWS	American Welding Society <a href="http://www.aws.org">http://www.aws.org</a>
AWWA	American Water Works Association <a href="http://www.awwa.org">http://www.awwa.org</a>
BHMA	Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association <a href="http://www.buildershardware.com">http://www.buildershardware.com</a>
BIA	Brick Institute of America <a href="http://www.bia.org">http://www.bia.org</a>
CAGI	Compressed Air and Gas Institute <a href="http://www.cagi.org">http://www.cagi.org</a>
CGA	Compressed Gas Association, Inc. <a href="http://www.cganet.com">http://www.cganet.com</a>
CI	The Chlorine Institute, Inc. <a href="http://www.chlorineinstitute.org">http://www.chlorineinstitute.org</a>
CISCA	Ceilings and Interior Systems Construction Association <a href="http://www.cisca.org">http://www.cisca.org</a>
CISPI	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute <a href="http://www.cispi.org">http://www.cispi.org</a>
CLFMI	Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute <a href="http://www.chainlinkinfo.org">http://www.chainlinkinfo.org</a>



CPMB Concrete Plant Manufacturers Bureau  
<http://www.cpmc.org>

CRA California Redwood Association  
<http://www.calredwood.org>

CRSI Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute  
<http://www.crsi.org>

CTI Cooling Technology Institute  
<http://www.cti.org>

DHI Door and Hardware Institute  
<http://www.dhi.org>

EGSA Electrical Generating Systems Association  
<http://www.egsa.org>

EEI Edison Electric Institute  
<http://www.eei.org>

EPA Environmental Protection Agency  
<http://www.epa.gov>

ETL ETL Testing Laboratories, Inc.  
<http://www.etl.com>

FAA Federal Aviation Administration  
<http://www.faa.gov>

FCC Federal Communications Commission  
<http://www.fcc.gov>

FPS The Forest Products Society  
<http://www.forestprod.org>

GANI Glass Association of North America  
<http://www.cssinfo.com/info/gani.html/>

FM Factory Mutual Insurance  
<http://www.fmglobal.com>

GA	Gypsum Association <a href="http://www.gypsum.org">http://www.gypsum.org</a>
GSA	General Services Administration <a href="http://www.gsa.gov">http://www.gsa.gov</a>
HI	Hydraulic Institute <a href="http://www.pumps.org">http://www.pumps.org</a>
HPVA	Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association <a href="http://www.hpva.org">http://www.hpva.org</a>
ICBO	International Conference of Building Officials <a href="http://www.icbo.org">http://www.icbo.org</a>
ICEA	Insulated Cable Engineers Association Inc. <a href="http://www.icea.net">http://www.icea.net</a>
\ICAC	Institute of Clean Air Companies <a href="http://www.icac.com">http://www.icac.com</a>
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers <a href="http://www.ieee.org/">http://www.ieee.org/</a>
IMSA	International Municipal Signal Association <a href="http://www.imsasafety.org">http://www.imsasafety.org</a>
IPCEA	Insulated Power Cable Engineers Association
NBMA	Metal Buildings Manufacturers Association <a href="http://www.mbma.com">http://www.mbma.com</a>
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry Inc. <a href="http://www.mss-hq.com">http://www.mss-hq.com</a>
NAAMM	National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers <a href="http://www.naamm.org">http://www.naamm.org</a>
NAPHCC	Plumbing-Heating-Cooling Contractors Association <a href="http://www.phccweb.org.org">http://www.phccweb.org.org</a>

NBS        National Bureau of Standards  
            See - NIST

NBBPVI    National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors  
            <http://www.nationboard.org>

NEC        National Electric Code  
            See - NFPA National Fire Protection Association

NEMA       National Electrical Manufacturers Association  
            <http://www.nema.org>

NFPA       National Fire Protection Association  
            <http://www.nfpa.org>

NHLA       National Hardwood Lumber Association  
            <http://www.natlhardwood.org>

NIH        National Institute of Health  
            <http://www.nih.gov>

NIST       National Institute of Standards and Technology  
            <http://www.nist.gov>

NLMA       Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association, Inc.  
            <http://www.nelma.org>

NPA        National Particleboard Association  
            18928 Premiere Court  
            Gaithersburg, MD 20879  
            (301) 670-0604

NSF        National Sanitation Foundation  
            <http://www.nsf.org>

NWWDA    Window and Door Manufacturers Association  
            <http://www.nwwda.org>

OSHA       Occupational Safety and Health Administration  
            Department of Labor  
            <http://www.osha.gov>

PCA Portland Cement Association  
<http://www.portcement.org>

PCI Precast Prestressed Concrete Institute  
<http://www.pci.org>

PPI The Plastic Pipe Institute  
<http://www.plasticpipe.org>

PEI Porcelain Enamel Institute, Inc.  
<http://www.porcelainenamel.com>

PTI Post-Tensioning Institute  
<http://www.post-tensioning.org>

RFCI The Resilient Floor Covering Institute  
<http://www.rfci.com>

RIS Redwood Inspection Service  
See - CRA

RMA Rubber Manufacturers Association, Inc.  
<http://www.rma.org>

SCMA Southern Cypress Manufacturers Association  
<http://www.cypressinfo.org>

SDI Steel Door Institute  
<http://www.steeldoor.org>

IGMA Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance  
<http://www.igmaonline.org>

SJI Steel Joist Institute  
<http://www.steeljoist.org>

SMACNA Sheet Metal and Air-Conditioning Contractors  
National Association, Inc.  
<http://www.smacna.org>

SSPC The Society for Protective Coatings  
<http://www.sspc.org>

06-2015

STI      Steel Tank Institute  
<http://www.steeltank.com>

SWI      Steel Window Institute  
<http://www.steelwindows.com>

TCA      Tile Council of America, Inc.  
<http://www.tileusa.com>

TEMA      Tubular Exchange Manufacturers Association  
<http://www.tema.org>

TPI      Truss Plate Institute, Inc.  
583 D'Onofrio Drive; Suite 200  
Madison, WI 53719  
(608) 833-5900

UBC      The Uniform Building Code  
See ICBO

UL      Underwriters' Laboratories Incorporated  
<http://www.ul.com>

ULC      Underwriters' Laboratories of Canada  
<http://www.ulc.ca>

WCLIB      West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau  
6980 SW Varns Road, P.O. Box 23145  
Portland, OR 97223  
(503) 639-0651

WRCLA      Western Red Cedar Lumber Association  
P.O. Box 120786  
New Brighton, MN 55112  
(612) 633-4334

WWPA      Western Wood Products Association  
<http://www.wwpa.org>

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 01 45 29**  
**TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

This section specifies materials testing activities and inspection services required during project construction to be provided by a Testing Laboratory retained by the Contractor.

**1.2 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO):
- T27-06.....Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
  - T96-02 (R2006).....Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
  - T99-01 (R2004).....The Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 2.5 Kg (5.5 lb.) Rammer and a 305 mm (12 in.) Drop
  - T104-99 (R2003).....Soundness of Aggregate by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
  - T180-01 (R2004).....Moisture-Density Relations of Soils using a 4.54 kg (10 lb.) Rammer and a 457 mm (18 in.) Drop
  - T191-02 (R2006).....Density of Soil In-Place by the Sand-Cone Method
- C. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
- 506.4R-94 (R2004).....Guide for the Evaluation of Shotcrete
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A325-06.....Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength
  - A370-07.....Definitions for Mechanical Testing of Steel Products
  - A416/A416M-06.....Steel Strand, Uncoated Seven-Wire for Prestressed Concrete
  - A490-06.....Heat Treated Steel Structural Bolts, 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength
  - C31/C31M-06.....Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
  - C33-03.....Concrete Aggregates

C39/C39M-05.....Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete  
Specimens

C109/C109M-05.....Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars

C138-07.....Unit Weight, Yield, and Air Content  
(Gravimetric) of Concrete

C140-07.....Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units and  
Related Units

C143/C143M-05.....Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete

C172-07.....Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete

C173-07.....Air Content of freshly Mixed Concrete by the  
Volumetric Method

C330-05.....Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete

C567-05.....Density Structural Lightweight Concrete

C780-07.....Pre-construction and Construction Evaluation of  
Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry

C1019-08.....Sampling and Testing Grout

C1064/C1064M-05.....Freshly Mixed Portland Cement Concrete

C1077-06.....Laboratories Testing Concrete and Concrete  
Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria  
for Laboratory Evaluation

C1314-07.....Compressive Strength of Masonry Prisms

D698-07.....Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil  
Using Standard Effort

D1143-07.....Piles Under Static Axial Compressive Load

D1188-07.....Bulk Specific Gravity and Density of Compacted  
Bituminous Mixtures Using Paraffin-Coated  
Specimens

D1556-07.....Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the  
Sand-Cone Method

D1557-07.....Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil  
Using Modified Effort

D2166-06.....Unconfined Compressive Strength of Cohesive Soil

D2167-94 (R2001).....Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the  
Rubber Balloon Method

D2216-05.....Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture)  
Content of Soil and Rock by Mass

D2922-05.....Density of soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by  
Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

D2974-07.....Moisture, Ash, and Organic Matter of Peat and  
Other Organic Soils

D3666-(2002).....Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and  
Inspection Bituminous Paving Materials  
D3740-07.....Minimum Requirements for Agencies Engaged in the  
Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Material  
E94-04.....Radiographic Testing  
E164-03.....Ultrasonic Contact Examination of Weldments  
E329-07.....Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection  
and/or Testing  
E543-06.....Agencies Performing Non-Destructive Testing  
E605-93(R2006).....Thickness and Density of Sprayed Fire-Resistive  
Material (SFRM) Applied to Structural Members  
E709-(2001).....Guide for Magnetic Particle Examination  
E1155-96(R2008).....Determining FF Floor Flatness and FL Floor  
Levelness Numbers

E. American Welding Society (AWS):

D1.1-07.....Structural Welding Code-Steel

### **1.3 REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. Accreditation Requirements: Construction materials testing laboratories must be accredited by a laboratory accreditation authority and will be required to submit a copy of the Certificate of Accreditation and Scope of Accreditation. The laboratory's scope of accreditation must include the appropriate ASTM standards (i.e.; E 329, C 1077, D 3666, D3740, A 880, E 543) listed in the technical sections of the specifications. Laboratories engaged in Hazardous Materials Testing shall meet the requirements of OSHA and EPA. The policy applies to the specific laboratory performing the actual testing, not just the "Corporate Office."
- B. Inspection and Testing: Testing laboratory shall inspect materials and workmanship and perform tests described herein and additional tests requested by Resident Engineer. When it appears materials furnished, or work performed by Contractor fail to meet construction contract requirements, Testing Laboratory shall direct attention of Resident Engineer to such failure.
- C. Written Reports: Testing laboratory shall submit test reports to Resident Engineer, Contractor, unless other arrangements are agreed to in writing by the Resident Engineer. Submit reports of tests that fail to meet construction contract requirements on colored paper.
- D. Verbal Reports: Give verbal notification to Resident Engineer immediately of any irregularity.



**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)****PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 EARTHWORK:**

A. General: The Testing Laboratory shall provide qualified personnel, materials, equipment, and transportation as required to perform the services identified/required herein, within the agreed to schedule and/or time frame. The work to be performed shall be as identified herein and shall include but not be limited to the following:

1. Observe fill and subgrades during proof-rolling to evaluate suitability of surface material to receive fill or base course. Provide recommendations to the Resident Engineer regarding suitability or unsuitability of areas where proof-rolling was observed. Where unsuitable results are observed, witness excavation of unsuitable material and recommend to Resident Engineer extent of removal and replacement of unsuitable materials and observe proof-rolling of replaced areas until satisfactory results are obtained.
2. Provide full time observation of fill placement and compaction and field density testing in building areas and provide part time observation of fill placement and compaction and field density testing in pavement areas to verify that earthwork compaction obtained is in accordance with contract documents.
3. Provide supervised geotechnical technician to inspect excavation, subsurface preparation, and backfill for structural fill.

B. Testing Compaction:

1. Determine maximum density and optimum moisture content for each type of fill, backfill and subgrade material used, in compliance with // AASHTO // T99/T180 // Method A // // ASTM // D698 // D1557 // Method A // ASTM D698 and/or ASTM D1557.
2. Make field density tests in accordance with the primary testing method following ASTM D2922 // AASHTO T238 // wherever possible. Field density tests utilizing ASTM D1556 // AASHTO T191 //, or // ASTM D2167 // shall be utilized on a case by case basis only if there are problems with the validity of the results from the primary method due to specific site field conditions. Should the testing laboratory propose these alternative methods, they should provide satisfactory explanation to the Resident Engineer before the tests are conducted.
  - a. Building Slab Subgrade: At least one test of subgrade for every 185 m<sup>2</sup> (2000 square feet) of building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests. In each compacted fill layer, perform one test

for every 185 m<sup>2</sup> (2000 square feet) of overlaying building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.

- b. Foundation Wall Backfill: One test per 30 m (100 feet) of each layer of compacted fill but in no case fewer than two tests.
  - c. Pavement Subgrade: One test for each 335 m<sup>2</sup> (400 square yards), but in no case fewer than two tests.
  - d. Curb, Gutter, and Sidewalk: One test for each 90 m (300 feet), but in no case fewer than two tests.
  - e. Trenches: One test at maximum 30 m (100 foot) intervals per 1200 mm (4 foot) of vertical lift and at changes in required density, but in no case fewer than two tests.
  - f. Footing Subgrade: At least one test for each layer of soil on which footings will be placed. Subsequent verification and approval of each footing subgrade may be based on a visual comparison of each subgrade with related tested subgrade when acceptable to Resident Engineer. In each compacted fill layer below wall footings, perform one field density test for every 30 m (100 feet) of wall. Verify subgrade is level, all loose or disturbed soils have been removed, and correlate actual soil conditions observed with those indicated by test borings.
- C. Testing for Footing Bearing Capacity: Evaluate if suitable bearing capacity material is encountered in footing subgrade.
- D. Testing Materials: Test suitability of on-site and off-site borrow as directed by Resident Engineer.

### **3.2 FOUNDATION PILES:**

- A. Witness load test procedure for conformance with ASTM D1143 and interpret test data to verify geotechnical recommendations for pile capacity. Submit load test report in accordance with ASTM D1143.
- B. Review Contractor's equipment, methods, and procedures prior to starting any work on site. Provide continuous inspection of pile installation. Maintain a record of all pertinent phases of operation for submittal to Resident Engineer.
- C. Auger-Placed Piles: Take and test samples of grout in accordance with ASTM C109 for conformance with specified strength requirements. Not less than six cubes shall be made for each day of casting. Test three cubes at 7 days and three at 28 days.
- D. Cast-in-Place Concrete Piles: Test concrete including materials for concrete as required in Article CONCRETE of this section, except make two test cylinders for each day's production of each strength of concrete produced.

**3.3 FOUNDATION CAISSONS:**

- A. Concrete Testing: Test concrete including materials for concrete as required in Article, CONCRETE of this section, except make two test cylinders for each day's placement of concrete.
- B. Maintain a record of concrete used in each caisson. Compare records with calculated volumes.
- C. Inspect percussion hole in bottom of each caisson to determine that material is capable of supporting design load.
- D. Inspect sides and bottom of each caisson for compliance with contract documents.
- E. Submit a certified "Caisson Field Record" for each caisson, recording actual elevation at bottom of shaft; final center line location of top; variation of shaft from plumb; results of all tests performed; actual allowable bearing capacity of bottom; depth of socket into rock; levelness of bottom; seepage of water; still water level (if allowed to flood); variation of shaft (from dimensions shown); location and size of reinforcement, and evidence of seams, voids, or channels below the bottom. Verify the actual bearing capacity of the rock strata by the use of a calibrated penetrometer or other acceptable method.
- F. Caissons Bearing on Hardpan: Take undisturbed samples, suitable for tests required, from caisson bottom. Make auger probe to a depth of 2.5 meters (8 feet) below bottom and visually inspect and classify soil. Verify continuity of strata and thickness.
  - 1. Conduct the following test on each sample, and report results and evaluations to the Resident Engineer:
    - a. Unconfined Compression Test (ASTM D2166).
    - b. Moisture Content (ASTM D2216).
    - c. Density.

**3.4 LANDSCAPING:**

- A. Test topsoil for organic materials, pH, phosphate, potash content, and gradation of particles.
  - 1. Test for organic material by using ASTM D2974.
  - 2. Determine percent of silt, sand, clay, and foreign materials such as rock, roots, and vegetation.
- B. Submit laboratory test report of topsoil to Resident Engineer.

**3.5 ASPHALT CONCRETE PAVING:**

- A. Aggregate Base Course:
  - 1. Determine maximum density and optimum moisture content for aggregate base material in accordance with // AASHTO T180, Method D // ASTM D1557, Method D //

2. Make a minimum of three field density tests on each day's final compaction on each aggregate course in accordance with // AASHTO T191 // ASTM D1556 //.
3. Sample and test aggregate as necessary to insure compliance with specification requirements for gradation, wear, and soundness as specified in the applicable state highway standards and specifications.

**B. Asphalt Concrete:**

1. Aggregate: Sample and test aggregates in stock pile and hot-bins as necessary to insure compliance with specification requirements for gradation (AASHTO T27), wear (AASHTO T96), and soundness (AASHTO T104).
2. Temperature: Check temperature of each load of asphalt concrete at mixing plant and at site of paving operation.
3. Density: Make a minimum of two field density tests in accordance with ASTM D1188 of asphalt base and surface course for each day's paving operation.

**3.6 SITE WORK CONCRETE:**

Test site work concrete including materials for concrete as required in Article CONCRETE of this section.

**3.7 POST-TENSIONING OF CONCRETE:**

- A. Inspection Prior to Concreting: Inspect tendons, drape of tendons, and anchorage components for compliance prior to concreting.
- B. Concrete Testing: As required in Article, CONCRETE of this section except make three test cylinders representing each area to be tensioned and cylinders shall be cured in same manner as concrete they represent. Make compression test prior to determining minimum specified strength required for post-tensioning.
- C. Post-tensioning: Witness post-tensioning operation and record actual gauge pressures and elongations applied to each tendon.
- D. Submit reports in quadruplicate of the following:
  1. Inspection of placement and post-tensioning of all tendons.
  2. Size, number, location, and drape of tendons.
  3. Calculated elongations, based upon the length, modulus of elasticity, and cross-sectional area of the tendons used.
  4. Actual field elongations. Check elongation of tendons within ranges established by manufacturer.
  5. Calculated gauge pressure and jacking force applied to each tendon.
  6. Actual gauge pressures and jacking force applied to each tendon.
  7. Required concrete strength at time of jacking.

8. Actual concrete strength at time of jacking.
9. Do not cut or cover the tendon ends until the Contractor receives the Resident Engineer's written approval of the post-tensioning records.

### **3.8 CONCRETE:**

#### **A. Batch Plant Inspection and Materials Testing:**

1. Perform continuous batch plant inspection until concrete quality is established to satisfaction of Resident Engineer with concurrence of Contracting Officer and perform periodic inspections thereafter as determined by Resident Engineer.
2. Periodically inspect and test batch proportioning equipment for accuracy and report deficiencies to Resident Engineer.
3. Sample and test mix ingredients as necessary to insure compliance with specifications.
4. Sample and test aggregates daily and as necessary for moisture content. Test the dry rodded weight of the coarse aggregate whenever a sieve analysis is made, and when it appears there has been a change in the aggregate.
5. Certify, in duplicate, ingredients and proportions and amounts of ingredients in concrete conform to approved trial mixes. When concrete is batched or mixed off immediate building site, certify (by signing, initialing or stamping thereon) on delivery slips (duplicate) that ingredients in truck-load mixes conform to proportions of aggregate weight, cement factor, and water-cement ratio of approved trial mixes.

#### **B. Field Inspection and Materials Testing:**

1. Provide a technician at site of placement at all times to perform concrete sampling and testing.
2. Review the delivery tickets of the ready-mix concrete trucks arriving on-site. Notify the Contractor if the concrete cannot be placed within the specified time limits or if the type of concrete delivered is incorrect. Reject any loads that do not comply with the Specification requirements. Rejected loads are to be removed from the site at the Contractor's expense. Any rejected concrete that is placed will be subject to removal.
3. Take concrete samples at point of placement in accordance with ASTM C172. Mold and cure compression test cylinders in accordance with ASTM C31. Make at least three cylinders for each 40 m<sup>3</sup> (50 cubic yards) or less of each concrete type, and at least three cylinders for any one day's pour for each concrete type. // After good concrete quality control has been established and maintained as determined by

- Resident Engineer make three cylinders for each 80 m<sup>3</sup> (100 cubic yards) or less of each concrete type, and at least three cylinders from any one day's pour for each concrete type. // Label each cylinder with an identification number. Resident Engineer may require additional cylinders to be molded and cured under job conditions.
4. Perform slump tests in accordance with ASTM C143. Test the first truck each day, and every time test cylinders are made. Test pumped concrete at the hopper and at the discharge end of the hose at the beginning of each day's pumping operations to determine change in slump.
  5. Determine the air content of concrete per ASTM C173. For concrete required to be air-entrained, test the first truck and every 20 m<sup>3</sup> (25 cubic yards) thereafter each day. For concrete not required to be air-entrained, test every 80 m<sup>3</sup> (100 cubic yards) at random. For pumped concrete, initially test concrete at both the hopper and the discharge end of the hose to determine change in air content.
  6. If slump or air content fall outside specified limits, make another test immediately from another portion of same batch.
  7. Perform unit weight tests in compliance with ASTM C138 for normal weight concrete and ASTM C567 for lightweight concrete. Test the first truck and each time cylinders are made.
  8. Notify laboratory technician at batch plant of mix irregularities and request materials and proportioning check.
  9. Verify that specified mixing has been accomplished.
  10. Environmental Conditions: Determine the temperature per ASTM C1064 for each truckload of concrete during hot weather and cold weather concreting operations:
    - a. When ambient air temperature falls below 4.4 degrees C (40 degrees F), record maximum and minimum air temperatures in each 24 hour period; record air temperature inside protective enclosure; record minimum temperature of surface of hardened concrete.
    - b. When ambient air temperature rises above 29.4 degrees C (85 degrees F), record maximum and minimum air temperature in each 24 hour period; record minimum relative humidity; record maximum wind velocity; record maximum temperature of surface of hardened concrete.
  11. Inspect the reinforcing steel placement, including bar size, bar spacing, top and bottom concrete cover, proper tie into the chairs, and grade of steel prior to concrete placement. Submit detailed report of observations.

12. Observe conveying, placement, and consolidation of concrete for conformance to specifications.
  13. Observe condition of formed surfaces upon removal of formwork prior to repair of surface defects and observe repair of surface defects.
  14. Observe curing procedures for conformance with specifications, record dates of concrete placement, start of preliminary curing, start of final curing, end of curing period.
  15. Observe preparations for placement of concrete:
    - a. Inspect handling, conveying, and placing equipment, inspect vibrating and compaction equipment.
    - b. Inspect preparation of construction, expansion, and isolation joints.
  16. Observe preparations for protection from hot weather, cold weather, sun, and rain, and preparations for curing.
  17. Observe concrete mixing:
    - a. Monitor and record amount of water added at project site.
    - b. Observe minimum and maximum mixing times.
  18. Measure concrete flatwork for levelness and flatness as follows:
    - a. Perform Floor Tolerance Measurements  $F_F$  and  $F_L$  in accordance with ASTM E1155. Calculate the actual overall F- numbers using the inferior/superior area method.
    - b. Perform all floor tolerance measurements within 48 hours after slab installation and prior to removal of shoring and formwork.
    - c. Provide the Contractor and the Resident Engineer with the results of all profile tests, including a running tabulation of the overall  $F_F$  and  $F_L$  values for all slabs installed to date, within 72 hours after each slab installation.
  19. Other inspections:
    - a. Grouting under base plates.
    - b. Grouting anchor bolts and reinforcing steel in hardened concrete.
- C. Laboratory Tests of Field Samples:
1. Test compression test cylinders for strength in accordance with ASTM C39. For each test series, test one cylinder at 7 days and one cylinder at 28 days. Use remaining cylinder as a spare tested as directed by Resident Engineer. Compile laboratory test reports as follows: Compressive strength test shall be result of one cylinder, except when one cylinder shows evidence of improper sampling, molding or testing, in which case it shall be discarded and strength of spare cylinder shall be used.

2. Make weight tests of hardened lightweight structural concrete in accordance with ASTM C567.
3. Furnish certified compression test reports (duplicate) to Resident Engineer. In test report, indicate the following information:
  - a. Cylinder identification number and date cast.
  - b. Specific location at which test samples were taken.
  - c. Type of concrete, slump, and percent air.
  - d. Compressive strength of concrete in MPa (psi).
  - e. Weight of lightweight structural concrete in  $\text{kg/m}^3$  (pounds per cubic feet).
  - f. Weather conditions during placing.
  - g. Temperature of concrete in each test cylinder when test cylinder was molded.
  - h. Maximum and minimum ambient temperature during placing.
  - i. Ambient temperature when concrete sample in test cylinder was taken.
  - j. Date delivered to laboratory and date tested.

**3.9 REINFORCEMENT:**

- A. Review mill test reports furnished by Contractor.
- B. Make one tensile and one bend test in accordance with ASTM A370 from each pair of samples obtained.
- C. Written report shall include, in addition to test results, heat number, manufacturer, type and grade of steel, and bar size.
- D. Perform tension tests of mechanical and welded splices in accordance with ASTM A370.

**3.10 SHOTCRETE:**

- A. Inspection and Material Testing:
  1. Provide field inspection and testing service as required by Resident Engineer to certify that shotcrete has been applied in accordance with contract documents.
  2. Periodically inspect and test proportioning equipment for accuracy and report deficiencies to Resident Engineer.
  3. Sample and test mix ingredients as necessary to insure compliance with specifications.
  4. Sample and test aggregates daily and as necessary for moisture content. Report instances of excessive moisture to Resident Engineer.
  5. Certify, in duplicate, that ingredients and proportions and amounts of ingredients in shotcrete conform to approved trial mixes.
  6. Provide field inspection of the proper size and placement of the reinforcement in the shotcrete.



**B. Shotcrete Sampling:**

1. Provide a technician at site of placement to perform shotcrete sampling.
2. Take cores in accordance with ACI 506.
3. Insure maintenance of water-cement ratio established by approved trial mix.
4. Verify specified mixing has been accomplished.

**C. Laboratory Tests of Field Sample Panels:**

1. Compression test core for strength in accordance with ACI 506. For each test series of three cores, test one core at 7 days and one core at 28 days. Use remaining core as a spare to be tested at either 7 or 28 days as required. Compile laboratory test reports as follows: Compressive strength test shall be result of one core, except when one core shows evidence of improper sampling or testing, in which case it shall be discarded and strength of spare core shall be used.
2. Submit certified compression test reports (duplicate) to Resident Engineer. On test report, indicate following information:
  - a. Core identification number and date cast.
  - b. Specific location at which test samples were taken.
  - c. Compressive strength of shotcrete in MPa (psi).
  - d. Weather conditions during placing.
  - e. Temperature of shotcrete in each test core when test core was taken.
  - f. Maximum and minimum ambient temperature during placing.
  - g. Ambient temperature when shotcrete sample was taken.
  - h. Date delivered to laboratory and date tested.

- D. Submit inspection reports certification and instances of noncompliance to Resident Engineer.

**3.11 ARCHITECTURAL PRECAST CONCRETE:**

- A. Inspection at Plant: Forms, placement of reinforcing steel, concrete cover, and placement and finishing of concrete.
- B. Concrete Testing: Test concrete including materials for concrete as required in Article CONCRETE of this section, except make two test cylinders for each day's production of each strength of concrete produced.
- C. Inspect members to insure specification requirements for curing and finishes have been met.

**3.12 MASONRY:**

- A. Mortar Tests:
  1. Laboratory compressive strength test:

- a. Comply with ASTM C780.
  - b. Obtain samples during or immediately after discharge from batch mixer.
  - c. Furnish molds with 50 mm (2 inch), 3 compartment gang cube.
  - d. Test one sample at 7 days and 2 samples at 28 days.
2. Two tests during first week of operation; one test per week after initial test until masonry completion.
- B. Grout Tests:
1. Laboratory compressive strength test:
    - a. Comply with ASTM C1019.
    - b. Test one sample at 7 days and 2 samples at 28 days.
    - c. Perform test for each 230 m<sup>2</sup> (2500 square feet) of masonry.
- C. Masonry Unit Tests:
1. Laboratory Compressive Strength Test:
    - a. Comply with ASTM C140.
    - b. Test 3 samples for each 460 m<sup>2</sup> (5000 square feet) of wall area.
- D. Prism Tests: For each type of wall construction indicated, test masonry prisms per ASTM C1314 for each 460 m<sup>2</sup> (5000 square feet) of wall area. Prepare one set of prisms for testing at 7 days and one set for testing at 28 days.

### **3.13 STRUCTURAL STEEL:**

- A. General: Provide shop and field inspection and testing services to certify structural steel work is done in accordance with contract documents. Welding shall conform to AWS D1.1 Structural Welding Code.
- B. Prefabrication Inspection:
1. Review design and shop detail drawings for size, length, type and location of all welds to be made.
  2. Approve welding procedure qualifications either by pre-qualification or by witnessing qualifications tests.
  3. Approve welder qualifications by certification or retesting.
  4. Approve procedure for control of distortion and shrinkage stresses.
  5. Approve procedures for welding in accordance with applicable sections of AWS D1.1.
- C. Fabrication and Erection:
1. Weld Inspection:
    - a. Inspect welding equipment for capacity, maintenance and working condition.
    - b. Verify specified electrodes and handling and storage of electrodes in accordance with AWS D1.1.

- c. Inspect preparation and assembly of materials to be welded for conformance with AWS D1.1.
  - d. Inspect preheating and interpass temperatures for conformance with AWS D1.1.
  - e. Measure 25 percent of fillet welds.
  - f. Welding Magnetic Particle Testing: Test in accordance with ASTM E709 for a minimum of:
    - 1) 20 percent of all shear plate fillet welds at random, final pass only.
    - 2) 20 percent of all continuity plate and bracing gusset plate fillet welds, at random, final pass only.
    - 3) 100 percent of tension member fillet welds (i.e., hanger connection plates and other similar connections) for root and final passes.
    - 4) 20 percent of length of built-up column member partial penetration and fillet welds at random for root and final passes.
    - 5) 100 percent of length of built-up girder member partial penetration and fillet welds for root and final passes.
  - g. Welding Ultrasonic Testing: Test in accordance with ASTM E164 and AWS D1.1 for 100 percent of all full penetration welds, braced and moment frame column splices, and a minimum of 20 percent of all other partial penetration column splices, at random.
  - h. Welding Radiographic Testing: Test in accordance with ASTM E94, and AWS D1.1 for 5 percent of all full penetration welds at random.
  - i. Verify that correction of rejected welds are made in accordance with AWS D1.1.
  - j. Testing and inspection do not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for providing materials and fabrication procedures in compliance with the specified requirements.
2. Bolt Inspection:
- a. Inspect high-strength bolted connections in accordance AISC Specifications for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts.
  - b. Slip-Critical Connections: Inspect 10 percent of bolts, but not less than 2 bolts, selected at random in each connection in accordance with AISC Specifications for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts. Inspect all bolts in connection when one or more are rejected.

- c. Fully Pre-tensioned Connections: Inspect 10 percent of bolts, but not less than 2 bolts, selected at random in 25 percent of connections in accordance with AISC Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts. Inspect all bolts in connection when one or more are rejected.
- d. Bolts installed by turn-of-nut tightening may be inspected with calibrated wrench when visual inspection was not performed during tightening.
- e. Snug Tight Connections: Inspect 10 percent of connections verifying that plies of connected elements have been brought into snug contact.
- f. Inspect field erected assemblies; verify locations of structural steel for plumbness, level, and alignment.
- D. Submit inspection reports, record of welders and their certification, and identification, and instances of noncompliance to Resident Engineer.

**3.14 STEEL DECKING:**

- A. Provide field inspection of welds of metal deck to the supporting steel, and testing services to insure steel decking has been installed in accordance with contract documents and manufacturer's requirements.
- B. Qualification of Field Welding: Qualify welding processes and welding operators in accordance with "Welder Qualification" procedures of AWS D1.1. Refer to the "Plug Weld Qualification Procedure" in Part 3 "Field Quality Control."
- C. Submit inspection reports, certification, and instances of noncompliance to Resident Engineer.

**3.15 SHEAR CONNECTOR STUDS:**

- A. Provide field inspection and testing services required by AWS D.1 to insure shear connector studs have been installed in accordance with contract documents.
- B. Tests: Test 20 percent of headed studs for fastening strength in accordance with AWS D1.1.
- C. Submit inspection reports, certification, and instances of noncompliance to Resident Engineer.

**3.16 TYPE OF TEST:**

Approximate  
Number of  
Tests  
Required

- A. Earthwork:

## Laboratory Compaction Test, Soils:

(AASHTO T180) (AASHTO T99) (ASTM D1557) (ASTM D698) \_\_\_\_\_

Field Density, Soils (AASHTO T191, T205, or T238) \_\_\_\_\_

Penetration Test, Soils \_\_\_\_\_

## B. Landscaping:

Topsoil Test \_\_\_\_\_

## C. Aggregate Base:

Laboratory Compaction, (AASHTO T180) (ASTM D1557) \_\_\_\_\_

Field Density, (AASHTO T191) (ASTM D1556) \_\_\_\_\_

Aggregate, Base Course

Gradation (AASHTO T27) \_\_\_\_\_

Wear (AASHTO T96) \_\_\_\_\_

Soundness (AASHTO T104) \_\_\_\_\_

## D. Asphalt Concrete:

Field Density, (AASHTO T230) ASTM D1188 \_\_\_\_\_

Aggregate, Asphalt Concrete

Gradation (AASHTO T27) \_\_\_\_\_

Wear (AASHTO T96) \_\_\_\_\_

Soundness (AASHTO T104) \_\_\_\_\_

## E. Concrete:

Making and Curing Concrete Test Cylinders (ASTM C31) \_\_\_\_\_

Compressive Strength, Test Cylinders (ASTM C39) \_\_\_\_\_

Concrete Slump Test (ASTM C143) \_\_\_\_\_

Concrete Air Content Test (ASTM C173) \_\_\_\_\_

Unit Weight, Lightweight Concrete (ASTM C567) \_\_\_\_\_

Aggregate, Normal Weight:

Gradation (ASTM C33) \_\_\_\_\_

Deleterious Substances (ASTM C33) \_\_\_\_\_

Soundness (ASTM C33) \_\_\_\_\_

Abrasion (ASTM C33) \_\_\_\_\_

Aggregate, Lightweight

Gradation (ASTM C330) \_\_\_\_\_

Deleterious Substances (ASTM C330) \_\_\_\_\_

Unit Weight (ASTM C330) \_\_\_\_\_

Flatness and Levelness Readings (ASTM E1155) (number of days) \_\_\_\_\_

F. Reinforcing Steel:

Tensile Test (ASTM A370) \_\_\_\_\_

Bend Test (ASTM A370) \_\_\_\_\_

Mechanical Splice (ASTM A370) \_\_\_\_\_

Welded Splice Test (ASTM A370) \_\_\_\_\_

G. Shotcrete:

Taking and Curing Test Cores (ACI 506) \_\_\_\_\_

Compressive Strength, Test Cores (ACI 506) \_\_\_\_\_

H. Masonry:

Making and Curing Test Cubes (ASTM C109) \_\_\_\_\_

Compressive Strength, Test Cubes (ASTM C109) \_\_\_\_\_

Sampling and Testing Mortar, Comp. Strength (ASTM C780) \_\_\_\_\_

Sampling and Testing Grout, Comp. Strength (ASTM C1019) \_\_\_\_\_

Masonry Unit, Compressive Strength (ASTM C140) \_\_\_\_\_

Prism Tests (ASTM C1314) \_\_\_\_\_

I. Structural Steel:

Ultrasonic Testing of Welds (ASTM E164) \_\_\_\_\_

Magnetic Particle Testing of Welds (ASTM E709) \_\_\_\_\_

Radiographic Testing of Welds (ASTM E94) \_\_\_\_\_

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 01 57 19**  
**TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies the control of environmental pollution and damage that the Contractor must consider for air, water, and land resources. It includes management of visual aesthetics, noise, solid waste, radiant energy, and radioactive materials, as well as other pollutants and resources encountered or generated by the Contractor. The Contractor is obligated to consider specified control measures with the costs included within the various contract items of work.
- B. Environmental pollution and damage is defined as the presence of chemical, physical, or biological elements or agents which:
1. Adversely effect human health or welfare,
  2. Unfavorably alter ecological balances of importance to human life,
  3. Effect other species of importance to humankind, or;
  4. Degrade the utility of the environment for aesthetic, cultural, and historical purposes.
- C. Definitions of Pollutants:
1. Chemical Waste: Petroleum products, bituminous materials, salts, acids, alkalis, herbicides, pesticides, organic chemicals, and inorganic wastes.
  2. Debris: Combustible and noncombustible wastes, such as leaves, tree trimmings, ashes, and waste materials resulting from construction or maintenance and repair work.
  3. Sediment: Soil and other debris that has been eroded and transported by runoff water.
  4. Solid Waste: Rubbish, debris, garbage, and other discarded solid materials resulting from industrial, commercial, and agricultural operations and from community activities.
  5. Surface Discharge: The term "Surface Discharge" implies that the water is discharged with possible sheeting action and subsequent soil erosion may occur. Waters that are surface discharged may terminate in drainage ditches, storm sewers, creeks, and/or "water of the United States" and would require a permit to discharge water from the governing agency.
  6. Rubbish: Combustible and noncombustible wastes such as paper, boxes, glass and crockery, metal and lumber scrap, tin cans, and bones.

**7. Sanitary Wastes:**

- a. Sewage: Domestic sanitary sewage and human and animal waste.
- b. Garbage: Refuse and scraps resulting from preparation, cooking, dispensing, and consumption of food.

**1.2 QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Establish and maintain quality control for the environmental protection of all items set forth herein.
- B. Record on daily reports any problems in complying with laws, regulations, and ordinances. Note any corrective action taken.

**1.3 REFERENCES**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.
- B. U.S. National Archives and Records Administration (NARA):  
33 CFR 328.....Definitions

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. In accordance with Section, 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES, furnish the following:
  - 1. Environmental Protection Plan: After the contract is awarded and prior to the commencement of the work, the Contractor shall meet with the Resident Engineer to discuss the proposed Environmental Protection Plan and to develop mutual understanding relative to details of environmental protection. Not more than 20 days after the meeting, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Resident Engineer for approval, a written and/or graphic Environmental Protection Plan including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Name(s) of person(s) within the Contractor's organization who is (are) responsible for ensuring adherence to the Environmental Protection Plan.
    - b. Name(s) and qualifications of person(s) responsible for manifesting hazardous waste to be removed from the site.
    - c. Name(s) and qualifications of person(s) responsible for training the Contractor's environmental protection personnel.
    - d. Description of the Contractor's environmental protection personnel training program.
    - e. A list of Federal, State, and local laws, regulations, and permits concerning environmental protection, pollution control, noise control and abatement that are applicable to the Contractor's proposed operations and the requirements imposed by those laws, regulations, and permits.



- f. Methods for protection of features to be preserved within authorized work areas including trees, shrubs, vines, grasses, ground cover, landscape features, air and water quality, fish and wildlife, soil, historical, and archeological and cultural resources.
  - g. Procedures to provide the environmental protection that comply with the applicable laws and regulations. Describe the procedures to correct pollution of the environment due to accident, natural causes, or failure to follow the procedures as described in the Environmental Protection Plan.
  - h. Permits, licenses, and the location of the solid waste disposal area.
  - i. Drawings showing locations of any proposed temporary excavations or embankments for haul roads, material storage areas, structures, sanitary facilities, and stockpiles of excess or spoil materials. Include as part of an Erosion Control Plan approved by the District Office of the U.S. Soil Conservation Service and the Department of Veterans Affairs.
  - j. Environmental Monitoring Plans for the job site including land, water, air, and noise.
  - k. Work Area Plan showing the proposed activity in each portion of the area and identifying the areas of limited use or nonuse. Plan should include measures for marking the limits of use areas. This plan may be incorporated within the Erosion Control Plan.
- B. Approval of the Contractor's Environmental Protection Plan will not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for adequate and continued control of pollutants and other environmental protection measures.

#### **1.5 PROTECTION OF ENVIRONMENTAL RESOURCES**

- A. Protect environmental resources within the project boundaries and those affected outside the limits of permanent work during the entire period of this contract. Confine activities to areas defined by the specifications and drawings.
- B. Protection of Land Resources: Prior to construction, identify all land resources to be preserved within the work area. Do not remove, cut, deface, injure, or destroy land resources including trees, shrubs, vines, grasses, top soil, and land forms without permission from the Resident Engineer. Do not fasten or attach ropes, cables, or guys to trees for anchorage unless specifically authorized, or where special emergency use is permitted.

1. Work Area Limits: Prior to any construction, mark the areas that require work to be performed under this contract. Mark or fence isolated areas within the general work area that are to be saved and protected. Protect monuments, works of art, and markers before construction operations begin. Convey to all personnel the purpose of marking and protecting all necessary objects.
2. Protection of Landscape: Protect trees, shrubs, vines, grasses, land forms, and other landscape features shown on the drawings to be preserved by marking, fencing, or using any other approved techniques.
  - a. Box and protect from damage existing trees and shrubs to remain on the construction site.
  - b. Immediately repair all damage to existing trees and shrubs by trimming, cleaning, and painting with antiseptic tree paint.
  - c. Do not store building materials or perform construction activities closer to existing trees or shrubs than the farthest extension of their limbs.
3. Reduction of Exposure of Unprotected Erodible Soils: Plan and conduct earthwork to minimize the duration of exposure of unprotected soils. Clear areas in reasonably sized increments only as needed to use. Form earthwork to final grade as shown. Immediately protect side slopes and back slopes upon completion of rough grading.
4. Temporary Protection of Disturbed Areas: Construct diversion ditches, benches, and berms to retard and divert runoff from the construction site to protected drainage areas approved under paragraph 208 of the Clean Water Act.
  - b. Reuse or conserve the collected topsoil sediment as directed by the Resident Engineer. Topsoil use and requirements are specified in Section 31 20 00, EARTH MOVING.
  - c. Institute effluent quality monitoring programs as required by Federal, State, and local environmental agencies.
5. Erosion and Sedimentation Control Devices: The erosion and sediment controls selected and maintained by the Contractor shall be such that water quality standards are not violated as a result of the Contractor's activities. Construct or install all temporary and permanent erosion and sedimentation control features on the Environmental Protection Plan. Maintain temporary erosion and sediment control measures such as berms, dikes, drains, sedimentation basins, grassing, and mulching, until permanent drainage and erosion control facilities are completed and operative.

6. Manage borrow areas on and off Government property to minimize erosion and to prevent sediment from entering nearby water courses or lakes.
  7. Manage and control spoil areas on and off Government property to limit spoil to areas on the Environmental Protection Plan and prevent erosion of soil or sediment from entering nearby water courses or lakes.
  8. Protect adjacent areas from despoilment by temporary excavations and embankments.
  9. Handle and dispose of solid wastes in such a manner that will prevent contamination of the environment. Place solid wastes (excluding clearing debris) in containers that are emptied on a regular schedule. Transport all solid waste off Government property and dispose of waste in compliance with Federal, State, and local requirements.
  10. Store chemical waste away from the work areas in corrosion resistant containers and dispose of waste in accordance with Federal, State, and local regulations.
  11. Handle discarded materials other than those included in the solid waste category as directed by the Resident Engineer.
- C. Protection of Water Resources: Keep construction activities under surveillance, management, and control to avoid pollution of surface and ground waters and sewer systems. Implement management techniques to control water pollution by the listed construction activities that are included in this contract.
1. Washing and Curing Water: Do not allow wastewater directly derived from construction activities to enter water areas. Collect and place wastewater in retention ponds allowing the suspended material to settle, the pollutants to separate, or the water to evaporate.
  2. Control movement of materials and equipment at stream crossings during construction to prevent violation of water pollution control standards of the Federal, State, or local government.
  3. Monitor water areas affected by construction.
- D. Protection of Fish and Wildlife Resources: Keep construction activities under surveillance, management, and control to minimize interference with, disturbance of, or damage to fish and wildlife. Prior to beginning construction operations, list species that require specific attention along with measures for their protection.
- E. Protection of Air Resources: Keep construction activities under surveillance, management, and control to minimize pollution of air

resources. Burning is not permitted on the job site. Keep activities, equipment, processes, and work operated or performed, in strict accordance with the State of West Virginia and Federal emission and performance laws and standards. Maintain ambient air quality standards set by the Environmental Protection Agency, for those construction operations and activities specified.

1. Particulates: Control dust particles, aerosols, and gaseous by-products from all construction activities, processing, and preparation of materials (such as from asphaltic batch plants) at all times, including weekends, holidays, and hours when work is not in progress.
  2. Particulates Control: Maintain all excavations, stockpiles, haul roads, permanent and temporary access roads, plant sites, spoil areas, borrow areas, and all other work areas within or outside the project boundaries free from particulates which would cause a hazard or a nuisance. Sprinklering, chemical treatment of an approved type, light bituminous treatment, baghouse, scrubbers, electrostatic precipitators, or other methods are permitted to control particulates in the work area.
  3. Hydrocarbons and Carbon Monoxide: Control monoxide emissions from equipment to Federal and State allowable limits.
  4. Odors: Control odors of construction activities and prevent obnoxious odors from occurring.
- F. Reduction of Noise: Minimize noise using every action possible. Perform noise-producing work in less sensitive hours of the day or week as directed by the Resident Engineer. Maintain noise-produced work at or below the decibel levels and within the time periods specified.
1. Perform construction activities involving repetitive, high-level impact noise only between 8:00a.m. and 6:00p.m? unless otherwise permitted by local ordinance or the Resident Engineer. Repetitive impact noise on the property shall not exceed the following dB limitations:

Time Duration of Impact Noise	Sound Level in dB
More than 12 minutes in any hour	70
Less than 30 seconds of any hour	85
Less than three minutes of any hour	80
Less than 12 minutes of any hour	75

2. Provide sound-deadening devices on equipment and take noise abatement measures that are necessary to comply with the requirements of this contract, consisting of, but not limited to, the following:

- a. Maintain maximum permissible construction equipment noise levels at 15 m (50 feet) (dBA):

EARTHMOVING		MATERIALS HANDLING	
FRONT LOADERS	75	CONCRETE MIXERS	75
BACKHOES	75	CONCRETE PUMPS	75
DOZERS	75	CRANES	75
TRACTORS	75	DERRICKS IMPACT	75
SCAPERS	80	PILE DRIVERS	95
GRADERS	75	JACK HAMMERS	75
TRUCKS	75	ROCK DRILLS	80
PAVERS, STATIONARY	80	PNEUMATIC TOOLS	80
PUMPS	75	BLASTING	--
GENERATORS	75	SAWS	75
COMPRESSORS	75	VIBRATORS	75

- b. Use shields or other physical barriers to restrict noise transmission.
- c. Provide soundproof housings or enclosures for noise-producing machinery.
- d. Use efficient silencers on equipment air intakes.
- e. Use efficient intake and exhaust mufflers on internal combustion engines that are maintained so equipment performs below noise levels specified.
- f. Line hoppers and storage bins with sound deadening material.
- g. Conduct truck loading, unloading, and hauling operations so that noise is kept to a minimum.
3. Measure sound level for noise exposure due to the construction at least once every five successive working days while work is being performed above 55 dB(A) noise level. Measure noise exposure at the property line or 15 m (50 feet) from the noise source, whichever is greater. Measure the sound levels on the A weighing network of a General Purpose sound level meter at slow response. To minimize the effect of reflective sound waves at buildings, take measurements at 900 to 1800 mm (three to six feet) in front of any building face. Submit the recorded information to the Resident Engineer noting any problems and the alternatives for mitigating actions.

- G. Restoration of Damaged Property: If any direct or indirect damage is done to public or private property resulting from any act, omission, neglect, or misconduct, the Contractor shall restore the damaged property to a condition equal to that existing before the damage at no additional cost to the Government. Repair, rebuild, or restore property as directed or make good such damage in an acceptable manner.
- H. Final Clean-up: On completion of project and after removal of all debris, rubbish, and temporary construction, Contractor shall leave the construction area in a clean condition satisfactory to the Resident Engineer. Cleaning shall include off the station disposal of all items and materials not required to be salvaged, as well as all debris and rubbish resulting from demolition and new work operations.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 01 74 19  
CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies the requirements for the management of non-hazardous building construction and demolition waste.
- B. Waste disposal in landfills shall be minimized to the greatest extent possible. Of the inevitable waste that is generated, as much of the waste material as economically feasible shall be salvaged, recycled or reused.
- C. Contractor shall use all reasonable means to divert construction and demolition waste from landfills and incinerators, and facilitate their salvage and recycle not limited to the following:
  - 1. Waste Management Plan development and implementation.
  - 2. Techniques to minimize waste generation.
  - 3. Sorting and separating of waste materials.
  - 4. Salvage of existing materials and items for reuse or resale.
  - 5. Recycling of materials that cannot be reused or sold.
- D. At a minimum the following waste categories shall be diverted from landfills:
  - 1. Soil.
  - 2. Inerts (eg, concrete, masonry and asphalt).
  - 3. Clean dimensional wood and palette wood.
  - 4. Green waste (biodegradable landscaping materials).
  - 5. Engineered wood products (plywood, particle board and I-joists, etc).
  - 6. Metal products (eg, steel, wire, beverage containers, copper, etc).
  - 7. Cardboard, paper and packaging.
  - 8. Bitumen roofing materials.
  - 9. Plastics (eg, ABS, PVC).
  - 10. Carpet and/or pad.
  - 11. Gypsum board.
  - 12. Insulation.
  - 13. Paint.
  - 14. Fluorescent lamps.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 02 41 00, DEMOLITION.

B. Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.

### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Contractor shall practice efficient waste management when sizing, cutting and installing building products. Processes shall be employed to ensure the generation of as little waste as possible. Construction /Demolition waste includes products of the following:
  - 1. Excess or unusable construction materials.
  - 2. Packaging used for construction products.
  - 3. Poor planning and/or layout.
  - 4. Construction error.
  - 5. Over ordering.
  - 6. Weather damage.
  - 7. Contamination.
  - 8. Mishandling.
  - 9. Breakage.
- B. Establish and maintain the management of non-hazardous building construction and demolition waste set forth herein. Conduct a site assessment to estimate the types of materials that will be generated by demolition and construction.
- C. Contractor shall develop and implement procedures to reuse and recycle new materials to a minimum of 50 percent.
- D. Contractor shall be responsible for implementation of any special programs involving rebates or similar incentives related to recycling. Any revenues or savings obtained from salvage or recycling shall accrue to the contractor.
- E. Contractor shall provide all demolition, removal and legal disposal of materials. Contractor shall ensure that facilities used for recycling, reuse and disposal shall be permitted for the intended use to the extent required by local, state, federal regulations. The Whole Building Design Guide website <http://www.wbdg.org> provides a Construction Waste Management Database that contains information on companies that haul, collect, and process recyclable debris from construction projects.
- F. Contractor shall assign a specific area to facilitate separation of materials for reuse, salvage, recycling, and return. Such areas are to be kept neat and clean and clearly marked in order to avoid contamination or mixing of materials.



- G. Contractor shall provide on-site instructions and supervision of separation, handling, salvaging, recycling, reuse and return methods to be used by all parties during waste generating stages.
- H. Record on daily reports any problems in complying with laws, regulations and ordinances with corrective action taken.

#### **1.4 TERMINOLOGY**

- A. Class III Landfill: A landfill that accepts non-hazardous resources such as household, commercial and industrial waste resulting from construction, remodeling, repair and demolition operations.
- B. Clean: Untreated and unpainted; uncontaminated with adhesives, oils, solvents, mastics and like products.
- C. Construction and Demolition Waste: Includes all non-hazardous resources resulting from construction, remodeling, alterations, repair and demolition operations.
- D. Dismantle: The process of parting out a building in such a way as to preserve the usefulness of its materials and components.
- E. Disposal: Acceptance of solid wastes at a legally operating facility for the purpose of land filling (includes Class III landfills and inert fills).
- F. Inert Backfill Site: A location, other than inert fill or other disposal facility, to which inert materials are taken for the purpose of filling an excavation, shoring or other soil engineering operation.
- G. Inert Fill: A facility that can legally accept inert waste, such as asphalt and concrete exclusively for the purpose of disposal.
- H. Inert Solids/Inert Waste: Non-liquid solid resources including, but not limited to, soil and concrete that does not contain hazardous waste or soluble pollutants at concentrations in excess of water-quality objectives established by a regional water board, and does not contain significant quantities of decomposable solid resources.
- I. Mixed Debris: Loads that include commingled recyclable and non-recyclable materials generated at the construction site.
- J. Mixed Debris Recycling Facility: A solid resource processing facility that accepts loads of mixed construction and demolition debris for the purpose of recovering re-usable and recyclable materials and disposing non-recyclable materials.

- K. Permitted Waste Hauler: A company that holds a valid permit to collect and transport solid wastes from individuals or businesses for the purpose of recycling or disposal.
- L. Recycling: The process of sorting, cleansing, treating, and reconstituting materials for the purpose of using the altered form in the manufacture of a new product. Recycling does not include burning, incinerating or thermally destroying solid waste.
1. On-site Recycling - Materials that are sorted and processed on site for use in an altered state in the work, i.e. concrete crushed for use as a sub-base in paving.
  2. Off-site Recycling - Materials hauled to a location and used in an altered form in the manufacture of new products.
- M. Recycling Facility: An operation that can legally accept materials for the purpose of processing the materials into an altered form for the manufacture of new products. Depending on the types of materials accepted and operating procedures, a recycling facility may or may not be required to have a solid waste facilities permit or be regulated by the local enforcement agency.
- N. Reuse: Materials that are recovered for use in the same form, on-site or off-site.
- O. Return: To give back reusable items or unused products to vendors for credit.
- P. Salvage: To remove waste materials from the site for resale or re-use by a third party.
- Q. Source-Separated Materials: Materials that are sorted by type at the site for the purpose of reuse and recycling.
- R. Solid Waste: Materials that have been designated as non-recyclable and are discarded for the purposes of disposal.
- S. Transfer Station: A facility that can legally accept solid waste for the purpose of temporarily storing the materials for re-loading onto other trucks and transporting them to a landfill for disposal, or recovering some materials for re-use or recycling.

#### **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. In accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, and SAMPLES, furnish the following:

- B. Prepare and submit to the Resident Engineer a written demolition debris management plan. The plan shall include, but not be limited to, the following information:
1. Procedures to be used for debris management.
  2. Techniques to be used to minimize waste generation.
  3. Analysis of the estimated job site waste to be generated:
    - a. List of each material and quantity to be salvaged, reused, recycled.
    - b. List of each material and quantity proposed to be taken to a landfill.
  4. Detailed description of the Means/Methods to be used for material handling.
    - a. On site: Material separation, storage, protection where applicable.
    - b. Off site: Transportation means and destination. Include list of materials.
      - 1) Description of materials to be site-separated and self-hauled to designated facilities.
      - 2) Description of mixed materials to be collected by designated waste haulers and removed from the site.
    - c. The names and locations of mixed debris reuse and recycling facilities or sites.
    - d. The names and locations of trash disposal landfill facilities or sites.
    - e. Documentation that the facilities or sites are approved to receive the materials.
- C. Designated Manager responsible for instructing personnel, supervising, documenting and administer over meetings relevant to the Waste Management Plan.
- D. Monthly summary of construction and demolition debris diversion and disposal, quantifying all materials generated at the work site and disposed of or diverted from disposal through recycling.

#### **1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced by the basic designation only. In the event that criteria requirements conflict, the most stringent requirements shall be met.

## B. U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC):

LEED Green Building Rating System for New Construction

**1.7 RECORDS**

Maintain records to document the quantity of waste generated; the quantity of waste diverted through sale, reuse, or recycling; and the quantity of waste disposed by landfill or incineration. Records shall be kept in accordance with the LEED Reference Guide and LEED Template.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. List of each material and quantity to be salvaged, recycled, reused.
- B. List of each material and quantity proposed to be taken to a landfill.
- C. Material tracking data: Receiving parties, dates removed, transportation costs, weight tickets, tipping fees, manifests, invoices, net total costs or savings.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 COLLECTION**

- A. Provide all necessary containers, bins and storage areas to facilitate effective waste management.
- B. Clearly identify containers, bins and storage areas so that recyclable materials are separated from trash and can be transported to respective recycling facility for processing.
- C. Hazardous wastes shall be separated, stored, disposed of according to local, state, federal regulations.

**3.2 DISPOSAL**

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for transporting and disposing of materials that cannot be delivered to a source-separated or mixed materials recycling facility to a transfer station or disposal facility that can accept the materials in accordance with state and federal regulations.
- B. Construction or demolition materials with no practical reuse or that cannot be salvaged or recycled shall be disposed of at a landfill or incinerator.

**3.3 REPORT**

- A. With each application for progress payment, submit a summary of construction and demolition debris diversion and disposal including beginning and ending dates of period covered.

- B. Quantify all materials diverted from landfill disposal through salvage or recycling during the period with the receiving parties, dates removed, transportation costs, weight tickets, manifests, invoices. Include the net total costs or savings for each salvaged or recycled material.
- C. Quantify all materials disposed of during the period with the receiving parties, dates removed, transportation costs, weight tickets, tipping fees, manifests, invoices. Include the net total costs for each disposal.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 02 41 00  
DEMOLITION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

This section specifies demolition and removal of buildings, portions of buildings, utilities, other structures and debris from trash dumps shown.

**1.2 RELATED WORK:**

- A. Demolition and removal of roads, walks, curbs, and on-grade slabs outside buildings to be demolished: Section 31 20 11, EARTH MOVING (SHORT FORM).
- B. Safety Requirements: GENERAL CONDITIONS Article, ACCIDENT PREVENTION.
- C. Disconnecting utility services prior to demolition: Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- D. Reserved items that are to remain the property of the Government: Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- G. Environmental Protection: Section 01 57 19, TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS.
- H. Construction Waste Management: Section 017419 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT.
- I. Removal of underground water storage tank (as shown in reference drawing). Contractor to assess need for partial or full removal for Work pertaining to Garage Construction. Notify VA and Architect prior to execution of demolition.

**1.3 PROTECTION:**

- A. Perform demolition in such manner as to eliminate hazards to persons and property; to minimize interference with use of adjacent areas, utilities and structures or interruption of use of such utilities; and to provide free passage to and from such adjacent areas of structures. Comply with requirements of GENERAL CONDITIONS Article, ACCIDENT PREVENTION.
- B. Provide safeguards, including warning signs, barricades, temporary fences, warning lights, and other similar items that are required for protection of all personnel during demolition and removal operations. Comply with requirements of Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, Article PROTECTION OF EXISTING VEGETATION, STRUCTURES, EQUIPMENT, UTILITIES AND IMPROVEMENTS.
- C. Maintain fences, barricades, lights, and other similar items around exposed excavations until such excavations have been completely filled.

- E. Prevent spread of flying particles and dust. Sprinkle rubbish and debris with water to keep dust to a minimum. Do not use water if it results in hazardous or objectionable condition such as, but not limited to; ice, flooding, or pollution. Vacuum and dust the work area daily.
- F. In addition to previously listed fire and safety rules to be observed in performance of work, include following:
  - 3. Wherever a cutting torch or other equipment that might cause a fire is used, provide and maintain fire extinguishers nearby ready for immediate use. Instruct all possible users in use of fire extinguishers.
  - 4. Keep hydrants clear and accessible at all times. Prohibit debris from accumulating within a radius of 4500 mm (15 feet) of fire hydrants.
- G. Before beginning any demolition work, the Contractor shall survey the site and examine the drawings and specifications to determine the extent of the work. The contractor shall take necessary precautions to avoid damages to existing items to remain in place, to be reused, or to remain the property of the Medical Center any damaged items shall be repaired or replaced as approved by the Resident Engineer. The Contractor shall coordinate the work of this section with all other work and shall construct and maintain shoring, bracing, and supports as required. The Contractor shall ensure that structural elements are not overloaded and shall be responsible for increasing structural supports or adding new supports as may be required as a result of any cutting, removal, or demolition work performed under this contract. Do not overload structural elements. Provide new supports and reinforcement for existing construction weakened by demolition or removal works. Repairs, reinforcement, or structural replacement must have Resident Engineer's approval.
- H. The work shall comply with the requirements of Section 01 57 19, TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS.
- I. The work shall comply with the requirements of Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**1.4 UTILITY SERVICES:**

- A. Demolish and remove outside utility service lines shown to be removed.
- B. Remove abandoned outside utility lines that would interfere with installation of new utility lines and new construction.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)****PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 DEMOLITION:**

- B. Debris shall become property of Contractor and shall be disposed of by him daily, off Medical Center to avoid accumulation at the demolition site. Materials that cannot be removed daily shall be stored in areas specified by the Resident Engineer. Break up concrete slabs below grade that do not require removal from present location into pieces not exceeding 600 mm (24 inches) square to permit drainage. Contractor shall dispose debris in compliance with applicable federal, state or local permits, rules and/or regulations.
- D. Remove and legally dispose of all materials, other than earth to remain as part of project work, from any trash dumps shown. Materials removed shall become property of contractor and shall be disposed of in compliance with applicable federal, state or local permits, rules and/or regulations. All materials in the indicated trash dump areas, including above surrounding grade and extending to a depth of 1500mm (5feet) below surrounding grade, shall be included as part of the lump sum compensation for the work of this section. Materials that are located beneath the surface of the surrounding ground more than 1500 mm (5 feet), or materials that are discovered to be hazardous, shall be handled as unforeseen. The removal of hazardous material shall be referred to Hazardous Materials specifications.
- E. Remove existing utilities as indicated or uncovered by work and terminate in a manner conforming to the nationally recognized code covering the specific utility and approved by the Resident Engineer. When Utility lines are encountered that are not indicated on the drawings, the Resident Engineer shall be notified prior to further work in that area.

**3.2 CLEAN-UP:**

On completion of work of this section and after removal of all debris, leave site in clean condition satisfactory to Resident Engineer. Clean-up shall include off the Medical Center disposal of all items and materials not required to remain property of the Government as well as all debris and rubbish resulting from demolition operations.

- - - E N D - - -



**SECTION 03 30 00  
CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

This section specifies cast-in-place structural concrete and materials and mixes for other concrete.

**1.2 RELATED WORK:**

- A. Materials testing and inspection during construction: Section 01 45 29, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Concrete roads, walks, and similar exterior site work: Section 32 05 23, CEMENT AND CONCRETE FOR EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS.

**1.3 TESTING AGENCY FOR CONCRETE MIX DESIGN:**

- A. Testing agency retained and reimbursed by the Contractor and approved by Resident Engineer.
- B. Testing agency maintaining active participation in Program of Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) of National Institute of Standards and Technology. Accompany request for approval of testing agency with a copy of Report of Latest Inspection of Laboratory Facilities by CCRL.
- C. Testing agency shall furnish equipment and qualified technicians to establish proportions of ingredients for concrete mixes.

**1.4 TOLERANCES:**

- A. Formwork: ACI 117, except the elevation tolerance of formed surfaces before removal of shores is +0 mm (+0 inch) and -20 mm (-3/4 inch).
- B. Reinforcement Fabricating and Placing: ACI 117, except that fabrication tolerance for bar sizes Nos. 10, 13, and 16 (Nos. 3, 4, and 5) (Tolerance Symbol 1 in Fig. 2.1(a), ACI, 117) used as column ties or stirrups is +0 mm (+0 inch) and -13 mm (-1/2 inch) where gross bar length is less than 3600 mm (12 feet), or +0 mm (+0 inch) and -20 mm (-3/4 inch) where gross bar length is 3600 mm (12 feet) or more.
- C. Cross-Sectional Dimension: ACI 117, except tolerance for thickness of slabs 12 inches or less is +20 mm (+3/4 inch) and - 6 mm (-1/4 inch). Tolerance of thickness of beams more than 300 mm (12 inch) but less than 900 mm (3 feet) is +20 mm (+3/4 inch) and -10 mm (-3/8 inch).
- D. Slab Finishes: ACI 117, Section 4.5.6, F-number method in accordance with ASTM E1155, except as follows:
  - 1. Test entire slab surface, including those areas within 600 mm (2 feet) of construction joints and vertical elements that project through slab surface.

2. Maximum elevation change which may occur within 600 mm (2 feet) of any column or wall element is 6 mm (0.25 inches).
3. Allow sample measurement lines that are perpendicular to construction joints to extend past joint into previous placement no further than 1500 mm (5 feet).

**1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. ACI SP-66 - ACI Detailing Manual.
- B. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete.
- C. ACI 301 - Standard Specifications for Structural Concrete.

**1.6 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, and SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings: Reinforcing steel: Complete shop drawings
- C. Mill Test Reports:
  1. Reinforcing Steel.
  2. Cement.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificates:
  1. Abrasive aggregate.
  2. Air-entraining admixture.
  3. Chemical admixtures, including chloride ion content.
  4. Waterproof paper for curing concrete.
  5. Liquid membrane-forming compounds for curing concrete.
  6. Non-shrinking grout.
  7. Liquid hardener.
  8. Expansion joint filler.
  9. Adhesive binder.
- E. Testing Agency for Concrete Mix Design: Approval request including qualifications of principals and technicians and evidence of active participation in program of Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) of National Institute of Standards and Technology and copy of report of latest CCRL, Inspection of Laboratory.
- F. Test Report for Concrete Mix Designs: Trial mixes including water-cement fly ash ratio curves, concrete mix ingredients, and admixtures.
- G.

**1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:**

- A. Conform to ACI 304. Store aggregate separately for each kind or grade, to prevent segregation of sizes and avoid inclusion of dirt and other materials.

- B. Deliver cement in original sealed containers bearing name of brand and manufacturer, and marked with net weight of contents. Store in suitable watertight building in which floor is raised at least 300 mm (1 foot) above ground. Store bulk cement and fly ash in separate suitable bins.
- C. Deliver other packaged materials for use in concrete in original sealed containers, plainly marked with manufacturer's name and brand, and protect from damage until used.

**1.10 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  - 117-10.....Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials
  - 211.1-91 (R2009).....Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight, and Mass Concrete
  - 211.2-98 (R2004).....Selecting Proportions for Structural Lightweight Concrete
  - 214R-02.....Evaluation of Strength Test Results of Concrete
  - 301-10.....Structural Concrete
  - 304R-00 (R2009).....Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete
  - 305R-10.....Hot Weather Concreting
  - 306R-10.....Cold Weather Concreting
  - 308R-01 (R2008).....Standard Practice for Curing Concrete
  - 309R-05.....Guide for Consolidation of Concrete
  - 318-08.....Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete and Commentary
  - 347-04.....Guide to Formwork for Concrete
  - SP-66-04.....ACI Detailing Manual
- C. American National Standards Institute and American Hardboard Association (ANSI/AHA):
  - A135.4-2004.....Basic Hardboard
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - A82/A82M-07.....Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
  - A185/185M-07.....Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
  - A615/A615M-09.....Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

A653/A653M-09.....Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

A706/A706M-09.....Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

A767/A767M-09.....Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

A775/A775M-07.....Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars

A820-06.....Steel Fibers for Fiber-Reinforced Concrete

A996/A996M-09.....Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

C31/C31M-09.....Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the field

C33-08.....Concrete Aggregates

C39/C39M-09.....Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens

C94/C94M-09.....Ready-Mixed Concrete

C143/C143M-10.....Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete

C150-09.....Portland Cement

C171-07.....Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete

C172-08.....Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete

C173-10.....Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method

C192/C192M-07.....Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory

C231-09.....Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method

C260-06.....Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete

C309-07.....Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete

C330-09.....Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete

C494/C494M-10.....Chemical Admixtures for Concrete

C618-08.....Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Concrete

C666/C666M-03.....Resistance of Concrete to Rapid Freezing and Thawing

C881/C881M-02.....Epoxy-Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete

C1107/1107M-08.....Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Non-shrink)

- C1315-08.....Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds Having Special  
Properties for Curing and Sealing Concrete
- D6-95 (R2006).....Loss on Heating of Oil and Asphaltic Compounds
- D297-93 (R2006).....Rubber Products-Chemical Analysis
- D1751-04 (R2008).....Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete  
Paving and Structural Construction (Non-  
extruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
- D4397-09.....Polyethylene Sheeting for Construction,  
Industrial and Agricultural Applications
- E1155-96 (R2008).....Determining  $F_F$  Floor Flatness and  $F_L$  Floor  
Levelness Numbers
- E. American Welding Society (AWS):
- D1.4/D1.4M-11.....Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel
- F. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI):
- Handbook 2008
- G. National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP):
- Report On.....Concrete Sealers for the Protection of Bridge  
Structures
- H. U. S. Department of Commerce Product Standard (PS):
- PS 1.....Construction and Industrial Plywood
- PS 20.....American Softwood Lumber
- I. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers Handbook for Concrete and Cement:
- CRD C513.....Rubber Waterstops
- CRD C572.....Polyvinyl Chloride Waterstops

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS:****2.1 FORMS:**

- A. Wood: PS 20 free from loose knots and suitable to facilitate finishing concrete surface specified; tongue and grooved.
- B. Plywood: PS-1 Exterior Grade B-B (concrete-form) 16 mm (5/8 inch), or 20 mm (3/4 inch) thick for unlined contact form. B-B High Density Concrete Form Overlay optional.
- C. Metal for Concrete Rib-Type Construction: Steel (removal type) of suitable weight and form to provide required rigidity.
- D. Permanent Steel Form for Concrete Slabs: Corrugated, ASTM A653, Grade E, and Galvanized, ASTM A653, G90. Provide venting where insulating concrete fill is used.
- E. Corrugated Fiberboard Void Boxes: Double faced, completely impregnated with paraffin and laminated with moisture resistant adhesive, size as shown. Design forms to support not less than 48 KPa (1000 psf) and not

lose more than 15 percent of their original strength after being completely submerged in water for 24 hours and then air dried.

F. Form Lining:

1. Hardboard: ANSI/AHA A135.4, Class 2 with one (S1S) smooth side)
2. Plywood: Grade B-B Exterior (concrete-form) not less than 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick.
3. Plastic, fiberglass, or elastomeric capable of reproducing the desired pattern or texture.

- G. Form Ties: Develop a minimum working strength of 13.35 kN (3000 pounds) when fully assembled. Ties shall be adjustable in length to permit tightening of forms and not have any lugs, cones, washers to act as spreader within form, nor leave a hole larger than 20 mm (3/4 inch) diameter, or a depression in exposed concrete surface, or leave metal closer than 40 mm (1 1/2 inches) to concrete surface. Wire ties not permitted. Cutting ties back from concrete face not permitted.

**2.2 MATERIALS:**

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150 Type I or II.

- B. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F including supplementary optional requirements relating to reactive aggregates and alkalies, and loss on ignition (LOI) not to exceed 5 percent.

- C. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C33.

1. Size 67 or Size 467 may be used for footings and walls over 300 mm (12 inches) thick.
2. Coarse aggregate for applied topping, encasement of steel columns, and metal pan stair fill shall be Size 7.
3. Maximum size of coarse aggregates not more than one-fifth of narrowest dimension between sides of forms, one-third of depth of slabs, nor three-fourth of minimum clear spacing between reinforcing bars.

- D. D Fine Aggregate: ASTM C33. Fine aggregate for applied concrete floor topping shall pass a 4.75 mm (No. 4) sieve, 10 percent maximum shall pass a 150 µm (No. 100) sieve.

- E. Mixing Water: Fresh, clean, and potable.

F. Admixtures:

1. Water Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494, Type A and not contain more chloride ions than are present in municipal drinking water.
2. Water Reducing, Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494, Type D and not contain more chloride ions than are present in municipal drinking water.

3. High-Range Water-Reducing Admixture (Superplasticizer): ASTM C494, Type F or G, and not contain more chloride ions than are present in municipal drinking water.
  4. Non-Corrosive, Non-Chloride Accelerator: ASTM C494, Type C or E, and not contain more chloride ions than are present in municipal drinking water. Admixture manufacturer must have long-term non-corrosive test data from an independent testing laboratory of at least one year duration using an acceptable accelerated corrosion test method such as that using electrical potential measures.
  5. Air Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260.
  6. Calcium Nitrite corrosion inhibitor: ASTM C494 Type C.
  7. Prohibited Admixtures: Calcium chloride, thiocyanate or admixtures containing more than 0.05 percent chloride ions are not permitted.
  8. Certification: Written conformance to the requirements above and the chloride ion content of the admixture prior to mix design review.
- G. Vapor Barrier: ASTM D4397, 0.25 mm (10 mil).
- H. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615, or ASTM A996, deformed, grade as shown.
- I. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A185.

SPEC WRITER NOTE: A706 controls the amount of carbon and other elements in order to minimize brittle failures due to crystallization of the base metal.

- J. Reinforcing Bars to be Welded: ASTM A706.
- K. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A767.
- M.

SPEC WRITER NOTE: A82 is used for spiral ties in columns, particularly in seismic regions.

O.

- L. Reinforcement for Metal Pan Stair Fill: 50 mm (2 inch) wire mesh, either hexagonal mesh at .8Kg/m<sup>2</sup> (1.5 pounds per square yard), or square mesh at .6Kg/m<sup>2</sup> (1.17 pounds per square yard).
- M. Supports, Spacers, and Chairs: Types which will hold reinforcement in position shown in accordance with requirements of ACI 318 except as specified.
- N. Expansion Joint Filler: ASTM D1751.
- O. Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete: ASTM C171.
- P. Liquid Membrane-forming Compounds for Curing Concrete: ASTM C309, Type I, with fugitive dye. Compound shall be compatible with scheduled surface treatment, such as paint and resilient tile, and shall not discolor concrete surface.

- Q. Abrasive Aggregate: Aluminum oxide grains or emery grits.
- R. Liquid Hardener and Dustproofer: Fluosilicate solution of magnesium fluosilicate or zinc fluosilicate. Magnesium and zinc may be used separately or in combination as recommended by manufacturer.
- S. Moisture Vapor Emissions & Alkalinity Control Sealer: 100% active colorless aqueous siliconate solution concrete surface treatment applied the day of the concrete pour in lieu of other curing methods for all concrete slabs receiving resilient flooring, such as, sheet vinyl, vinyl composition tile, rubber, wood flooring, carpet, epoxy coatings and overlays .
1. ASTM C1315 Type 1 Class A, and ASTM C309 Type 1 Class A, penetrating product to have no less than 34% solid content, leaving no sheen, volatile organic compound (VOC) content rating as required to suite regulatory requirements. The product shall have at least a five (5) year documented history in controlling moisture vapor emission from damaging floor covering, compatible with all finish materials.
  2. MVE 15-Year Warranty:
    - a. When a floor covering is installed on a below grade, on grade, or above grade concrete slab treated with Moisture Vapor Emissions & Alkalinity Control Sealer according to manufacturer's instruction, sealer manufacturer shall warrant the floor covering system against failure due to moisture vapor migration or moisture-born contaminates for a period of fifteen (15) years from the date of original installation. The warranty shall cover all labor and materials needed to replace all floor covering that fails due to moisture vapor emission & moisture born contaminates.
- T. Penetrating Sealer: For use on parking garage ramps and decks. High penetration silane sealer providing minimum 95 percent screening per National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) No. 244 standards for chloride ion penetration resistance. Requires moist (non-membrane) curing of slab.
- U. Non-Shrink Grout:
1. ASTM C1107, pre-mixed, produce a compressive strength of at least 18 MPa at three days and 35 MPa (5000 psi) at 28 days. Furnish test data from an independent laboratory indicating that the grout when placed at a fluid consistency shall achieve 95 percent bearing under a 1200 mm x 1200 mm (4 foot by 4 foot) base plate.
  2. Where high fluidity or increased placing time is required, furnish test data from an independent laboratory indicating that the grout



when placed at a fluid consistency shall achieve 95 percent under an 450 mm x 900 mm (18 inch by 36 inch) base plate.

V. Adhesive Binder: ASTM C881.

1. Polyvinyl Chloride Waterstop: CRD C572.
2. Rubber Waterstops: CRD C513.
3. Bentonite Water Stop: Flexible strip of bentonite 25 mm x 20 mm (1 inch by 3/4 inch), weighing 8.7 kg/m (5.85 lbs. per foot) composed of Butyl Rubber Hydrocarbon (ASTM D297), Bentonite (SS-S-210-A) and Volatile Matter (ASTM D6).
4. Porous Backfill: Crushed stone or gravel graded from 25 mm to 20 mm (1 inch to 3/4 inch).
5. Synthetic Fibers: Monofilament or fibrillated polypropylene fibers for secondary reinforcing of concrete members. Use appropriate length and 0.9 kg/m<sup>3</sup> (1.5 lb. per cubic yard). Product shall have a UL rating.
6. Epoxy Joint Filler: Two component, 100 percent solids compound, with a minimum shore D hardness of 50.
7. Bonding Admixture: Non-rewettable, polymer modified, bonding compound.

**2.3 CONCRETE MIXES:**

- A. Mix Designs: Proportioned in accordance with Section 5.3, "Proportioning on the Basis of Field Experience and/or Trial Mixtures" of ACI 318.
1. If trial mixes are used, make a set of at least 6 cylinders in accordance with ASTM C192 for test purposes from each trial mix; test three for compressive strength at 7 days and three at 28 days.
  2. Submit a report of results of each test series, include a detailed listing of the proportions of trial mix or mixes, including cement, fly ash, admixtures, weight of fine and coarse aggregate per m<sup>3</sup> (cubic yard) measured dry rodded and damp loose, specific gravity, fineness modulus, percentage of moisture, air content, water-cement -fly ash ratio, and consistency of each cylinder in terms of slump.
  3. Prepare a curve showing relationship between water-cement -fly ash ratio at 7-day and 28-day compressive strengths. Plot each curve using at least three specimens.
  4. If the field experience method is used, submit complete standard deviation analysis.
- B. Fly Ash Testing: Submit certificate verifying conformance with specifications initially with mix design and for each truck load of fly ash delivered from source. Notify Resident Engineer immediately when change in source is anticipated. Prior to beginning trial mixes submit

to the Resident Engineer the following representative samples of material to be used, properly identified source and project description and number, type of testing (complete chemical and physical), suitably packaged for shipment, and addressed as specified. Allow 60 calendar days for test results after submittal of sample.

1. Fly ash - 2.25 kg (five pounds).
2. Portland cement - 3.5 kg (8 pounds):
  - a. Address -Waterways Experiment Station (WES)
  - b. 3909 Halls Ferry Road
  - c. Vicksburg, MS 39180-6199
  - d. ATTN: Engineering Materials Group

- C. After approval of mixes no substitution in material or change in proportions of approval mixes may be made without additional tests and approval of Resident Engineer or as specified. Making and testing of preliminary test cylinders may be carried on pending approval of cement and fly ash, providing Contractor and manufacturer certify that ingredients used in making test cylinders are the same. Resident Engineer may allow Contractor to proceed with depositing concrete for certain portions of work, pending final approval of cement and fly ash and approval of design mix.
- D. Cement Factor: Maintain minimum cement factors in Table I regardless of compressive strength developed above minimums. Use Fly Ash as an admixture with 20% replacement by weight in all structural work. Increase this replacement to 40% for mass concrete, and reduce it to 10% for drilled piers and caissons.

**TABLE I - CEMENT AND WATER FACTORS FOR CONCRETE**

Concrete Strength		Non-Air-Entrained	Air-Entrained	
Min. 28 Day Comp. Str. MPa (psi)	Min. Cement kg/m <sup>3</sup> (lbs/c. yd)	Max. Water Cement Ratio	Min. Cement kg/m <sup>3</sup> (lbs/c. yd)	Max. Water Cement Ratio
35 (5000) <sup>1,3</sup>	375 (630)	0.45	385 (650)	0.40
30 (4000) <sup>1,3</sup>	325 (550)	0.55	340 (570)	0.50
25 (3000) <sup>1,3</sup>	280 (470)	0.65	290 (490)	0.55
25 (3000) <sup>1,2</sup>	300 (500)	*	310 (520)	*

1. If trial mixes are used, the proposed mix design shall achieve a compressive strength 8.3 MPa (1200 psi) in excess of f'c. For concrete strengths above 35 MPa (5000 psi), the proposed mix design shall achieve a compressive strength 9.7 MPa (1400 psi) in excess of f'c.

2. Determined by Laboratory in accordance with ACI 211.1 for normal concrete or ACI 211.2 for lightweight structural concrete.

E. Maximum Slump: Maximum slump, as determined by ASTM C143 with tolerances as established by ASTM C94, for concrete to be vibrated shall be as shown in Table II.

SPEC WRITER NOTE: Refer to Section 32 05 23, CEMENT AND CONCRETE FOR EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS, for slump used for concrete walks, curbs, gutters, and pavements.

**TABLE II - MAXIMUM SLUMP, MM (INCHES) \***

Type of Construction	Normal Weight Concrete	
Reinforced Footings and Substructure Walls	75mm (3 inches)	
Slabs, Beams, Reinforced Walls, and Building Columns	100 mm (4 inches)	
Caisson (drilled shaft) foundations	150 mm (6 inches)	

F. Slump may be increased by the use of the approved high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer). Tolerances as established by ASTM C94. Concrete containing the high-range-water-reducing admixture may have a maximum slump of 225 mm (9 inches). The concrete shall arrive at the job site at a slump of 50 mm to 75 mm (2 inches to 3 inches), and 75

mm to 100 mm (3 inches to 4 inches) for lightweight concrete. This should be verified, and then the high-range-water-reducing admixture added to increase the slump to the approved level.

- G. Air-Entrainment: Air-entrainment of normal weight concrete shall conform with Table III. Determine air content by either ASTM C173 or ASTM C231.

**TABLE III - TOTAL AIR CONTENT  
FOR VARIOUS SIZES OF COARSE AGGREGATES (NORMAL CONCRETE)**

Nominal Maximum Size of Total Air Content	Coarse Aggregate, mm (Inches) Percentage by Volume
10 mm (3/8 in).6 to 10	13 mm (1/2 in).5 to 9
20 mm (3/4 in).4 to 8	25 mm (1 in).3-1/2 to 6-1/2
40 mm (1 1/2 in).3 to 6	

**TABLE IV  
AIR CONTENT OF LIGHTWEIGHT STRUCTURAL CONCRETE**

Nominal Maximum size of Total Air Content	Coarse Aggregate, mm's (Inches) Percentage by Volume
Greater than 10 mm (3/8 in) 4 to 8	10 mm (3/8 in) or less 5 to 9

- H.
- I. Concrete slabs placed at air temperatures below 10 degrees C (50 degrees Fahrenheit) use non-corrosive, non-chloride accelerator. Concrete required to be air entrained use approved air entraining admixture. Pumped concrete, synthetic fiber concrete, architectural concrete, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water/cement ratio below 0.50 use high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer).
- J. Durability: Use air entrainment for exterior exposed concrete subjected to freezing and thawing and other concrete shown or specified. Air content as shown in Table III or Table IV.
- K. Enforcing Strength Requirements: Test as specified in Section 01 45 29, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES, during the progress of the work. Seven-day tests may be used as indicators of 28-day strength. Average of any three 28-day consecutive strength tests of laboratory-cured specimens representing each type of concrete shall be equal to or greater than specified strength. No single test shall be more than 3.5 MPa (500 psi) below specified strength. Interpret field test results in accordance with ACI 214. Should strengths shown by test specimens fall below required values, Resident Engineer may require any one or any

combination of the following corrective actions, at no additional cost to the Government:

1. Require changes in mix proportions by selecting one of the other appropriate trial mixes or changing proportions, including cement content, of approved trial mix.
2. Require additional curing and protection.
3. If five consecutive tests fall below 95 percent of minimum values given in Table I or if test results are so low as to raise a question as to the safety of the structure, Resident Engineer may direct Contractor to take cores from portions of the structure. Use results from cores tested by the Contractor retained testing agency to analyze structure.
4. If strength of core drilled specimens falls below 85 percent of minimum value given in Table I, Resident Engineer may order load tests, made by Contractor retained testing agency, on portions of building so affected. Load tests in accordance with ACI 318 and criteria of acceptability of concrete under test as given therein.
5. Concrete work, judged inadequate by structural analysis, by results of load test, or for any reason, shall be reinforced with additional construction or replaced, if directed by the Resident Engineer.

#### **2.4 BATCHING AND MIXING:**

- A. General: Concrete shall be "Ready-Mixed" and comply with ACI 318 and ASTM C94, except as specified. Batch mixing at the site is permitted. Mixing process and equipment must be approved by Resident Engineer. With each batch of concrete, furnish certified delivery tickets listing information in Paragraph 16.1 and 16.2 of ASTM C94. Maximum delivery temperature of concrete is 38°C (100 degrees Fahrenheit). Minimum delivery temperature as follows:

Atmospheric Temperature	Minimum Concrete Temperature
-1. degrees to 4.4 degrees C (30 degrees to 40 degrees F)	15.6 degrees C (60 degrees F.)
-17 degrees C to -1.1 degrees C (0 degrees to 30 degrees F.)	21 degrees C (70 degrees F.)

1. Services of aggregate manufacturer's representative shall be furnished during the design of trial mixes and as requested by the Resident Engineer for consultation during batching, mixing, and placing operations of lightweight structural concrete. Services will be required until field controls indicate that concrete of required

quality is being furnished. Representative shall be thoroughly familiar with the structural lightweight aggregate, adjustment and control of mixes to produce concrete of required quality. Representative shall assist and advise Resident Engineer.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 FORMWORK:**

- A. General: Design in accordance with ACI 347 is the responsibility of the Contractor. The Contractor shall retain a registered Professional Engineer to design the formwork, shores, and reshores.
  - 1. Form boards and plywood forms may be reused for contact surfaces of exposed concrete only if thoroughly cleaned, patched, and repaired and Resident Engineer approves their reuse.
  - 2. Provide forms for concrete footings unless Resident Engineer determines forms are not necessary.
  - 3. Corrugated fiberboard forms: Place forms on a smooth firm bed, set tight, with no buckled cartons to prevent horizontal displacement, and in a dry condition when concrete is placed.
- B. Treating and Wetting: Treat or wet contact forms as follows:
  - 1. Coat plywood and board forms with non-staining form sealer. In hot weather, cool forms by wetting with cool water just before concrete is placed.
  - 2. Clean and coat removable metal forms with light form oil before reinforcement is placed. In hot weather, cool metal forms by thoroughly wetting with water just before placing concrete.
  - 3. Use sealer on reused plywood forms as specified for new material.
- C. Size and Spacing of Studs: Size and space studs, wales and other framing members for wall forms so as not to exceed safe working stress of kind of lumber used nor to develop deflection greater than 1/270 of free span of member.
- D. Unlined Forms: Use plywood forms to obtain a smooth finish for concrete surfaces. Tightly butt edges of sheets to prevent leakage. Back up all vertical joints solidly and nail edges of adjacent sheets to same stud with 6d box nails spaced not over 150 mm (6 inches) apart.
- E. Lined Forms: May be used in lieu of unlined plywood forms. Back up form lining solidly with square edge board lumber securely nailed to studs with all edges in close contact to prevent bulging of lining. No joints in lining and backing may coincide. Nail abutted edges of sheets to same backing board. Nail lining at not over 200 mm (8 inches) on center along edges and with at least one nail to each square foot of surface area; nails to be 3d blued shingle or similar nails with thin flatheads.

- F. Architectural Liner: Attach liner as recommended by the manufacturer with tight joints to prevent leakage.
- G. Wall Form Ties: Locate wall form ties in symmetrically level horizontal rows at each line of wales and in plumb vertical tiers. Space ties to maintain true, plumb surfaces. Provide one row of ties within 150 mm (6 inches) above each construction joint. Space through-ties adjacent to horizontal and vertical construction joints not over 450 mm (18 inches) on center.
1. Tighten row of ties at bottom of form just before placing concrete and, if necessary, during placing of concrete to prevent seepage of concrete and to obtain a clean line. Ties to be entirely removed shall be loosened 24 hours after concrete is placed and shall be pulled from least important face when removed.
  2. Coat surfaces of all metal that is to be removed with paraffin, cup grease or a suitable compound to facilitate removal.
- H. Inserts, Sleeves, and Similar Items: Flashing reglets, steel strips, masonry ties, anchors, wood blocks, nailing strips, grounds, inserts, wire hangers, sleeves, drains, guard angles, forms for floor hinge boxes, inserts or bond blocks for elevator guide rails and supports, and other items specified as furnished under this and other sections of specifications and required to be in their final position at time concrete is placed shall be properly located, accurately positioned, and built into construction, and maintained securely in place.
1. Locate inserts or hanger wires for furred and suspended ceilings only in bottom of concrete joists, or similar concrete member of overhead concrete joist construction.
  2. Install sleeves, inserts and similar items for mechanical services in accordance with drawings prepared specially for mechanical services. Contractor is responsible for accuracy and completeness of drawings and shall coordinate requirements for mechanical services and equipment.
  3. Do not install sleeves in beams, joists or columns except where shown or permitted by Resident Engineer. Install sleeves in beams, joists, or columns that are not shown, but are permitted by the Resident Engineer, and require no structural changes, at no additional cost to the Government.
  4. Minimum clear distance of embedded items such as conduit and pipe is at least three times diameter of conduit or pipe, except at stub-ups and other similar locations.

5. Provide recesses and blockouts in floor slabs for door closers and other hardware as necessary in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

I. Construction Tolerances:

1. Set and maintain concrete formwork to assure erection of completed work within tolerances specified and to accommodate installation of other rough and finish materials. Accomplish remedial work necessary for correcting excessive tolerances. Erected work that exceeds specified tolerance limits shall be remedied or removed and replaced, at no additional cost to the Government.
2. Permissible surface irregularities for various classes of materials are defined as "finishes" in specification sections covering individual materials. They are to be distinguished from tolerances specified which are applicable to surface irregularities of structural elements.

**3.2 PLACING REINFORCEMENT:**

- A. General: Details of concrete reinforcement in accordance with ACI 318 unless otherwise shown.
- B. Placing: Place reinforcement conforming to CRSI DA4, unless otherwise shown.
  1. Place reinforcing bars accurately and tie securely at intersections and splices with 1.6 mm (16 gauge) black annealed wire. // Use epoxy-coated tie wire with epoxy-coated reinforcing. // Secure reinforcing bars against displacement during the placing of concrete by spacers, chairs, or other similar supports. Portions of supports, spacers, and chairs in contact with formwork shall be made of plastic in areas that will be exposed when building is occupied. Type, number, and spacing of supports conform to ACI 318. Where concrete slabs are placed on ground, use concrete blocks or other non-corrodible material of proper height, for support of reinforcement. Use of brick or stone supports will not be permitted.
  2. Lap welded wire fabric at least 1 1/2 mesh panels plus end extension of wires not less than 300 mm (12 inches) in structural slabs. Lap welded wire fabric at least 1/2 mesh panels plus end extension of wires not less than 150 mm (6 inches) in slabs on grade.
  3. Splice column steel at no points other than at footings and floor levels unless otherwise shown.
- C. Spacing: Minimum clear distances between parallel bars, except in columns and multiple layers of bars in beams shall be equal to nominal



diameter of bars. Minimum clear spacing is 25 mm (1 inch) or 1-1/3 times maximum size of coarse aggregate.

- D. Splicing: Splices of reinforcement made only as required or shown or specified. Accomplish splicing as follows:
1. Lap splices: Do not use lap splices for bars larger than Number 36 (Number 11). Minimum lengths of lap as shown.
  2. Welded splices: Splicing by butt-welding of reinforcement permitted providing the weld develops in tension at least 125 percent of the yield strength (fy) for the bars. Welding conform to the requirements of AWS D1.4. Welded reinforcing steel conform to the chemical analysis requirements of AWS D1.4.
    - a. Submit test reports indicating the chemical analysis to establish weldability of reinforcing steel.
    - b. Submit a field quality control procedure to insure proper inspection, materials and welding procedure for welded splices.
    - c. Department of Veterans Affairs retained testing agency shall test a minimum of three splices, for compliance, locations selected by Resident Engineer.
  3. Mechanical Splices: Develop in tension and compression at least 125 percent of the yield strength (fy) of the bars. Stresses of transition splices between two reinforcing bar sizes based on area of smaller bar. Provide mechanical splices at locations indicated. Use approved exothermic, tapered threaded coupling, or swaged and threaded sleeve. Exposed threads and swaging in the field not permitted.
    - a. Initial qualification: In the presence of Resident Engineer, make three test mechanical splices of each bar size proposed to be spliced. Department of Veterans Affairs retained testing laboratory will perform load test.
    - b. During installation: Furnish, at no additional cost to the Government, one companion (sister) splice for every 50 splices for load testing. Department of Veterans Affairs retained testing laboratory will perform the load test.
- E. Bending: Bend bars cold, unless otherwise approved. Do not field bend bars partially embedded in concrete, except when approved by Resident Engineer.
- F. Cleaning: Metal reinforcement, at time concrete is placed, shall be free from loose flaky rust, mud, oil, or similar coatings that will reduce bond.

- G. Future Bonding: Protect exposed reinforcement bars intended for bonding with future work by wrapping with felt and coating felt with a bituminous compound unless otherwise shown.

### **3.3 VAPOR BARRIER:**

- A. Except where membrane waterproofing is required, interior concrete slab on grade shall be placed on a continuous vapor barrier.
1. Place 100 mm (4 inches) of fine granular fill over the vapor barrier to act as a blotter for concrete slab.
  2. Vapor barrier joints lapped 150 mm (6 inches) and sealed with compatible waterproof pressure-sensitive tape.
  3. Patch punctures and tears.

### **3.4 MOISTURE VAPOR EMISSIONS & ALKALINITY CONTROL SEALER:**

- A. Sealer is applied on the day of the concrete pour or as as soon as harsh weather permits, prior to any other chemical treatments for concrete slabs either on grade, below grade or above grade receiving resilient flooring, such as, sheet vinyl, vinyl composition tile, rubber, wood flooring, carpet, epoxy coatings and overlays.
- B. Manufacturer's representative will be on the site the day of concrete pour to install or train its application and document. He shall return on every application thereafter to verify that proper procedures are followed.
1. Apply Sealer to concrete slabs as soon as final finishing operations are complete and the concrete has hardened sufficiently to sustain floor traffic without damage.
  2. Spray apply Sealer at the rate of 20 m<sup>2</sup> (200 square feet) per gallon. Lightly broom product evenly over the substrate and product has completely penetrated the surface.
  3. If within two (2) hours after initial application areas are subjected to heavy rainfall and puddling occurs, reapply Sealer product to these areas as soon as weather condition permits.

### **3.5 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS:**

- A. Unless otherwise shown, location of construction joints to limit individual placement shall not exceed 24,000 mm (80 feet) in any horizontal direction, except slabs on grade which shall have construction joints shown. Allow 48 hours to elapse between pouring adjacent sections unless this requirement is waived by Resident Engineer.
- B.
- //B. Install polyvinyl chloride or rubber water seals, as shown in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, to form continuous watertight seal. //

**3.6 EXPANSION JOINTS:**

- A. Clean expansion joint surfaces before installing premolded filler and placing adjacent concrete.
- B. Install polyvinyl chloride or rubber water seals, as shown in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, to form continuous watertight seal.

**3.7 PLACING CONCRETE:**

- A. Preparation:
  - 1. Remove hardened concrete, wood chips, shavings and other debris from forms.
  - 2. Remove hardened concrete and foreign materials from interior surfaces of mixing and conveying equipment.
  - 3. Have forms and reinforcement inspected and approved by Resident Engineer before depositing concrete.
  - 4. Provide runways for wheeling equipment to convey concrete to point of deposit. Keep equipment on runways which are not supported by or bear on reinforcement. Provide similar runways for protection of vapor barrier on coarse fill.
- B. Bonding: Before depositing new concrete on or against concrete which has been set, thoroughly roughen and clean existing surfaces of laitance, foreign matter, and loose particles.
  - 1. Preparing surface for applied topping:
    - a. Remove laitance, mortar, oil, grease, paint, or other foreign material by sand blasting. Clean with vacuum type equipment to remove sand and other loose material.
    - b. Broom clean and keep base slab wet for at least four hours before topping is applied.
    - c. Use a thin coat of one part Portland cement, 1.5 parts fine sand, bonding admixture; and water at a 50: 50 ratio and mix to achieve the consistency of thick paint. Apply to a damp base slab by scrubbing with a stiff fiber brush. New concrete shall be placed while the bonding grout is still tacky.
- C. Conveying Concrete: Convey concrete from mixer to final place of deposit by a method which will prevent segregation. Method of conveying concrete subject to approval of Resident Engineer.
- D. Placing: For special requirements see Paragraphs, HOT WEATHER and COLD WEATHER.
  - 1. Do not place concrete when weather conditions prevent proper placement and consolidation, or when concrete has attained its initial set, or has contained its water or cement content more than 1 1/2 hours.

2. Deposit concrete in forms as near as practicable in its final position. Prevent splashing of forms or reinforcement with concrete in advance of placing concrete.
3. Do not drop concrete freely more than 3000 mm (10 feet) for concrete containing the high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer) or 1500 mm (5 feet) for conventional concrete. Where greater drops are required, use a tremie or flexible spout (canvas elephant trunk), attached to a suitable hopper.
4. Discharge contents of tremies or flexible spouts in horizontal layers not exceeding 500 mm (20 inches) in thickness, and space tremies such as to provide a minimum of lateral movement of concrete.
5. Continuously place concrete until an entire unit between construction joints is placed. Rate and method of placing concrete shall be such that no concrete between construction joints will be deposited upon or against partly set concrete, after its initial set has taken place, or after 45 minutes of elapsed time during concrete placement.
6. On bottom of members with severe congestion of reinforcement, deposit 25 mm (1 inch) layer of flowing concrete containing the specified high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer). Successive concrete lifts may be a continuation of this concrete or concrete with a conventional slump.
7. Concrete on metal deck:
  - a. Concrete on metal deck shall be minimum thickness shown. Allow for deflection of steel beams and metal deck under the weight of wet concrete in calculating concrete quantities for slab.
    - 1) The Contractor shall become familiar with deflection characteristics of structural frame to include proper amount of additional concrete due to beam/deck deflection.
- E. Consolidation: Conform to ACI 309. Immediately after depositing, spade concrete next to forms, work around reinforcement and into angles of forms, tamp lightly by hand, and compact with mechanical vibrator applied directly into concrete at approximately 450 mm (18 inch) intervals. Mechanical vibrator shall be power driven, hand operated type with minimum frequency of 5000 cycles per minute having an intensity sufficient to cause flow or settlement of concrete into place. Vibrate concrete to produce thorough compaction, complete embedment of reinforcement and concrete of uniform and maximum density without segregation of mix. Do not transport concrete in forms by vibration.
  1. Use of form vibration shall be approved only when concrete sections are too thin or too inaccessible for use of internal vibration.

2. Carry on vibration continuously with placing of concrete. Do not insert vibrator into concrete that has begun to set.

### **3.8 HOT WEATHER:**

Follow the recommendations of ACI 305 or as specified to prevent problems in the manufacturing, placing, and curing of concrete that can adversely affect the properties and serviceability of the hardened concrete. Methods proposed for cooling materials and arrangements for protecting concrete shall be made in advance of concrete placement and approved by Resident Engineer.

### **3.9 COLD WEATHER:**

Follow the recommendations of ACI 306 or as specified to prevent freezing of concrete and to permit concrete to gain strength properly. Use only the specified non-corrosive, non-chloride accelerator. Do not use calcium chloride, thiocyanates or admixtures containing more than 0.05 percent chloride ions. Methods proposed for heating materials and arrangements for protecting concrete shall be made in advance of concrete placement and approved by Resident Engineer.

### **3.10 PROTECTION AND CURING:**

- A. Conform to ACI 308: Initial curing shall immediately follow the finishing operation. Protect exposed surfaces of concrete from premature drying, wash by rain and running water, wind, mechanical injury, and excessively hot or cold temperatures. Keep concrete not covered with membrane or other curing material continuously wet for at least 7 days after placing, except wet curing period for high-early-strength concrete shall be not less than 3 days. Keep wood forms continuously wet to prevent moisture loss until forms are removed. Cure exposed concrete surfaces as described below. Other curing methods may be used if approved by Resident Engineer.
  1. Liquid curing and sealing compounds: Apply by power-driven spray or roller in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Apply immediately after finishing. Maximum coverage 10m<sup>2</sup>/L (400 square feet per gallon) on steel troweled surfaces and 7.5m<sup>2</sup>/L (300 square feet per gallon) on floated or broomed surfaces for the curing/sealing compound.
  2. Plastic sheets: Apply as soon as concrete has hardened sufficiently to prevent surface damage. Utilize widest practical width sheet and overlap adjacent sheets 50 mm (2 inches). Tightly seal joints with tape.

3. Paper: Utilize widest practical width paper and overlap adjacent sheets 50 mm (2 inches). Tightly seal joints with sand, wood planks, pressure-sensitive tape, mastic or glue.

### **3.11 REMOVAL OF FORMS:**

- A. Remove in a manner to assure complete safety of structure after the following conditions have been met.
  1. Where structure as a whole is supported on shores, forms for beams and girder sides, columns, and similar vertical structural members may be removed after 24 hours, provided concrete has hardened sufficiently to prevent surface damage and curing is continued without any lapse in time as specified for exposed surfaces.
  2. Take particular care in removing forms of architectural exposed concrete to insure surfaces are not marred or gouged, and that corners and arises are true, sharp and unbroken.
- B. Control Test: Use to determine if the concrete has attained sufficient strength and curing to permit removal of supporting forms. Cylinders required for control tests taken in accordance with ASTM C172, molded in accordance with ASTM C31, and tested in accordance with ASTM C39. Control cylinders cured and protected in the same manner as the structure they represent. Supporting forms or shoring not removed until strength of control test cylinders have attained at least 70 percent of minimum 28-day compressive strength specified. Exercise care to assure that newly unsupported portions of structure are not subjected to heavy construction or material loading.
- C.

### **3.12 CONCRETE SURFACE PREPARATION:**

- A. Metal Removal: Unnecessary metal items cut back flush with face of concrete members.
- B. Patching: Maintain curing and start patching as soon as forms are removed. Do not apply curing compounds to concrete surfaces requiring patching until patching is completed. Use cement mortar for patching of same composition as that used in concrete. Use white or gray Portland cement as necessary to obtain finish color matching surrounding concrete. Thoroughly clean areas to be patched. Cut out honeycombed or otherwise defective areas to solid concrete to a depth of not less than 25 mm (1 inch). Cut edge perpendicular to surface of concrete. Saturate with water area to be patched, and at least 150 mm (6 inches) surrounding before placing patching mortar. Give area to be patched a brush coat of cement grout followed immediately by patching mortar. Cement grout composed of one part Portland cement, 1.5 parts fine sand,

bonding admixture, and water at a 50:50 ratio, mix to achieve consistency of thick paint. Mix patching mortar approximately 1 hour before placing and remix occasionally during this period without addition of water. Compact mortar into place and screed slightly higher than surrounding surface. After initial shrinkage has occurred, finish to match color and texture of adjoining surfaces. Cure patches as specified for other concrete. Fill form tie holes which extend entirely through walls from unexposed face by means of a pressure gun or other suitable device to force mortar through wall. Wipe excess mortar off exposed face with a cloth.

- C. Upon removal of forms, clean vertical concrete surface that is to receive bonded applied cementitious application with wire brushes or by sand blasting to remove unset material, laitance, and loose particles to expose aggregates to provide a clean, firm, granular surface for bond of applied finish.

### **3.13 CONCRETE FINISHES:**

#### **A. Vertical and Overhead Surface Finishes:**

1. Unfinished areas: Vertical and overhead concrete surfaces exposed in pipe basements, elevator and dumbwaiter shafts, pipe spaces, pipe trenches, above suspended ceilings, manholes, and other unfinished areas will not require additional finishing.
2. Interior and exterior exposed areas to be painted: Remove fins, burrs and similar projections on surfaces flush, and smooth by mechanical means approved by Resident Engineer, and by rubbing lightly with a fine abrasive stone or hone. Use ample water during rubbing without working up a lather of mortar or changing texture of concrete.
3. Interior and exterior exposed areas finished: Give a grout finish of uniform color and smooth finish treated as follows:
  - a. After concrete has hardened and laitance, fins and burrs removed, scrub concrete with wire brushes. Clean stained concrete surfaces by use of a hone stone.
  - b. Apply grout composed of one part of Portland cement, one part fine sand, smaller than a 600  $\mu$ m (No. 30) sieve. Work grout into surface of concrete with cork floats or fiber brushes until all pits, and honeycombs are filled.
  - c. After grout has hardened slightly, but while still plastic, scrape grout off with a sponge rubber float and, about 1 hour later, rub concrete vigorously with burlap to remove any excess grout remaining on surfaces.

- d. In hot, dry weather use a fog spray to keep grout wet during setting period. Complete finish of area in same day. Make limits of finished areas at natural breaks in wall surface. Leave no grout on concrete surface overnight.
4. Textured: Finish as specified. Maximum quantity of patched area 0.2 m<sup>2</sup> (2 square feet) in each 93 m<sup>2</sup> (1000 square feet) of textured surface.

B. Slab Finishes:

1. Monitoring and Adjustment: Provide continuous cycle of placement, measurement, evaluation and adjustment of procedures to produce slabs within specified tolerances. Monitor elevations of structural steel in key locations before and after concrete placement to establish typical deflection patterns for the structural steel. Determine elevations of cast-in-place slab soffits prior to removal of shores. Provide information to Resident Engineer and floor consultant for evaluation and recommendations for subsequent placements.
2. Set perimeter forms to serve as screed using either optical or laser instruments. For slabs on grade, wet screeds may be used to establish initial grade during strike-off, unless Resident Engineer determines that the method is proving insufficient to meet required finish tolerances and directs use of rigid screed guides. Where wet screeds are allowed, they shall be placed using grade stakes set by optical or laser instruments. Use rigid screed guides, as opposed to wet screeds, to control strike-off elevation for all types of elevated (non slab-on-grade) slabs. Divide bays into halves or thirds by hard screeds. Adjust as necessary where monitoring of previous placements indicates unshored structural steel deflections to other than a level profile.
3. Place slabs monolithically. Once slab placement commences, complete finishing operations within same day. Slope finished slab to floor drains where they occur, whether shown or not.
4. Use straightedges specifically made for screeding, such as hollow magnesium straightedges or power strike-offs. Do not use pieces of dimensioned lumber. Strike off and screed slab to a true surface at required elevations. Use optical or laser instruments to check concrete finished surface grade after strike-off. Repeat strike-off as necessary. Complete screeding before any excess moisture or bleeding water is present on surface. Do not sprinkle dry cement on the surface.



5. Immediately following screeding, and before any bleed water appears, use a 3000 mm (10 foot) wide highway straightedge in a cutting and filling operation to achieve surface flatness. Do not use bull floats or darbys, except that darbying may be allowed for narrow slabs and restricted spaces.
6. Wait until water sheen disappears and surface stiffens before proceeding further. Do not perform subsequent operations until concrete will sustain foot pressure with maximum of 6 mm (1/4 inch) indentation.
7. Scratch Finish: Finish base slab to receive a bonded applied cementitious application as indicated above, except that bull floats and darbys may be used. Thoroughly coarse wire broom within two hours after placing to roughen slab surface to insure a permanent bond between base slab and applied materials.
8. Float Finish: Slabs to receive unbonded toppings, steel trowel finish, fill, mortar setting beds, or a built-up roof, and ramps, stair treads, platforms (interior and exterior), and equipment pads shall be floated to a smooth, dense uniform, sandy textured finish. During floating, while surface is still soft, check surface for flatness using a 3000 mm (10 foot) highway straightedge. Correct high spots by cutting down and correct low spots by filling in with material of same composition as floor finish. Remove any surface projections and re-float to a uniform texture.
9. Steel Trowel Finish: Concrete surfaces to receive resilient floor covering or carpet, monolithic floor slabs to be exposed to view in finished work, future floor roof slabs, applied toppings, and other interior surfaces for which no other finish is indicated. Steel trowel immediately following floating. During final troweling, tilt steel trowel at a slight angle and exert heavy pressure to compact cement paste and form a dense, smooth surface. Finished surface shall be smooth, free of trowel marks, and uniform in texture and appearance.
10. Broom Finish: Finish exterior slabs, ramps, and stair treads with a bristle brush moistened with clear water after surfaces have been floated. Brush in a direction transverse to main traffic. Match texture approved by Resident Engineer from sample panel.
11. Finished slab flatness (FF) and levelness (FL) values comply with the following minimum requirements:
  - a. Areas covered with carpeting, or not specified otherwise in b. below:

- 1) Slab on Grade:
    - a) Specified overall value  $F_F$  20/ $F_L$  15
    - b) Minimum local value  $F_F$  17/ $F_L$  15
  - 2) Level suspended slabs (shored until after testing) and topping slabs:
    - 3) Level tolerance such that 80 percent of all points fall within a 20 mm (3/4 inch) envelope +10 mm, -10 mm (+3/8 inch, -3/8 inch) from the design elevation.
  - b. Areas that will be exposed, receive thin-set tile or resilient flooring, or roof areas designed as future floors:
    - 1) Slab on grade:
      - a) Specified overall value  $FF$  36/ $FL$  20
      - b) Minimum local value  $FF$  24/ $FL$  15
    - 2) Unshored suspended slabs:
      - a) Specified overall value  $FF$  30
      - b) Minimum local value  $FF$  24
    - 3) Level tolerance such that 80 percent of all points fall within a 20 mm (3/4 inch) envelope +10 mm, -10 mm (+3/8 inch, -3/8 inch) from the design elevation.
  - c. "Specified overall value" is based on the composite of all measured values in a placement derived in accordance with ASTM E1155.
  - d. "Minimum local value" (MLV) describes the flatness or levelness below which repair or replacement is required. MLV is based on the results of an individual placement and applies to a minimum local area. Minimum local area boundaries may not cross a construction joint or expansion joint. A minimum local area will be bounded by construction and/or control joints, or by column lines and/or half-column lines, whichever is smaller.
12. Measurements
- a. Department of Veterans Affairs retained testing laboratory will take measurements as directed by Resident Engineer, to verify compliance with  $FF$ ,  $FL$ , and other finish requirements. Measurements will occur within 72 hours after completion of concrete placement (weekends and holidays excluded). Make measurements before shores or forms are removed to insure the "as-built" levelness is accurately assessed. Profile data for above characteristics may be collected using a laser level or any Type II apparatus (ASTM E1155, "profileograph" or "dipstick").

Contractor's surveyor shall establish reference elevations to be used by Department of Veterans Affairs retained testing laboratory.

- b. Contractor not experienced in using FF and FL criteria is encouraged to retain the services of a floor consultant to assist with recommendations concerning adjustments to slab thicknesses, finishing techniques, and procedures on measurements of the finish as it progresses in order to achieve the specific flatness and levelness numbers.

13. Acceptance/ Rejection:

- a. If individual slab section measures less than either of specified minimum local  $F_F/F_L$  numbers, that section shall be rejected and remedial measures shall be required. Sectional boundaries may be set at construction and contraction (control) joints, and not smaller than one-half bay.
- b. If composite value of entire slab installation, combination of all local results, measures less than either of specified overall  $F_F/F_L$  numbers, then whole slab shall be rejected and remedial measures shall be required.

14. Remedial Measures for Rejected Slabs: Correct rejected slab areas by grinding, planing, surface repair with underlayment compound or repair topping, retopping, or removal and replacement of entire rejected slab areas, as directed by Resident Engineer, until a slab finish constructed within specified tolerances is accepted.

**3.14 SURFACE TREATMENTS:**

- A. Use on exposed concrete floors and concrete floors to receive carpeting except those specified to receive non-slip finish .
- B. Liquid Densifier/Sealer: Apply in accordance with manufacturer's directions just prior to completion of construction.
- C. Non-Slip Finish: Except where safety nosing and tread coverings are shown, apply non-slip abrasive aggregate to treads and platforms of concrete steps and stairs, and to surfaces of exterior concrete ramps and platforms. Broadcast aggregate uniformly over concrete surface at rate of application of 8% per 1/10th  $m^2$  (7.5 percent per square foot) of area. Trowel concrete surface to smooth dense finish. After curing, rub treated surface with abrasive brick and water to slightly expose abrasive aggregate.

**3.15 APPLIED TOPPING:**

- A. Separate concrete topping on floor base slab of thickness and strength shown. Topping mix shall have a maximum slump of 200 mm (8 inches) for

concrete containing a high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer) and 100 mm (4 inches) for conventional mix. Neatly bevel or slope at door openings and at slabs adjoining spaces not receiving an applied finish.

- B. Placing: Place continuously until entire section is complete, struck off with straightedge, leveled with a highway straightedge or highway bull float, floated and troweled by machine to a hard dense finish. Slope to floor drains as required. Do not start floating until free water has disappeared and no water sheen is visible. Allow drying of surface moisture naturally. Do not hasten by "dusting" with cement or sand.

### **3.16 RESURFACING FLOORS:**

Remove existing flooring areas to receive resurfacing to expose existing structural slab and extend not less than 25 mm (1 inch) below new finished floor level. Prepare exposed structural slab surface by roughening, broom cleaning, and dampening. Apply specified bonding grout. Place topping while the bonding grout is still tacky.

### **3.17 RETAINING WALLS:**

- A. Use air-entrained concrete.
- B. Expansion and contraction joints, waterstops, weep holes, reinforcement and railing sleeves installed and constructed as shown.
- C. Exposed surfaces finished to match adjacent concrete surfaces, new or existing.
- D. Place porous backfill as shown.

### **3.18 PRECAST CONCRETE ITEMS:**

Precast concrete items, not specified elsewhere. Cast using 25 MPa (3000 psi) air-entrained concrete to shapes and dimensions shown. Finish to match corresponding adjacent concrete surfaces. Reinforce with steel for safe handling and erection.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 03 41 33**  
**PRECAST STRUCTURAL PRETENSIONED CONCRETE**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

- A. This section specifies precast prestressed concrete construction including design not shown, fabrication, erection, and other related items including bearing pads and anchorage.
- B. Precast prestressed concrete includes double tee beams and spandrels columns I beams/box beams tee/keystone joists step units ribbed wall panels.

**1.2 RELATED WORK:**

- A. Materials testing and inspection during construction: Section 01 45 29, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Concrete: Section 03 30 00, CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.
- C. Sealants and Caulking: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- D. Architectural Precast Concrete Panels: Section 03 45 00, PRECAST ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE.
- E. Repair of abraded galvanized and painted surfaces: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Precast concrete manufacturing plant shall be certified by Prestressed Concrete Institute, Plant Certification Program, prior to start of production.
- B. In lieu of above qualification, contractor shall meet and pay for following requirements:
  - 1. Retain an independent testing or consulting firm approved by Resident Engineer.
  - 2. This firm shall inspect precast plant at two-week intervals during production and issue a report, certified by a registered Professional Engineer verifying that materials, methods, products and quality control meet all requirements of specifications and drawings. When report indicates to the contrary, Resident Engineer may reject any or all products produced during period of noncompliance with above requirements.
- C. Precast concrete work shall be performed by firms that have demonstrated capability, subject to approval, to produce and erect type of work specified.

- D. Precast concrete manufacturer shall have on staff or shall retain a qualified registered Professional Structural Engineer to certify precast concrete conforms in all aspects to requirements of ACI 318.
- E. Erector Qualifications: Regularly engaged for at least 5 years in erection of precast structural concrete similar to requirements of this project.
- F. Requirements of Regulatory Agencies: Local codes plus applicable specifications, standards and codes are a part of these specifications.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Erection Drawings:
    - a. Plans and/or elevations locating and defining material furnished by manufacturer.
    - b. Sections and details showing connections, cast-in items and their relation to structure.
    - c. Description of all loose, cast-in and field hardware.
    - d. Field installed anchor location drawings.
    - e. Erection sequences and handling requirements.
    - f. Dead, live and other applicable loads used in design.
  - 2. Production drawings:
    - a. Elevation view of each member.
    - b. Sections and details to indicate quantities and position of reinforcing steel, anchors, inserts, and essential embedded hardware.
    - c. Lifting and erection inserts.
    - d. Dimensions and finishes.
    - e. Prestress for strand and concrete strengths.
    - f. Estimated cambers.
    - g. Method of transportation.
- C. Product Design Criteria:
  - 1. Loadings for design:
    - a. Initial handling and erection stresses.
    - b. Dead and live loads as specified on contract drawings.
    - c. Other loads specified for member where they are applicable.
    - d. Deflection of precast members shall be limited as follows:
      - 1) Vertical Live Load - Span/360
      - 2) Wind Load -  $0.0025 \times \text{Floor to Floor Height}$
    - e. Design shall provide for thermal movements of completed structure.

2. Design calculations of products shall be performed by a registered Professional Engineer experienced in precast prestressed concrete design.
3. Design shall be in accordance with applicable codes, ACI 318 and the PCI Design Handbook.
4. Details for waterproof joints between precast members.
- D. Mix Designs: Submit proposed concrete mix designs and appropriate test data as specified in Part 2 of this section.
- E. Permissible Design Deviations:
  1. Design connections according to the conceptual details shown in the contract documents.
  2. Design deviations will be permitted only after Resident Engineer's written approval of manufacturer's proposed design supported by complete design calculations and drawings.
  3. Design deviations shall provide an installation equivalent to basic intent without incurring additional cost to the Government.
- F. Test Reports: Concrete and other material.

#### **1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:**

- A. Delivery and Handling:
  1. Lift and support precast concrete members during manufacturing, stockpiling, transporting and erection operations only at lifting or supporting points, or both, as shown on contract and shop drawings, and with approved lifting devices. Lifting devices shall have a minimum safety factor of 4. Exterior lifting hardware shall have a minimum safety factor of 5.
  2. Transportation, site handling, and erection shall be performed with acceptable equipment and methods, and by qualified personnel.
- B. Storage:
  1. Store all units off ground.
  2. Place stored units so that identification marks are discernible.
  3. Separate stacked members by battens across full width of each bearing point.
  4. Stack so that lifting devices are accessible and undamaged.
  5. Do not use upper members of stacked tier as storage area for shorter member or heavy equipment.

#### **1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.

## B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

A36/A36M-08.....Standard Specifications for Carbon Structural Steel

A82-07.....Standard Specifications for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement

A123/A123M-09.....Standard Specifications for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

A153/A153M-09.....Standard Specifications for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

A185-07.....Standard Specifications for Steel Welded Wire, Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement

A307-10.....Standard Specifications for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs

A325-10.....Standard Specifications for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated

A416/A416M-10.....Standard Specifications for Steel Strand, Uncoated Seven-Wire for Prestressed Concrete

A615/A615M-09.....Standard Specifications for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

A706/A706M-09.....Standard Specifications for Low-Allow Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

A767/A767M-09.....Standard Specifications for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

A775/A775M-03 (R2008)....Standard Specifications for Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars

C33-03.....Standard Specifications for Concrete Aggregates

C88-05.....Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate

C150-07.....Standard Specifications for Portland Cement

C260-10.....Standard Specifications for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete

C330-05.....Standard Specifications for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete

C494/C494M-10.....Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete

## C. American Concrete Institute (ACI):



- 117-10.....Standard Specifications for Tolerances for  
Concrete Construction and Materials
- 318-08.....Building Code Requirements for Structural  
Concrete and Commentary
- D. Prestressed Concrete Institute (PCI):
- MNL-116-99.....Manual for Quality Control for Plants and  
Production of Precast Concrete Products Fourth  
Edition
- MNL-127-99.....Erector's Manual: Standards and Guidelines for  
the Erection of Precast Concrete Products
- F. American Welding Society (AWS):
- D1.1/D1.1M-10.....Structural Welding Code - Steel
- D1.4-11.....Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS:**

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type I or III.
- B. Aggregates: ASTM C33, Coarse and Fine.
- C. Lightweight Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C330, maximum size 19mm (3/4 inch),  
maximum 15 percent loss when tested in accordance with ASTM C88.
- D. Air-entraining Admixture: ASTM C260.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: ASTM C494.
- F. Mixing Water: Fresh, clean, and potable.
- G. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615M, Grade 400 MPa (ASTM A615, Grade 60),  
deformed.
- H. Weldable Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A706M, Grade 400 MPa, (ASTM A706 Grade  
60).
- I. Galvanized Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A767M, Grade 400 MPa, (ASTM A767,  
Grade 60) Class II, hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication and bending.
- J. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A775M, Grade 400 MPa, (ASTM A775,  
Grade 60).
- K. Anchor Bolts: ASTM A307, low-carbon steel bolts, regular hexagon nuts  
and carbon steel washers, galvanized.
- L. High-Strength Threaded Fasteners: Heavy hexagon structural bolts, heavy  
hexagon bolts, and hardened washers complying with ASTM A325,  
galvanized.
- M. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A185.
- N. Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A82.
- O. Prestressing Steel: ASTM A416, Grade 250K or 270K, uncoated, 7-wire,  
stress-relieved strand.

- P. Anchors and Inserts: ASTM A36 structural steel plates and shapes, ASTM A153 or ASTM A123 hot dipped galvanized finish.
- Q. Non-metallic Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Proprietary pre-mixed, non-metallic, non-corrosive, non-staining product containing selected silica sands, Portland cement, shrinkage compensating agents, plasticizing and water reducing agents, complying with CRD-C-621. Minimum cube strength of 62 MPa (9000 psi) at 28 days when placed at flowable consistency.
- R. Bearing Pads:
  - 1. Elastomeric Pads: Vulcanized, chloroprene elastomeric compound, molded to size or cut from a molded sheet, 50-60 shore A durometer.
  - 2. Laminated Fabric-Rubber Pads: Preformed, unused synthetic fibers and new, unvulcanized rubber. Surface hardness of 70-80 shore A durometer.
  - 4. Sliding Pads: Manufactured assembly with Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) surface, with glass fiber reinforcing as required for service load bearing stress. Combine with elastomeric base where required for full contact bearing.
  - 5. Plastic: Multi-monomer plastic strips, non-leaching and able to support construction loads with no visible overall expansion.
- S. Welded Studs: AWS D1.1.
- T. Welded Rebar: AWS D1.4.
- U. Caulking and Sealants: Specified under Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- V. Accessories: Provide clips, hangers, and other accessories required for installation of project units and for support of subsequent construction or finishes.

## 2.2 CONCRETE MIXES:

- A. Normal-Weight Concrete:
  - 1. Compressive Strength: 35 MPa (5000 psi) minimum at 28 days.
  - 2. Release Strength: 25 MPa (3500 psi) minimum at transfer of prestress.
- B. Lightweight Concrete:
  - 1. Compressive Strength: 35 MPa (5000 psi) minimum at 28 days.
  - 2. Release Strength: 25 MPa (3500 psi) minimum at transfer of prestress.
  - 3. Air-Dry Density: Not less than 1440 kg per cubic meter (90 pounds per cubic foot) nor more than 1840 kg per cubic meter (115 pounds per cubic foot).
  - 4. Drying Shrinkage (ASTM C330): Maximum 0.035 percent at 28 days.
- C. Do not use calcium chloride, chloride ions or other salts.

## 2.3 FABRICATION:

- A. Fabrication Procedures: PCI MNL-116.

- B. Fabrication Tolerances: PC MNL-116 and ACI 117 for reinforcing steel placement.
- C. Finishes:
1. Standard Underside: Resulting from casting against approved forms using good industry practice in cleaning of forms, design of concrete mix, placing and curing. Small surface holes caused by air bubbles, normal color variations, normal form joint marks, and minor chips and spalls will be tolerated, but no major or unsightly imperfections, honeycomb, or other defects will be permitted.
  2. Standard Top: Result of vibrating screed and additional hand finishing at projections. Normal color variations, minor indentations, minor chips and spalls will be permitted. No major imperfections, honeycomb, or defects will be permitted.
  3. Exposed Vertical Ends: Strands shall be recessed and the ends of member will receive sacked finish.
  4. Architectural Finish (spandrels and exterior panels): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's range of colors.
- D. Supports for Reinforcement: Provide supports for reinforcement including bolsters, chairs, spacers and other devices for spacing, supporting and fastening reinforcing, complying with CRSI recommendations. For exposed-to-view concrete surfaces, shear legs of supports are in contact with forms, provide supports with legs that are plastic protected or stainless steel protected.
- E. Use epoxy coated reinforcing whenever concrete cover is less than 50 mm (2 inches) for top surfaces exposed to deicing salts, brackish water or salt spray, such as in parking garage decks.
- F. Openings: Primarily on thin sections, factory fabricate those openings 250 mm (10 inches) round or square or larger as shown on drawings. Locate and field drill or cut other openings where no contact is made with prestressing or reinforcing steel after precast prestressed products have been erected. Opening shall be approved by Resident Engineer before drilling or cutting.
- G. Patching: Patching will be acceptable providing structural adequacy of product and appearance are not impaired.
- H. Defective Work: Precast concrete units which do not conform to specified requirements, including strength, tolerances, and finishes, shall be removed and replaced with precast concrete units that meet the requirements of this section. Contractor is also responsible for cost of corrections to other work affected by or resulting from corrections to precast concrete work.

- I. Fasteners: Cast in galvanized hardware such structural inserts, bolts and plates as required by drawings.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 ERECTION:**

- A. Site Access: Provide suitable access to building, proper drainage, and firm, level bearing for hauling and erection equipment to operate under their own power.
- B. Preparation:
1. Provide true, level surfaces on field placed bearing walls and other field placed supporting members.
  2. Place and accurate align anchor bolts, plates or dowels in column footings, grade beams and other field placed support members.
  3. Shoring required for composite beams and slab shall have a minimum load factor of 1.5 times (dead load plus construction loads).
- C. Installation: Installation of precast prestressed concrete shall be performed by the fabricator or a competent erector in accordance with PCI MNL-127. Lift members with suitable lifting devices at points provided by manufacturer. Temporary shoring and bracing, when necessary, shall comply with manufacturer's recommendations.
- D. Alignment: Align and level precast members as required by the approved shop drawings. Level out variations between adjacent members by jacking, loading, or any other feasible method as recommended by the manufacturer and acceptable to Resident Engineer. Individual pieces are considered plumb, level, and aligned if the error does not exceed 1:500 excluding structural deformation caused by loads.

#### **3.2 FIELD WELDING:**

- A. Field welding is to be done by qualified welders using equipment and materials compatible to base material in accordance with AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.4.
- B. Field coat with galvanized paint specified under Section 09 91 00, PAINTING all welded connections.

#### **3.3 ATTACHMENTS:**

Do not use powder-actuated or air-driven fasteners or drill the precast units for surface attachment of accessory items unless otherwise accepted by the precast manufacturer.

#### **3.4 INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE:**

Final inspection and acceptance of erected precast prestressed concrete shall be made by Resident Engineer to verify conformance with drawings and specifications.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 03 45 00**  
**PRECAST ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section includes the performance criteria, materials, production, and erection of architectural precast concrete cladding and load bearing units. The work performed under this section includes all labor, material, equipment, related services, and supervision required for the manufacture and erection of the architectural precast concrete work shown on the contract drawings.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Materials testing and inspection during construction: Section 01 45 29, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Concrete: Section 03 30 00, CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.
- C. Precast pre-stressed structural building elements: Section 03 41 33, PRECAST STRUCTURAL PRETENSIONED CONCRETE.
- H. Sealants and Caulking: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- I. Size, type and color of aggregate for exposed aggregate finish and matrix color: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- K. Repair of abraded galvanized and painted surfaces: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that complies with PCI MNL 117 and the following requirements and is experienced in producing units similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance:
  - 1. Assumes responsibility for engineering units to comply with performance requirements. A Comprehensive Engineering Analysis shall be performed by a qualified professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated.
  - 2. Participates in PCI's Plant Certification program at the time of bidding and is designated a PCI-certified plant for Group A, Category A1- Architectural Cladding and Load Bearing Units.
  - 3. Has sufficient production capacity to produce required units without delaying the work.
- B. Erector Qualifications:

1. A precast concrete erector Qualified by the Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute (PCI) prior to beginning work at the project site. Submit a current Certificate of Compliance furnished by PCI designating qualification in Category S2 (Complex Structural Systems) for load-bearing members.
- C. Quality-Control Standard: For manufacturing procedures and testing requirements, quality-control recommendations, and dimensional tolerances for types of units required, comply with PCI MNL 117.
- D. Sample Panels: After sample approval and before fabricating units, produce a minimum of two sample panels approximately 1.5 sq. m. (16 sq. ft.) in size for review by Resident Engineer. Incorporate full scale details of architectural features, finishes, textures, and transitions in the sample panels. Approved sample panel may be used for mockup and range sample.
1. Locate panels where indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Resident Engineer.
  2. Damage part of an exposed-face surface for each finish, color, and texture, and demonstrate adequacy of repair techniques proposed for repair of surface blemishes.
  3. After acceptance of repair technique, maintain one sample panel at the manufacturer's plant and one at the project site in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed work.
  4. When back face of precast concrete unit is to be exposed, show samples of the workmanship, color, and texture of the backup concrete as well as the facing.
  5. Demolish and remove sample panels only when directed.
- E. Range Samples: After sample panel approval and before production of units, produce a minimum of three samples, approximately 1.5 sq. m. (16 sq. ft.) in size, representing anticipated range of color and texture on project's units. Following range sample acceptance by the Resident Engineer, maintain samples at the manufacturer's plant as color and texture acceptability reference.
- F. Mockups: After sample approval but before production of units, construct full sized mockups to verify selections made under sample Submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution. Mockup to be representative of the finished work in all respects including glass, aluminum framing, sealants and architectural precast concrete complete with all anchors, connections, flashings, and joint fillers as accepted on the final shop drawings. Build mockups to comply

with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed work:

1. Build mockups in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Resident Engineer.
  2. Notify Resident Engineer in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  3. Obtain Resident Engineer's approval of mockups before starting fabrication.
  4. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  5. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Structural Performance: Provide units and connections capable of withstanding: the design criteria specified on the drawings, self weights and weights of materials supported or attached, for the conditions indicated.
1. Design Standards: Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) and the design recommendations of PCI MNL 120, applicable to types of units indicated.
  2. Limit deflection of precast members as follows:
    - Vertical live load -  $\text{Span} / 360$ .
    - Wind load - Floor to floor height times 0.0025.
  3. Design for handling, transportation and erection stresses.
  4. Parking Garage Vehicular Impact Loads: Design spandrel units acting as vehicular barrier for passenger cars to resist a single load of 26.7 kN (6,000 lbs) service load and 44.5 kN (10,000 lbs) ultimate load applied horizontally in any direction, with anchorages or attachments capable of transferring this load to the structure. For design of these units, assume the load to act at a height of 460 mm (18 inches) above the floor or ramp surface on an area not to exceed 0.09 sq. m. (1 sq. ft.).
- B. Design framing system and connections to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for fabrication and construction tolerances, to accommodate live load deflection, shrinkage and creep of primary building structure, and other building movements.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide for in-plane thermal movements resulting from annual ambient temperature changes of 27 deg C (80 deg F) Use other values, greater or smaller, whenever justified by climatic conditions at the project site.

- D. Calculated Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide units whose fire resistance has been calculated according to PCI MNL 124, and is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Retain quality control records and certificates of compliance for 5 years or period of warranty, whichever is greater.
- B. Design Mixes: For each concrete mix along with compressive strength and water-absorption tests.
- C. Shop (Erection) Drawings: Detail fabrication and installation of units.
1. Indicate member locations with distinctive marks that match marks placed on the panels. Provide plans, elevations, dimensions, corner details, shapes, cross sections and relationships to adjacent materials.
  2. Indicate aesthetic intent including joints, reveals, and extent and location of each surface finish.
  3. Indicate separate face and backup mix locations, and thicknesses. Indicate locations, extent and treatment of dry joints if two-stage casting is proposed.
  4. Indicate welded connections by AWS standard symbols. Detail loose and cast-in hardware, and connections.
  5. Indicate locations, tolerances and details of anchorage devices to be embedded in or attached to structure or other construction.
  6. Indicate sequence of erection.
  7. Indicate locations and details of facing materials, anchors, and joint widths.
  8. Design Modifications:  
If design modifications are necessary to meet the performance requirements and field conditions, submit design calculations and drawings. Do not adversely affect the appearance, durability or strength of units when modifying details or materials and maintain the general design concept.
- D. Comprehensive Engineering Analysis: Provide calculationssigned and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for the product design. Show governing panel types, connections, and types of reinforcement, including special reinforcement. Indicate design criteria and loads. Indicate the location, type, magnitude and direction of all imposed loadings from the precast system to the building structural frame.
- E. Samples: Design reference samples for initial verification of design intent, approximately 300 by 300 by 50 mm (12 by 12 by 2 inches),



representative of finishes, color, and textures of exposed surfaces of units.

- F. Samples for each facing unit required, showing the full range of color and texture expected. Supply sketch of each corner or special shape with dimensions. Supply sample showing color and texture of joint treatment.
- G. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedure specifications (WPS) and personnel.
- H. Qualification Data for fabricator and professional engineer: List of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of Resident Engineers and owners, and other information specified.
- I. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results of the following for compliance with requirements indicated:
  - 1. Concrete strengths and mix designs.
- J. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following items complies with requirements.
  - 1. Concrete materials.
  - 2. Reinforcing materials and prestressing tendons.
  - 3. Admixtures.
  - 4. Bearing pads.
  - 5. Structural-steel shapes and hollow structural sections.
  - 6. Insulation
  - 7. Facing units.
  - 8. Anchors.

#### **1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Product handling requirements of PCI MNL 117 shall be followed at the plant and project site.
- B. Deliver all units to the project site in such quantities and at such times to assure compliance with the agreed project schedule and proper setting sequence so as to limit unloading units temporarily on the ground.
- C. Lift and support units only at designated points shown on the Shop Drawings.
- D. Furnish loose connection hardware and anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions, as required, for installation.

**1.7 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty of precast concrete work, including anchorage, joint treatment and related components to be free from defects in materials and workmanship, including cracking and spalling.
- B. After erection, completed work will be weathertight, subject to terms of Article "Warranty of Construction" FAR clause 52.246-21, except warranty period is extended to five years.

**1.8 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - A27/A27M-10.....Steel Castings, Carbon, for General Application
  - A36/A36M-08.....Carbon Structural Steel
  - A47/A47M-99 (R2009)...Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
  - A82-07.....Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
  - A108-07.....Steel Bar, Carbon and Alloy, Cold-Finished
  - A123/A123M-09.....Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
  - A153/A153M-09.....Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
  - A167-99 (R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
  - A184/A184M-06.....Fabricated Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete Reinforcement
  - A185-07.....Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
  - A276-10.....Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes
  - A283/A283M-03 (R2007).Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates
  - A307-10.....Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
  - A325/A325M-10.....Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength
  - A416/A416M-10.....Steel strand, Uncoated Seven-Wire for Prestressed Concrete
  - A490/A490M-10.....Structural Bolts, Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength
  - A496-07.....Steel Wire, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement
  - A497-07.....Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Deformed, for Concrete

A500-10.....Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel  
Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes

A563/A563M-07.....Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts

A572/A572M-07.....High-Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium  
Structural Steel

A615/A615M-09.....Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete  
Reinforcement

A666-10.....Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel  
Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar

A675/A675M-03 (R2009).Steel Bars, Carbon, Hot-Wrought, Special Quality,  
Mechanical Properties

A706/A706M-09.....Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for  
Concrete Reinforcement

A767/A767M-09.....Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete  
Reinforcement

A775/A775M-07.....Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars

A780-09.....Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip  
Galvanized Coatings

A884/A884M-06.....Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Fabric for  
Reinforcement

A934/A934M-07.....Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Steel Reinforcing Bars

B227-10.....Hard-Drawn Copper-Clad Steel Wire

B633-07.....Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and  
Steel

C33-11.....Concrete Aggregates

C40-04.....Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregate for Concrete

C150-09.....Portland Cement

C260-10.....Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete

C330-09.....Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete

C373-88 (R2006).....Test Method for Water Absorption, Bulk Density,  
Apparent Porosity, and Apparent Specific Gravity  
of Fired Whiteware Products

C494/C494M-10.....Chemical Admixtures for Concrete

C618-08.....Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan  
for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Concrete

C881/C881M-10.....for Epoxy-Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete

C979-10.....Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete

C989-10.....Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag for Use in  
Concrete and Mortars

- C1017/C1017M-07.....Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete
- C1107-08.....Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
- C1218/C1218M-99(R2008)Test Method for Water-Soluble Chloride in Mortar and Concrete
- C1240-10.....Silica Fume Used in Cementitious Mixtures
- D412-06.....Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers—Tension
- D2240-05(R2010).....Test Method for Rubber Property—Durometer Hardness
- F436/F436M-10.....Hardened Steel Washers
- F568M-07.....Carbon and Alloy Steel Externally Threaded Metric Fasteners
- F593-02(R2008).....Stainless Steel Bolts, Hex Cap Screws, and Studs
- F844-07.....Washers, Steel, Plain (Flat), Unhardened for General Use
- C. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
- ACI 211.1-91(R2009)..Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight and Mass Concrete (Reapproved 2002)
- ACI 318-11.....Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete
- D. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
- AASHTO LFRD-2010.....LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, U.S., 3rd Edition
- AASHTO M251-06.....Elastomeric Bearings
- E. Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute (PCI):
- MNL-117-96.....Quality Control for Plants and Production of Architectural Precast Concrete Products
- MNL-120-04.....Design Handbook - Precast and Prestressed Concrete
- MNL-124-08.....Design for Fire Resistance of Precast Prestressed Concrete.
- MNL-127-99.....Erector's Manual - Standards and Guidelines for the Erection of Precast Concrete Products
- MNL-135-00.....Tolerance Manual for Precast and Prestressed Concrete Construction
- TR-6-03.....Interim Guidelines for the Use of Self-Consolidating Concrete
- F. Military Specifications (MIL. Spec):
- MIL-C882E-89.....Cloth, Duck, Cotton or Cotton-Polyester Blend Synthetic Rubber, Impregnated, and Laminated, Oil Resistant.
- G. Structural Steel Painting Council (SSPC):

SSPC-Paint 20 (2002).Zinc-Rich Primers (Type I, Inorganic, and Type II, Organic).

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MOLD MATERIALS**

- A. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, nonabsorptive material, warp and buckle free, that will provide continuous and true precast concrete surfaces within fabrication tolerances indicated; non-reactive with concrete and suitable for producing required finishes:
  - 1. Mold-Release Agent: Commercially produced liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
- B. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated. Provide solid backing and form supports to ensure that form liners remain in place during concrete placement. Use with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.//

### **2.2 REINFORCING MATERIALS**

- A. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
- B. Weldable Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A706/A706M, deformed.
  - 2. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A775/A775M or ASTM A934/A934M.
  - 3. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A184/A184M, assembled with clips.
    - a. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A185, fabricated from // as-drawn // galvanized and chromate wash treated // steel wire into flat sheets.
    - b. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A497, flat sheet.
- C. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A884/A884M Class A coated, plain on flat sheet, Type 1 bendable coating.
- E. Supports: Suspend reinforcement from back of mold or use bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place according to PCI MNL 117.

### **2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type I or III.
  - 1. For surfaces exposed to view in finished structure, use white, same type, brand, and mill source throughout the precast concrete production.

2. Standard gray Portland cement may be used for non-exposed backup concrete.
- B. Supplementary Cementitious Materials for unexposed surfaces (backup concrete) only.
  1. Fly Ash Admixture: ASTM C618, Class C or F with maximum loss on ignition of 3 percent.
  2. Metakaolin Admixture: ASTM C618, Class N.
  3. Silica Fume Admixture: ASTM C1240 with optional chemical and physical requirement.
  4. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C989, Grade 100 or 120.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 117, ASTM C33, with coarse aggregates complying with Class 5S. Provide and stockpile fine and coarse aggregates for each type of exposed finish from a single source (pit or quarry) for entire project.
  1. Face-Mix Coarse Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts with cement or causes staining; to match selected finish sample.
    - a. Gradation: To match design reference sample.
  2. Face-Mix Fine Aggregates: Selected, natural or manufactured sand of the same material as coarse aggregate, unless otherwise approved by Resident Engineer.
    - a. Test sand for color value in accordance with ASTM C40. Sand producing darker than specified color standard is unacceptable.
    - b. Clean washed white sand.
    - c. Special fine aggregate produced by crushing exposed coarse aggregate used for finish as specified.
- D. Lightweight Coarse Aggregate: Except as modified by PCI MNL 117, ASTM C330, with absorption less than 11 percent and free from expanded clay.
- E. Unexposed Surface (Backup) Concrete Aggregates: ASTM C33 or C330.
- F. Admixtures: Admixtures containing calcium chloride, or more than 0.15 percent chloride ions or other salts by weight of admixture are not permitted.
  1. Coloring Admixture: ASTM C979, synthetic or natural mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures, temperature stable and non-fading.
  2. Air Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures.
  3. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
  4. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
  5. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.

6. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
7. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
8. Plasticizing Admixture for Flowable Concrete: ASTM C1017/C1017M.
- G. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of concrete and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 117.

#### **2.4 STEEL CONNECTION MATERIALS**

- A. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M except silicon (Si) content in the range of 0 to 0.03% or 0.15 to 0.25% for materials to be galvanized. Steel with chemistry conforming to the formula  $Si + 2.5P \leq 0.09$  is also acceptable.
- B. Carbon-Steel Headed Studs: ASTM A108, Grades 1018 through 1020, cold finished and bearing the minimum mechanical properties for studs as indicated under PCI MNL 117, Table 3.2.3.; AWS D1.1, Type A or B, with arc shields.
- C. Carbon-Steel Plate: ASTM A283/A283M.
- D. Malleable Iron Castings: ASTM A47/A47M. Grade 32510.
- E. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A27/A27M, Grade U-60-30 (Grade 415-205).
- F. High-Strength, Low-Alloy Structural Steel: ASTM A572/A572M except silicon (Si) content in the range of 0 to 0.03% or 0.15 to 0.25% for materials to be galvanized. Steel with chemistry conforming to the formula  $Si + 2.5P \leq 0.09$  is also acceptable.
- G. Carbon-Steel Structural Tubing: ASTM A500, Grade B.
- H. Wrought Carbon-Steel Bars: ASTM A675/A675M, Grade 65 (Grade 450).
- I. Deformed-Steel Wire or Bar Anchors: ASTM A496 or ASTM A706/A706M.
- J. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM A307, Grade A (ASTM F568M, Property Class 4.6) carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and studs; carbon-steel nuts (ASTM A563/A563M, Grade A); and flat, unhardened steel washers (ASTM F844).
- K. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A325/A325M or ASTM A490/A490M, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts, heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, (ASTM A563/A563M) and hardened carbon-steel washers (ASTM F436/F436M).
- L. Finish: For exterior steel items and items indicated for galvanizing, apply zinc coating by hot-dip process according to ASTM A123/A123M, after fabrication, or ASTM A153/A153M, as applicable .
  1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with SSPC-Paint 20.
- M. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

**2.5 STAINLESS-STEEL CONNECTION MATERIALS**

- A. Stainless-Steel Plate: ASTM A666, Type 304, of grade suitable for application.
- B. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM F593, alloy 304 or 316, hex-head bolts and studs; stainless-steel nuts; and flat, stainless steel washers. Lubricate threaded parts of stainless steel bolts with an anti-seize thread lubricant during assembly.
- C. Stainless-Steel Headed Studs: ASTM A276 and bearing the minimum mechanical properties for studs as indicated under PCI MNL 117, Table 3.2.3.

**2.6 BEARING PADS AND OTHER ACCESSORIES**

- A. Provide bearing pads for units as follows:
  - 1. Elastomeric Pads: AASHTO M251, plain, vulcanized, 100 percent polychloroprene (neoprene) elastomer, molded to size or cut from a molded sheet, 50 to 70 Shore A durometer according to ASTM D2240, minimum tensile strength 15.5 MPa (2250 psi) per ASTM D412.
  - 2. Random-Oriented, Fiber-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, randomly oriented synthetic fibers set in elastomer. Surface hardness of 70 to 90 Shore A durometer according to ASTM D2240. Capable of supporting a compressive stress of 20.7 MPa (3000 psi) with no cracking, splitting or delaminating in the internal portions of the pad. Test one specimen for each 200 pads used in the project.
  - 3. Cotton-Duck-Fabric-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, horizontally layered cotton-duck fabric bonded to an elastomer. Surface hardness of 80 to 100 Shore A durometer according to ASTM D2240. Conforming to Division II, Section 18.10.2 of AASHTO LFRD, or MIL-C-882E.
  - 4. Frictionless Pads: Tetrafluoroethylene (teflon), glass-fiber reinforced, bonded to stainless or mild-steel plates, of type required for in-service stress.
  - 5. High-Density Plastic: Multimonomer, nonleaching, plastic strip.
- B. Reglets: Stainless steel, ASTM A167, Type 302 felt or fiber filled or cover face opening of slots.
- C. Vents and Weeps: Polyvinyl chloride plastic tubing, 9.5 mm (3/8-inch) or 4.7 mm (3/16-inch) inside diameter.
- D. Accessories: Provide clips, hangers, plastic or steel shims, and other accessories required to install units.

**2.7 GROUT MATERIALS**

- A. Sand-Cement Grout: Portland Cement, ASTM C150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C144, or ASTM C404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2



parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.

- B. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C1107, Grade A for drypack and Grades B and C for flowable grout and of a consistency suitable for application within a 30-minute working time.
- C. Epoxy-resin grout: Two-component mineral-filled epoxy-resin: ASTM C881 of type, grade, and class to suit requirements.

## **2.8 FACING UNITS AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. Refer to the related specification for facing units and facing accessories.
- B. Epoxy Anchor Hole Filler: ASTM C881, 100 percent solids, sand-filled non-shrinking, non-staining of type, class, and grade to suit application.

## **2.10 CONCRETE MIXES**

- A. Prepare design mixes to match Resident Engineer's sample for each type of concrete required.
  - 1. Limit use of fly ash and granulated blast-furnace slag to 20 percent replacement of Portland cement by weight; metakaolin and silica fume to 10 percent of Portland cement by weight.
- B. Design mixes shall be prepared by a qualified independent testing agency or by qualified precast plant personnel at fabricator's option.
- C. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to the maximum percentage by weight of cement permitted by ACI 318 (ACI 318M) or PCI MNL 117 when tested in accordance with ASTM C1218/C1218M.
- D. Proportion mixes by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.1, with materials to be used on project, to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 34.5 MPa (5000 psi).
  - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
  - 3. Release Strength at Transfer of Prestress: 24.1 MPa (3500 psi).
- E. Lightweight Concrete Mixes: Proportion mixes by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.2, with materials to be used on Project, to provide lightweight concrete with the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 34.5 MPa (5000 psi).

2. Unit Weight: Calculated equilibrium unit weight of 1842 kg/cu.m (115 lb/cu.ft.), plus or minus 48 kg/cu.m (3 lb/cu.ft.), according to ASTM C567.

F. Water Absorption: 6 percent by weight or 14 percent by volume, tested according to PCI MNL 117.

G. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content complying with PCI MNL 117.

H. When included in design mixes, add other admixtures to concrete mixes according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### **2.11 MOLD FABRICATION**

A. Molds: Accurately construct and maintain molds, mortar tight, within fabrication tolerances and of sufficient strength to withstand pressures due to concrete-placement and vibration operations and temperature changes and for prestressing and detensioning operations.

1. Form joints are not permitted on faces exposed to view in the finished work.

2. Edge and Corner Treatment: Uniformly chamfered.

3. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners during placing of concrete.

4. Coat contact surfaces of molds with release agent before reinforcement is placed. Avoid contamination of reinforcement and prestressing tendons by release agent.

### **2.12 SETTING FACING UNITS**

A. Place form liner templates accurately to provide grid for brick facings. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners while placing bricks and during placing of concrete.

B. Securely place brick units face down into form liner pockets and place precast concrete backing mix.

C. Clean faces and joints of brick facing.

### **2.13 FABRICATION**

A. Cast-in Anchors, Inserts, Plates, Angles, and Other Anchorage Hardware: Fabricate anchorage hardware with sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements. Accurately position for attachment of loose hardware and secure in place during precasting operations. Locate anchorage hardware where it does not affect position of main reinforcement or concrete placement.

Weld headed studs and deformed bar anchors used for anchorage.

- B. Furnish loose hardware items including steel plates, clip angles, seat angles, anchors, dowels, cramps, hangers, and other hardware shapes for securing units to supporting and adjacent construction.
- C. Cast-in reglets, slots, holes, and other accessories in units as indicated.
- D. Cast-in openings larger than 250 mm (10 inches) in any dimension. Do not drill or cut openings or reinforcing without approval of Resident Engineer.
- E. Reinforcement: Comply with recommendations in PCI MNL 117 for fabrication, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  - 1. Place reinforcing steel and prestressing strand to maintain at least 19 mm (3/4 inch) minimum concrete cover. Increase cover requirements for reinforcing steel to 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) when units are exposed to corrosive environment or severe exposure conditions. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete.
  - 2. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh spacing and wire tie laps, where required by design. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- F. Prestress tendons for units by pretensioning methods. Comply with PCI MNL 117.
  - 1. Protect strand ends and anchorages with zinc-rich or epoxy paint to prevent corrosion and rust spots.
- G. Mix concrete according to PCI MNL 117 and requirements in this Section. After concrete batching, no additional water may be added.
  - 1. At the fabricator's option either of the following mix design/casting techniques may be used:
    - a. A single design mix throughout the entire thickness of panel.
    - b. Design mixes for facing and backup; using cement and aggregates for each type as indicated, for consecutive placement in the mold. Use cement and aggregate specified for facing mix, use cement and aggregate for backup mix complying with criteria specified as selected by the fabricator.
- H. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent seams or planes of weakness from forming in precast concrete units. Comply with requirements in PCI MNL 117.
  - 1. Place backup concrete to ensure bond with face mix concrete.
  - 2. Place self-consolidating concrete without vibration in accordance with PCI TR-6.

- I. Identify pickup points of units and orientation in structure with permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on Shop Drawings. Imprint or permanently mark casting date on each unit on a surface that will not show in finished structure.
- J. Cure concrete, according to requirements in PCI MNL 117.
- K. Repair damaged units to meet acceptability requirements of PCI MNL 117 and the Resident Engineer.

#### **2.14 INSULATED PANEL CASTING**

- A. Cast and screed supported wythe over mold.
- B. Place insulation boards, abutting edges and ends of adjacent boards. Insert wythe connectors through insulation, and consolidate concrete around connectors according to connector manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Cast and screed top wythe to meet required finish.

#### **2.15 FABRICATION TOLERANCES**

- A. Fabricate units straight and true to size and shape with exposed edges and corners precise and true so each finished unit complies with PCI MNL 117 product tolerances as well as position tolerances for cast-in items.
  - 1. Additional Position Tolerances: For cast-in items measured from datum line location, as indicated on Shop Drawings.
    - a. Location of Bearing Surface from End of Member: Plus or Minus 6 mm (1/4 inch).
    - b. Position of Sleeve: Plus or Minus 13 mm (1/2 inch).
- B. Fabricate architectural trim units such as sills, lintels, coping, cornices, quoins, medallions, bollards, benches, planters, and pavers, with tolerances meeting PCI MNL 135.
- C. Brick-Faced Architectural Precast Concrete Units.
  - 1. Alignment of mortar joints:
    - a. Jog in Alignment: 3 mm (1/8 inch).
    - b. Alignment with Panel Centerline: Plus or Minus 3 mm (1/8 inch).
  - 2. Variation in Width of Exposed Mortar Joints: Plus or Minus 6 mm (1/4 inch).
  - 3. Tipping of Individual Bricks from the Panel Plane of Exposed Brick Surface: Plus 1.5 mm (1/16 inch); Minus 6 mm (1/4 inch) < depth of form liner joint.
  - 4. Exposed Brick Surface Parallel to Primary Control Surface of Panel: Plus 6 mm (1/4 inch); Minus 3 mm (1/8 inch).

5. Individual Brick Step in Face from Panel Plane of Exposed Brick  
Surface: Plus 1.5 mm (1/16 inch); Minus 6 mm (1/4 inch) < depth of form  
liner joint.

## **2.16 FINISHES**

- A. Panel faces shall be free of joint marks, grain, and other obvious defects. Corners, including false joints shall be uniform, straight and sharp. Finish exposed-face surfaces of units to match approved design reference sample and mockups and as follows:
1. PCI's "Architectural Precast Concrete -Color and Texture Selection Guide," of plate numbers indicated.
  2. As-Cast Surface Finish: Provide surfaces free of excessive air voids, sand streaks, and honeycombs.
  3. Textured-Surface Finish: Impart by form liners to provide surfaces free of excessive air voids, sand streaks, and honeycombs, with uniform color and texture.
  4. Bushhammer Finish: Use power and hand tools to remove matrix and fracture coarse aggregates.
  5. Exposed Aggregate Finish: Use chemical retarding agents applied to concrete forms and washing and brushing procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces after form removal.
  6. Abrasive-Blast Finish: Use abrasive grit, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.
  7. Acid-Etched Finish: Use acid and hot-water solution, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces. Protect hardware, connections and insulation from acid attack.
  8. Honed Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
  9. Polished Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
  10. Sand-Embedment Finish: Use selected stones placed in a sand bed in bottom of mold, with sand removed after curing.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces of units to match face-surface finish.
- C. Finish unexposed surfaces of units by smooth steel-trowel finish.
- D. Finish unexposed surfaces of units by float finish.

## **2.17 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Quality-Control Testing: Test and inspect precast concrete according to Section 01 45 29, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES and PCI MNL 117 requirements

respectively. If using self-consolidating concrete also test and inspect according to PCI TR-6.

- B. Testing: If there is evidence that the concrete strength of precast concrete units may be deficient, Precaster will employ an independent testing agency to obtain, prepare, and test cores drilled from hardened concrete to determine compressive strength according to PCI MNL 117:
  - 1. Test results will be made in writing on the same day that tests are performed, with copies to Resident Engineer, Contractor, and precast concrete fabricator. Test reports will include the information required in Section TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES and the following:
    - a. Identification mark and type of precast concrete units represented by core tests; design compressive strength; type of break; compressive strength at breaks, corrected for length-diameter ratio; and direction of applied load to core in relation to horizontal plane of concrete as placed.
- C. Defective or Damaged Work: Units that do not comply with acceptability requirements, including concrete strength, manufacturing tolerances, and color and texture range are unacceptable. Chipped, spalled or cored units may be repaired, if repaired units match the visual mock-up. The Resident Engineer reserves the right to reject any unit if it does not match the accepted samples and visual mock-up. Replace unacceptable units with precast concrete units that comply with requirements.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Deliver anchorage devices that are embedded in or attached to the building structural frame or foundation before start of such work. Provide locations, setting diagrams, and templates for the proper installation of each anchorage device.
- B. Examine supporting structural frame or foundation and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, true and level bearing surfaces, and other conditions affecting performance. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Do not install units until supporting structure is structurally ready to receive loads from precast.

#### **3.2 ERECTION**

- A. Erect level, plumb and square within the specified allowable tolerances. Provide temporary supports and bracing as required to maintain position,

stability, and alignment of units until permanent connections are completed.

1. Install temporary steel or plastic spacing shims or bearing pads as precast concrete units are being erected. Tack weld steel shims to each other to prevent shims from separating.
  2. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width as erection progresses.
  3. Remove projecting lifting devices and use sand-cement grout to fill voids within recessed lifting devices flush with surface of adjacent precast concrete surfaces when recess is exposed.
  4. Unless otherwise shown provide for uniform joint widths of 19mm (3/4 inch).
- B. Connect units in position by bolting, welding, grouting, or as otherwise indicated on approved Erection Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as practical after connecting and/or grouting are completed.
1. Disruption of roof flashing continuity by connections is not permitted; concealment within roof insulation is acceptable.
  2. Welding: Comply with applicable requirements for welding.
    - a. Protect units and bearing pads from damage by field welding or cutting operations and provide noncombustible shields as required.
    - b. Welds not specified shall be continuous fillet welds, using not less than the minimum fillet as specified by AWS.
    - c. Clean weld affected metal surfaces and apply a minimum 100  $\mu$ m (0.004 inch) thick coat of galvanized repair paint to galvanized surfaces in conformance with ASTM A780.
    - d. Visually inspect all welds critical to precast connections. Visually check all welds for completion and remove, reweld or repair all defective welds.
  3. At bolted connections, use lock washers, tack welding, or other acceptable means to prevent loosening of nuts after final adjustment.
    - a. Where slotted connections are used, verify bolt position and tightness. For sliding connections, properly secure bolt but allow bolt to move within connection slot. For friction connection apply specified bolt torque and check 25 percent of bolts at random by calibrated torque wrench.
  4. Grouting Connections: Grout connections where required or indicated. Retain grout in place until hard enough to support itself. Pack spaces with stiff grout material, tamping until voids are completely filled. Place grout to finish smooth, level, and plumb with adjacent concrete

surfaces. Promptly remove grout material from exposed surfaces before it affects finishes or hardens.

- C. Attachments: Upon approval of Resident Engineer, precast pre-stressed products may be drilled or "shot" for fasteners or small openings. Provided reinforcing or pre-stressing steel is not damaged or cut.
1. Should spalling occur, repair according to this specification section.
- D. Venting and Weeps: Where precast concrete panels form the outer wythe of cavity wall construction, vent the cavity wall.
1. Use polyvinyl chloride plastic tubing to vent the cavity.
  2. Place plastic vent tubes "tilted down and out" in horizontal and vertical joints.
  3. Space vent tubes in accordance with shop drawings, but not less than two vents per panel or approximately 1220 mm (4 feet) on centers.
- E. Setting: Where shown, fill joints with cement mortar specified in Section 04 05 13, MASONRY MORTARING
1. Clean surfaces forming beds and other joints for precast concrete panels of dust, dirt, and other foreign matter, and wet thoroughly to prevent suction before precast concrete, elements are set.
  2. Set precast element level and true to line with uniform joints filled completely with mortar.  
Rake out joints 25 mm (1-inch) deep for pointing or sealants.  
Joints required to have only sealant: Kept free of mortar for full depth.
  3. Keep exposed faces of precast concrete elements free of mortar.
  4. Remove wedges, spacers, or other appliances which are likely to cause staining from joints.
  5. Where parging is shown, parge back of elements solid with mortar.  
Apply parging without skips or holidays.
- F. Pointing: Wash and brush clean, leaving joints free from loose mortar, dust and other foreign material.
1. Carefully point with a slightly concave joint.
  2. Mortar for pointing as specified in Section 04 05 13, MASONRY MORTARING.
- G. Sealing of Joints: Where shown and where required to make work watertight: clean, dry and seal joints between precast concrete elements and between precast elements and adjoining materials as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.

### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erect units level, plumb, square, true, and in alignment without exceeding the erection tolerances of PCI MNL 117, Appendix I.



**3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Refer to Section 01 45 29, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Resident Engineer.
- C. Repair or remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

**3.5 REPAIRS**

- A. Repairs will be permitted provided structural adequacy of units and appearance are not impaired.
- B. Mix patching materials and repair units so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces and show no apparent line of demarcation between original and repaired work, when viewed in typical daylight illumination from a distance of 6 m (20 feet).
- C. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A780.
- D. Remove and replace damaged units when repairs do not meet requirements.

**3.6 CLEANING**

- A. Clean all surfaces of precast concrete to be exposed to view, as necessary, prior to shipping.
- B. Clean mortar, plaster, fireproofing, weld slag, and any other deleterious material from concrete surfaces and adjacent materials immediately.
- C. Clean exposed surfaces of precast concrete units after erection and completion of joint treatment to remove weld marks, other markings, dirt, and stains.
  - 1. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to precast concrete fabricator's recommendations. Clean soiled precast concrete surfaces with detergent and water, using stiff fiber brushes and sponges, and rinse with clean water. Protect other work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
  - 2. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of exposed concrete finishes or damage adjacent materials.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 04 05 13  
MASONRY MORTARING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

Section specifies mortar materials and mixes.

**1.2 RELATED WORK:**

- A. Mortar used in Section:
  - 1. Section 03 45 00, PRECAST ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE.
  - 3. Section 04 20 00, UNIT MASONRY.
- B. Mortar Color: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**1.3 TESTING LABORATORY-CONTRACTOR RETAINED**

- A. Engage a commercial testing laboratory approved by Resident Engineer to perform tests specified below.
- B. Submit information regarding testing laboratory's facilities and qualifications of technical personnel to Resident Engineer.

**1.4 TESTS**

- A. Test mortar and materials specified.
- B. Certified test reports.
- C. Identify materials by type, brand name and manufacturer or by origin.
- D. Do not use materials until laboratory test reports are approved by Resident Engineer.
- E. After tests have been made and materials approved, do not change without additional test and approval of Resident Engineer.
- F. Testing:
  - 1. Test materials proposed for use for compliance with specifications in accordance with test methods contained in referenced specifications and as follows:
  - 2. Mortar:
    - a. Test for compressive strength and water retention; ASTM C270.
    - b. Mortar compressive strengths 28 days as follows:
      - Type M: Minimum 17230 kPa (2500 psi) at 28 days.
      - Type S: Minimum 12400 kPa (1800 psi) at 28 days.
      - Type N: Minimum 5170 kPa (750 psi) at 28 days.
  - 3. Cement:
    - a. Test for water soluble alkali (nonstaining) when nonstaining cement is specified.

- b. Nonstaining cement shall contain not more than 0.03 percent water soluble alkali.
- 4. Sand: Test for deleterious substances, organic impurities, soundness and grading.

#### **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Certificates:
  - 2. Indicating that following items meet specifications:
    - a. Portland cement.
    - b. Masonry cement.
    - c. Mortar cement.
    - d. Hydrated lime.
    - e. Fine aggregate (sand).
- C. Laboratory Test Reports:
  - 1. Mortar, each type.
  - 2. Admixtures.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Cement, each kind.
  - 2. Hydrated lime.
  - 3. Admixtures.
  - 4. Liquid acrylic resin.

#### **1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver masonry materials in original sealed containers marked with name of manufacturer and identification of contents.
- B. Store masonry materials under waterproof covers on planking clear of ground, and protect damage from handling, dirt, stain, water and wind.

#### **1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - C40-04.....Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregates for  
Concrete
  - C91-05.....Masonry Cement
  - C109-08.....Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement  
Mortars (Using 2-in. or 50-MM Cube Specimens)
  - C144-04.....Aggregate for Masonry Mortar

C150-09.....Portland Cement  
C207-06.....Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes  
C270-10.....Mortar for Unit Masonry  
C307-03(R2008).....Tensile Strength of Chemical - Resistant  
Mortar, Grouts, and Monolithic Surfacing  
C321-00(R2005).....Bond Strength of Chemical-Resistant Mortars  
C348-08.....Flexural Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars  
C595-10.....Blended Hydraulic Cement  
C780-10.....Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of  
Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry  
C979-10.....Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete  
C1329-05.....Mortar Cement

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 HYDRATED LIME**

ASTM C207, Type S.

### **2.2 AGGREGATE FOR MASONRY MORTAR**

A. ASTM C144 and as follows:

1. Light colored sand for mortar for laying face brick.
2. White plastering sand meeting sieve analysis for mortar joints for pointing

B. Test sand for color value in accordance with ASTM C40. Sand producing color darker than specified standard is unacceptable.

### **2.3 BLENDED HYDRAULIC CEMENT**

ASTM C595, Type IS, IP.

### **2.4 MASONRY CEMENT**

A. ASTM C91. Type N, S, or M.

### **2.5 MORTAR CEMENT**

ASTM C1329, Type N, S or M.

### **2.6 PORTLAND CEMENT**

A. ASTM C150, Type I.

### **2.7 LIQUID ACRYLIC RESIN**

A formulation of acrylic polymers and modifiers in liquid form designed for use as an additive for mortar to improve physical properties.

### **2.8 WATER**

Potable, free of substances that are detrimental to mortar, masonry, and metal.

**2.9 POINTING MORTAR**

- A. For Cast Stone or Precast Concrete: Proportion by volume; One part white Portland cement, two parts white sand, and 1/5 part hydrated lime.

**2.10 MASONRY MORTAR**

- A. Conform to ASTM C270.
- B. Admixtures:
  - 1. Do not use mortar admixtures, unless approved by Resident Engineer.
  - 2. Submit laboratory test report showing effect of proposed admixture on strength, water retention, and water repellency of mortar.
  - 3. Do not use antifreeze compounds.

**2.11 HIGH BOND MORTAR**

- A. Mixture by volume, one-part Portland cement, 1/4-part hydrated lime, three-parts sand, water, and liquid acrylic resin.
- B. Mortar properties when tested in accordance with referenced specifications.
  - 1. Compressive Strength, ASTM C109: Minimum 19,305 kPa (2800 psi), using 50 mm (2 inch) cubes.
  - 2. Tensile Strength, ASTM C307: 3861 kPa Minimum (560 psi), using the 25mm (1 inch) briquettes.
  - 3. Flexural Strength, ASTM C348: Minimum 6067 kPa (880 psi), using flexural bar.
  - 4. Bond Strength, ASTM C321: Minimum 2965 kPa (430 psi), using crossed brick.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 MIXING**

- A. Mix in a mechanically operated mortar mixer.
  - 1. Mix mortar for at least three minutes but not more than five minutes.
- B. Measure ingredients by volume. Measure by the use of a container of known capacity.
- C. Mix water with dry ingredients in sufficient amount to provide a workable mixture which will adhere to vertical surfaces of masonry units.
- D. Mortar that has stiffened because of loss of water through evaporations:
  - 1. Re-tempered by adding water to restore to proper consistency and workability.

2. Discard mortar that has reached its initial set or has not been used within two hours.

E. Pointing Mortar:

1. Mix dry ingredients with enough water to produce a damp mixture of workable consistency which will retain its shape when formed into a ball.
2. Allow mortar to stand in dampened condition for one to 1-1/2 hours.
3. Add water to bring mortar to a workable consistency prior to application.

**3.2 MORTAR USE LOCATION**

- A. Use Type M mortar for precast concrete panels, and waterproof parging below grade.
- B. Use Type S mortar for // masonry containing vertical reinforcing bars (non-engineered) masonry below grade
- D. Use Type N mortar for other masonry work, except as otherwise specified.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 04 20 00**  
**UNIT MASONRY****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies requirements for construction of masonry unit walls.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Steel lintels and shelf angles: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- B. Flashing: Section 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
- C. Sealants and sealant installation: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- D. Color and texture of masonry units: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES.
- B. Samples:
  - 1. Concrete masonry units, when exposed in finish work.
  - 2. Anchors, and ties, one each and joint reinforcing 1200 mm (48 inches) long.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Special masonry shapes.
  - 2. Drawings, showing reinforcement, applicable dimensions and methods of hanging soffit or lintel masonry and reinforcing masonry for embedment of anchors for hung fixtures.
- D. Certificates:
  - 1. Certificates signed by manufacturer, including name and address of contractor, project location, and the quantity, and date or dates of shipment of delivery to which certificate applies.
  - 2. Testing laboratories facilities and qualifications of its principals and key personnel to perform tests specified.
- F. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Anchors, ties, and reinforcement.
  - 2. Shear keys.
  - 3. Reinforcing bars.

**1.5 WARRANTY**

Warrant exterior masonry walls against moisture leaks and subject to terms of "Warranty of Construction", FAR clause 52.246-21, except that warranty period shall be five years.

**1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A951-06.....Steel Wire for Masonry Joint Reinforcement.
  - A615/A615M-09.....Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
  - A675/A675M-03 (R2009)....Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Hot-Wrought, Special Quality, Mechanical Properties
  - C34-03 Structural Clay Load-Bearing Wall Tile
  - C90-11.....Load-Bearing Concrete Masonry Units
  - C476-10.....Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry
  - C744-10.....Prefaced Concrete and Calcium Silicate Masonry Units.
  - D1056-07.....Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded Rubber
  - D2000-08.....Rubber Products in Automotive Applications
  - D2240-05 (R2010).....Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness
  - D3574-08.....Flexible Cellular Materials-Slab, Bonded, and Molded Urethane Foams
  - F1667-11.....Fasteners: Nails, Spikes and Staples
- C. Masonry Industry Council:
- Hot and Cold Weather Masonry Construction Manual-98 (R2000).
- D. American Welding Society (AWS):
- D1.4-11 Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel.
- E. Federal Specifications (FS):
- FF-S-107C-00.....Screws, Tapping and Drive
- F. Masonry Standards Joint Committee; Specifications for Masonry Structures
- TMS 602-08/ACI 530.1-08/ASCE 6-08 (2008 MSJC Book Version TMS-0402-08).

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS**

- A. Hollow and Solid Load-Bearing Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C90.
1. Unit Weight: Normal weight
  2. Fire rated units for fire rated partitions.
  3. Sizes: Modular.
  4. For molded faces used as a finished surface, use concrete masonry units with uniform fine to medium surface texture unless specified otherwise.



5. Use bullnose concrete masonry units at corners exposed in finished work with 25 mm (one inch) minimum radius rounded vertical exterior corners (bullnose units).

## **2.2 SHEAR KEYS**

- A. ASTM D2000, solid extruded cross-shaped section of rubber, neoprene, or polyvinyl chloride, with a durometer hardness of approximately 80 when tested in accordance with ASTM D2240, and a minimum shear strength of 3.5 MPa (500 psi).
- B. Shear key dimensions: Approximately 70 mm by 8 mm for long flange and 38 mm by 16 mm for short flange (2-3/4 inches by 5/16 inch for long flange, and 1-1/2 inches by 5/8 inch for short flange).

## **2.3 REINFORCEMENT:**

- A. Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615, deformed bars, 420 MPa (Grade 60) for bars No. 10 to No. 57 (No. 3 to No. 18), except as otherwise indicated.
- B. Where 6 mm diameter (No. 2) bars are shown, provide plain, round, carbon steel bars, ASTM A675, 550 MPa (Grade 80).
- C. Shop-fabricate reinforcement bars which are shown to be bent or hooked.
- D. Joint Reinforcement:
  1. Form from wire complying with ASTM A951.
  2. Galvanized after fabrication.
  3. Width of joint reinforcement 40 mm (1 5/8-inches) less than nominal width of masonry wall or partition.
  4. Cross wires welded to longitudinal wires.
  5. Joint reinforcing at least 3000 mm (10 feet) in length.
  6. Joint reinforcing in rolls is not acceptable.
  7. Joint reinforcing that is crimped to form drip is not acceptable.
  8. Maximum spacing of cross wires 400 mm (16 inches) to longitudinal wires.
  9. Ladder Design:
    - a. Longitudinal wires deformed 5 mm (0.20 inch) diameter wire.
    - b. Cross wires 4 mm (0.16 inch) diameter.
  10. Trussed Design:
    - a. Longitudinal and cross wires not less than 4 mm (0.16 inch nominal) diameter.
    - b. Longitudinal wires deformed.

## **2.4 ANCHORS, TIES, AND REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615M, deformed bars, grade as shown.
- B. Joint Reinforcement:
  1. Form from wire complying with ASTM A951.
  2. Galvanized after fabrication.

3. Width of joint reinforcement 40 mm (0.16 inches) less than nominal width of masonry wall or partition.
  4. Cross wires welded to longitudinal wires.
  5. Joint reinforcement at least 3000 mm (10 feet) in length.
  6. Joint reinforcement in rolls is not acceptable.
  7. Joint reinforcement that is crimped to form drip is not acceptable.
  8. Maximum spacing of cross wires 400 mm (16 inch) to longitudinal wires.
  9. Ladder Design:
    - a. Longitudinal wires deformed 5 mm (0.20 inch) diameter wire.
    - b. Cross wires 4 mm (0.16 inch) diameter.
  10. Trussed Design:
    - a. Longitudinal and cross wires not less than 4 mm (0.16 inch nominal) diameter.
    - b. Longitudinal wires deformed.
- C. Adjustable Veneer Anchor for Frame Walls:
1. Two piece, adjustable anchor and tie.
  2. Anchor and tie may be either type; use only one type throughout.
  3. Loop Type:
    - a. Anchor: Screw-on galvanized steel anchor strap 2.75 mm (0.11 inch) by 19 mm (3/4 inch) wide by 225 mm (9 inches) long, with 9 mm (0.35 inch) offset and 100 mm (4 inch) adjustment. Provide 5 mm (0.20 inch) hole at each end for fasteners.
    - b. Ties: Triangular tie, fabricated of 5 mm (0.20 inch) diameter galvanized cold drawn steel wire. Ties long enough to engage the anchor and be embedded not less than 50 mm (2 inches) into the bed joint of the masonry veneer.
  4. Angle Type:
    - a. Anchor: Minimum 2 mm (16 gage) thick galvanized steel angle shaped anchor strap. Provide hole in vertical leg for fastener. Provide hole near end of outstanding leg to suit upstanding portion of tie.
    - b. Tie: Fabricate from 5 mm (0.20 inch) diameter galvanized cold drawn steel wire. Form "L" shape to be embedded not less than 50 mm (2 inches) into the bed joint of the masonry veneer and provide upstanding leg to fit through hole in anchor and be long enough to allow 50 mm (2 inches) of vertical adjustment.
- D. Dovetail Anchors:
1. Corrugated steel dovetail anchors formed of 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick by 25 mm (1 inch) wide galvanized steel, 90 mm (3-1/2 inches)

long where used to anchor 100 mm (4 inch) nominal thick masonry units, 140 mm (5-1/2 inches) long for masonry units more than 100 mm (4 inches) thick.

2. Triangular wire dovetail anchor 100 mm (4 inch) wide formed of 4 mm (9 gage) steel wire with galvanized steel dovetail insert. Anchor length to extend at least 75 mm (3 inches) into masonry, 25 mm (1 inch) into 40 mm (1-1/2 inch) thick units.
3. Form dovetail anchor slots from 0.6 mm (0.0239 inch) thick galvanized steel (with felt or fiber filler).

E. Individual ties:

1. Rectangular ties: Form from 5 mm (3/16 inch) diameter galvanized steel rod to a rectangular shape not less than 50 mm (2 inches) wide by sufficient length for ends of ties to extend within 25 mm (1 inch) of each face of wall. Ties that are crimped to form drip are not permitted.
2. Adjustable Cavity Wall Ties:
  - a. Adjustable wall ties may be used at Contractor's option.
  - b. Two piece type permitting up to 40 mm (1-1/2 inch) adjustment.
  - c. Form ties from 5 mm (3/16 inch) diameter galvanized steel wire.
  - d. Form one piece to a rectangular shape 105 mm (4-1/8 inches) wide by length required to extend into the bed joint 50 mm (2 inches).
  - e. Form the other piece to a 75 mm (3 inch) long by 75 mm (3 inch) wide shape, having a 75 mm (3 inch) long bent section for engaging the 105 mm (4-1/8 inch) wide piece to form adjustable connection.

F. Wall Ties, (Mesh or Wire):

1. Mesh wall ties formed of ASTM A82, W0.5, 2 mm, (16 gage) galvanized steel wire 13 mm by 13 mm (1/2 inch by 1/2 inch) mesh, 75 mm (3 inches) wide by 200 mm (8 inches) long.
2. Rectangular wire wall ties formed of W1.4, 3 mm, (9 gage) galvanized steel wire 50 mm (2 inches) wide by 200 mm (8 inches) long.

G. Corrugated Wall Tie:

1. Form from 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick corrugated, galvanized steel 30 mm (1-1/4 inches) wide by lengths so as to extend at least 100 mm (4 inches) into joints of new masonry plus 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) turn-up.
2. Provide 5 mm (3/16 inch) hole in turn-up for fastener attachment.

H. Adjustable Steel Column Anchor:

1. Two piece anchor consisting of a 6 mm (1/4 inch) diameter steel rod to be welded to steel with offset ends, rod to permit 100 mm (4 inch) vertical adjustment of wire anchor.

2. Triangular shaped wire anchor 100 mm (4 inches) wide formed from 5 (3/16 inch) diameter galvanized wire, to extend at least 75 mm (3 inches) into joints of masonry.

I. Adjustable Steel Beam Anchor:

1. Z or C type steel strap, 30 mm (1 1/4 inches) wide, 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick.
2. Flange hook not less than 38 mm (1 1/2 inches) long.
3. Length to embed in masonry not less than 50 mm (2 inches) in 100 mm (4 inch) nominal thick masonry and 100 mm (4 inches) in thicker masonry.
4. Bend masonry end not less than 40 mm (1 1/2 inches).

J. Ridge Wall Anchors:

1. Form from galvanized steel not less than 25 mm (1 inch) wide by 5 mm (3/16 inch) thick by 600 mm (24 inches) long, plus 50 mm (2 inch) bends.
2. Other lengths as shown.

## **2.7 PREFORMED COMPRESSIBLE JOINT FILLER**

- A. Thickness and depth to fill the joint as specified.
- B. Closed Cell Neoprene: ASTM D1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 1, B2F1.
- C. Non-Combustible Type: ASTM C612, Class 5, 1800 degrees F.

## **2.8 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Weep Hole Wicks: Glass fiber ropes, 10 mm (3/8 inch) minimum diameter, 300 mm (12 inches) long.
- B. Box Board:
  1. Mineral Fiber Board: ASTM C612, Class 1.
  2. 25 mm (1 inch) thickness.
  3. Other spacing material having similar characteristics may be used subject to the Resident Engineer's approval.
- C. Masonry Cleaner:
  1. Detergent type cleaner selected for each type masonry used.
  2. Acid cleaners are not acceptable.
  3. Use soapless type specially prepared for cleaning brick or concrete masonry as appropriate.
- D. Fasteners:
  1. Concrete Nails: ASTM F1667, Type I, Style 11, 19 mm (3/4 inch) minimum length.
  2. Masonry Nails: ASTM F1667, Type I, Style 17, 19 mm (3/4 inch) minimum length.
  3. Screws: FS-FF-S-107, Type A, AB, SF thread forming or cutting.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 JOB CONDITIONS****A. Protection:**

1. Cover tops of walls with nonstaining waterproof covering, when work is not in progress. Secure to prevent wind blow off.
2. On new work protect base of wall from mud, dirt, mortar droppings, and other materials that will stain face, until final landscaping or other site work is completed.

**B. Cold Weather Protection:**

1. Masonry may be laid in freezing weather when methods of protection are utilized.
2. Comply with MSJC and "Hot and Cold Weather Masonry Construction Manual".

**3.2 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES****A. Lay masonry units plumb, level and true to line within the tolerances as per MSJC requirements and as follows:****B. Maximum variation from plumb:**

1. In 3000 mm (10 feet) - 6 mm (1/4 inch).
2. In 6000 mm (20 feet) - 10 mm (3/8 inch).
3. In 12 000 mm (40 feet) or more - 13 mm (1/2 inch).

**C. Maximum variation from level:**

1. In any bay or up to 6000 mm (20 feet) - 6 mm (1/4 inch).
2. In 12 000 mm (40 feet) or more - 13 mm (1/2 inch).

**D. Maximum variation from linear building lines:**

1. In any bay or up to 6000 mm (20 feet) - 13 mm (1/2 inch).
2. In 12 000 mm (40 feet) or more - 19 mm (3/4 inch).

**E. Maximum variation in cross-sectional dimensions of columns and thickness of walls from dimensions shown:**

1. Minus 6 mm (1/4 inch).
2. Plus 13 mm (1/2 inch).

**F. Maximum variation in prepared opening dimensions:**

1. Accurate to minus 0 mm (0 inch).
2. Plus 6 mm (1/4 inch).

**3.3 INSTALLATION GENERAL****A. Keep finish work free from mortar smears or spatters, and leave neat and clean.****B. Anchor masonry as specified in Paragraph, ANCHORAGE.****C. Wall Openings:**

1. Fill hollow metal frames built into masonry walls and partitions solid with mortar as laying of masonry progresses.

2. If items are not available when walls are built, prepare openings for subsequent installation.

D. Tooling Joints:

1. Do not tool until mortar has stiffened enough to retain thumb print when thumb is pressed against mortar.
2. Tool while mortar is soft enough to be compressed into joints and not raked out.
3. Finish joints in exterior face masonry work with a jointing tool, and provide smooth, water-tight concave joint unless specified otherwise.
4. Tool Exposed interior joints in finish work concave unless specified otherwise.

E. Partition Height:

1. Extend partitions at least 100 mm (four inches) above suspended ceiling or to overhead construction where no ceiling occurs.
2. Extend following partitions to overhead construction.
  - a. Where noted smoke partitions, FHP (full height partition), and FP (fire partition) and smoke partitions (SP) on drawings.
  - b. Both walls at expansion joints.
  - c. Corridor walls.
  - d. Walls at stairway and stair halls, elevators, dumbwaiters, trash and laundry chute shafts, and other vertical shafts.
  - e. Walls at refrigerator space.
  - g. Reinforced masonry partitions
3. Extend finish masonry partitions at least four-inches above suspended ceiling and continue with concrete masonry units or structural clay tile to overhead construction:

F. Lintels:

1. Lintels are not required for openings less than 1000 mm (3 feet 4 inches) wide that have hollow metal frames.
2. Openings 1025 mm (3 feet 5 inches) wide to 1600 mm (5 feet 4 inches) wide with no structural steel lintel or frames, require a lintel formed of concrete masonry lintel or bond beam units filled with grout per ASTM C476 and reinforced with 1- #15m (1-#5) rod top and bottom for each 100 mm (4 inches) of nominal thickness unless shown otherwise.
3. Precast lintels of 25 Mpa (3000 psi) concrete, of same thickness as partition, and with one Number 5 deformed bar top and bottom for each 100 mm (4 inches) of nominal thickness, may be used in lieu of reinforced CMU masonry lintels.

4. Use steel lintels, for openings over 1600 mm (5 feet 4 inches) wide, brick masonry, and elevator openings unless shown otherwise.
  5. Doors having overhead concealed door closers require a steel lintel, and a pocket for closer box.
  6. Length for minimum bearing of 100 mm (4 inches) at ends.
  7. Build masonry openings or arches over wood or metal centering and supports when steel lintels are not used.
- G. Wall, Furring, and Partition Units:
1. Lay out field units to provide for running bond of walls and partitions, with vertical joints in second course centering on first course units unless specified otherwise.
  2. Align head joints of alternate vertical courses.
  3. At sides of openings, balance head joints in each course on vertical center lines of openings.
  4. Use no piece shorter than 100 mm (4 inches) long.
  5. On interior partitions provide a 6 mm (1/4 inch) open joint for caulking between existing construction, exterior walls, concrete work, and abutting masonry partitions.
  6. Use not less than 100 mm (4 inches) nominal thick masonry for free standing furring unless shown otherwise.
  7. Do not abut existing plastered surfaces except suspended ceilings with new masonry partitions.
- H. Use not less than 100 mm (4 inches) nominal thick masonry for fireproofing steel columns unless shown otherwise.
- I. Before connecting new masonry with previously laid, remove loosened masonry or mortar, and clean and wet work in place as specified under wetting.
- J. Temporary Formwork: Provide formwork and shores as required for temporary support of reinforced masonry elements.
- K. Construct formwork to conform to shape, line and dimensions shown. Make sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar, grout, or concrete (if any). Brace, tie and support as required to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
- L. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and all other reasonable temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- M. Allow not less than the following minimum time to elapse after completion of members before removing shores or forms, provided suitable curing conditions have been obtained during the curing period.
1. 10 days for girders and beams.

2. 7 days for slabs.
3. 7 days for reinforced masonry soffits.

### **3.4 ANCHORAGE**

#### **A. Veneer to Concrete Walls:**

1. Install dovetail slots in concrete vertically at 600 mm (2 feet) on centers.
2. Locate dovetail anchors at 400 mm (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals.
3. Anchor new masonry facing to existing concrete with corrugated wall ties spaced at 400 mm, (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals, and at 600 mm (2 feet) maximum horizontal intervals. Fasten ties to concrete with power actuated fasteners or concrete nails.

#### **B. Anchorage of Abutting Masonry:**

1. Anchor interior 100 mm (4 inch) thick masonry partitions to exterior masonry walls with wall ties. Space ties at 600 mm (2 foot) maximum vertical intervals. Extend ties 100 mm (4 inches) minimum into masonry.
2. Anchor interior masonry bearing walls or interior masonry partitions over 100 mm (4 inches) thick to masonry walls with rigid wall anchors spaced at 400 mm (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals.
3. Anchor abutting masonry walls and partitions to concrete with dovetail anchors. Install dovetail slots vertically in concrete at centerline of abutting wall or partition. Locate dovetail anchors at 400 mm (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals. Secure anchors to existing wall with two 9 mm (3/8 inch) by 75 mm (3 inch) expansion bolts or two power-driven fasteners.
4. Anchor abutting interior masonry partitions to existing concrete and existing masonry construction, with corrugated wall ties. Extend ties at least 100 mm (4 inches) into joints of new masonry. Fastened to existing concrete and masonry construction, with powder actuated drive pins, nail or other means that provides rigid anchorage. Install anchors at 400 mm (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals.

#### **C. Masonry Furring:**

1. Anchor masonry furring less than 100 mm (4 inches) nominal thick to masonry walls or to concrete with corrugated wall ties or dovetail anchors.
2. Space not over 600 mm (2 feet) on centers in both directions.



### 3.5 REINFORCEMENT

#### A. Joint Reinforcement:

1. Use as joint reinforcement in CMU wythe of combination brick and CMU, cavity walls, and single wythe concrete masonry unit walls or partitions.
2. Reinforcing may be used in lieu of individual ties for anchoring brick facing to CMU backup in exterior masonry walls.
3. Brick veneer over frame backing walls does not require joint reinforcement.
4. Locate joint reinforcement in mortar joints at 400 mm (16 inch) maximum vertical intervals.
5. Additional joint reinforcement is required in mortar joints at both 200 mm (8 inches) and 400 (16 inches) above and below windows, doors, louvers and similar openings in masonry, except where other type anchors are required for anchorage of masonry to concrete structure.
6. Joint reinforcement is required in every other course of stack bond CMU masonry.
7. Wherever brick masonry is backed up with stacked bond masonry, joint reinforcement is required in every other course of CMU backup, and in corresponding joint of facing brick.

#### B. Steel Reinforcing Bars:

1. Install in cells of hollow masonry units where required for vertical reinforcement and in bond beam units for lintels and bond beam horizontal reinforcement. Install in wall cavities of reinforced masonry walls where shown.
2. Use grade 60 bars if not specified otherwise.
3. Bond Beams:
  - a. Form Bond beams of load-bearing concrete masonry units filled with ASTM C476 grout and reinforced with 2-#15m (#5) reinforcing steel unless shown otherwise. Do not cut reinforcement.
  - b. Brake bond beams only at expansion joints and at control joints, if shown.
4. Stack Bond:
  - a. Locate additional joint reinforcement in vertical and horizontal joints as shown.
  - b. Anchor vertical reinforcement into the foundation or wall or bond beam below and hold in place.
  - c. Provide temporary bracing for walls over 8 ft. tall until permanent horizontal bracing is completed.

## 5. Grout openings:

- a. Leave cleanout holes in double wythe walls during construction by omitting units at the base of one side of the wall.
- b. Locate 75 mm x 75 mm (3 in. x 3 in.) min. clean-out holes at location of vertical reinforcement.
- c. Keep grout space clean of mortar accumulation and sand debris. Clean the grout space every day using a high pressure jet stream of water, or compressed air, or industrial vacuum, or by laying wood strips on the metal ties as the wall is built. If wood strips are used, lift strips with wires as the wall progresses and before placing each succeeding course of wall ties.

**3.6 CMU CONTROL JOINTS.**

- A. Provide CMU control (CJ) joints where shown on drawings.
- B. Keep joint free of mortar and other debris.
- C. Where joints occur in masonry walls.
  1. Install preformed compressible joint filler in brick wythe.
  2. Install cross shaped shear keys in concrete masonry unit wythe with preformed compressible joint filler on each side of shear key unless otherwise specified.
  3. Install filler, backer rod, and sealant on exposed faces.
- D. Use standard notched concrete masonry units (sash blocks) made in full and half-length units where shear keys are used to create a continuous vertical joint.
- E. Interrupt steel joint reinforcement at expansion and control joints unless otherwise shown.
- F. Fill opening in exposed face of expansion and control joints with sealant as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.

**3.7 BUILDING EXPANSION AND SEISMIC JOINTS**

- A. Keep joint free of mortar. Remove mortar and other debris.
- B. Install non-combustible, compressible type joint filler to fill space completely except where sealant is shown on joints in exposed finish work.
- C. Where joints are on exposed faces, provide depth for backer rod and sealant as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS, unless shown otherwise.

**3.8 ISOLATION SEAL**

- A. Where full height walls or partitions lie parallel or perpendicular to and under structural beams or shelf angles, provide a separation between walls or partitions and bottom of beams or shelf angles not less than the masonry joint thickness unless shown otherwise.

- B. Insert in the separation, a continuous full width strip of non-combustible type compressible joint filler.
- C. Where exposed in finish work, cut back filler material in the joint enough to allow for the joint to be filled with sealant material specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.

### **3.10 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS**

#### **A. Kind and Users:**

1. Provide special concrete masonry shapes as required. Use solid concrete masonry units, where full units cannot be used, or where needed for anchorage of accessories.
2. Provide solid load-bearing concrete masonry units or grout the cell of hollow units at jambs of openings in walls, where structural members impose loads directly on concrete masonry, and where shown.
3. Provide rounded corner (bullnose) shapes at opening jambs in exposed work and at exterior corners.
4. Do not use brick jambs in exposed finish work.
5. Use concrete building brick only as filler in backup material where not exposed.
6. Masonry assemblies shall meet the required fire resistance in fire rated partitions of type and construction that will provide fire rating as shown.

#### **B. Laying:**

1. Lay concrete masonry units with 10 mm (3/8 inch) joints, with a bond overlap of not less than 1/4 of the unit length, except where stack bond is required.
2. Do not wet concrete masonry units before laying.
3. Bond external corners of partitions by overlapping alternate courses.
4. Lay first course in a full mortar bed.
5. Set anchorage items as work progress.
6. Where ends of anchors, bolts, and other embedded items, project into voids of units, completely fill such voids with mortar or grout.
7. Provide a 6 mm (1/4 inch) open joint for caulking between exterior walls, and abutting masonry partitions.
8. Lay concrete masonry units with full face shell mortar beds and fill head joint beds for depth equivalent to face shell thickness.
9. Lay concrete masonry units so that cores of units, that are to be filled with grout, are vertically continuous with joints of cross webs of such cores completely filled with mortar. Unobstructed core openings not less than 50 mm (2 inches) by 75 mm (3 inches).

10. Do not wedge the masonry against the steel reinforcing. Minimum 13 mm (1/2 inch) clear distance between reinforcing and masonry units.
11. Install deformed reinforcing bars of sizes shown.
12. Steel reinforcement, at time of placement, free of loose flaky rust, mud, oil, or other coatings that will destroy or reduce bond.
13. Steel reinforcement in place before grouting.
14. Minimum clear distance between parallel bars: One bar diameter.
15. Hold vertical steel reinforcement in place by centering clips, caging devices, tie wire, or other approved methods, vertically at spacings noted.
16. Support vertical bars near each end and at intermediate intervals not exceeding 192 bar diameters.
17. Reinforcement shall be fully encased by grout or concrete.
18. Splice reinforcement or attach reinforcement to dowels by placing in contact and secured or by placing the reinforcement within 1/5 of the required bar splice length.
19. Stagger splices in adjacent horizontal reinforcing bars. Lap reinforcing bars at splices a minimum of 40 bar diameters.
20. Grout cells of concrete masonry units, containing the reinforcing bars, solid as specified under grouting.
21. Cavity and joint horizontal reinforcement may be placed as the masonry work progresses.

### **3.12 POINTING**

- A. Fill joints with pointing mortar using rubber float trowel to rub mortar solidly into raked joints.
- B. Wipe off excess mortar from joints of glazed masonry units with dry cloth.
- C. Finish exposed joints in finish work with a jointing tool to provide a smooth concave joint unless specified otherwise.

### **3.13 GROUTING**

- A. Preparation:
  1. Clean grout space of mortar droppings before placing grout.
  2. Close cleanouts.
  3. Install vertical solid masonry dams across grout space for full height of wall at intervals of not more than 9000 mm (30 feet). Do not bond dam units into wythes as masonry headers.
  4. Verify reinforcing bars are in cells of units or between wythes as shown.
- B. Placing:
  1. Place grout by hand bucket, concrete hopper, or grout pump.

2. Consolidate each lift of grout after free water has disappeared but before plasticity is lost.
  3. Do not slush with mortar or use mortar with grout.
  4. Interruptions:
    - a. When grouting must be stopped for more than an hour, top off grout 40 mm (1-1/2 inch) below top of last masonry course.
    - b. Grout from dam to dam on high lift method.
    - c. A longitudinal run of masonry may be stopped off only by raking back one-half a masonry unit length in each course and stopping grout 100 mm (4 inches) back of rake on low lift method.
- C. Puddling Method:
1. Double wythe masonry constructed grouted in lifts not to exceed 300 mm (12 inches) or less than 50 mm (2 inches) wide.
  2. Consolidate by puddling with a grout stick during and immediately after placing.
  3. Grout the cores of concrete masonry units containing the reinforcing bars solid as the masonry work progresses.
- D. Low Lift Method:
1. Construct masonry to a height of 1.5 m (5 ft) maximum before grouting.
  2. Grout in one continuous operation and consolidate grout by mechanical vibration and reconsolidate after initial water loss and settlement has occurred.
- E. High Lift Method:
1. Do not pour grout until masonry wall has properly cured a minimum of 4 hours.
  2. Place grout in lifts not exceeding 1.5 m (5 ft).
  3. Exception:

Where the following conditions are met, place grout in lifts not exceeding 3.86 m (12.67 ft).

    - a. The masonry has cured for at least 4 hours.
    - b. The grout slump is maintained between 254 and 279 mm (10 and 11 in).
    - c. No intermediate reinforced bond beams are placed between the top and the bottom of the pour height.
  4. When vibrating succeeding lifts, extend vibrator 300 to 450 mm (12 to 18 inches) into the preceding lift to close any shrinkage cracks or separation from the masonry units.

**3.14 PLACING REINFORCEMENT**

- A. General: Clean reinforcement of loose rust, mill scale, earth, ice or other materials which will reduce bond to mortar or grout. Do not use reinforcement bars with kinks or bends not shown on the Contract Drawings or final shop drawings, or bars with reduced cross-section due to excessive rusting or other causes.
- B. Position reinforcement accurately at the spacing indicated. Support and secure vertical bars against displacement. Horizontal reinforcement may be placed as the masonry work progresses. Where vertical bars are shown in close proximity, provide a clear distance between bars of not less than the nominal bar diameter or 25 mm (1 inch), whichever is greater.
- C. Splice reinforcement bars where shown; do not splice at other places unless accepted by the Resident Engineer. Provide lapped splices, unless otherwise indicated. In splicing vertical bars or attaching to dowels, lap ends, place in contact and wire tie.
- D. Provide not less than minimum lap as indicated on shop drawings, or if not indicated, as required by governing code.
- E. Weld splices where indicated. Comply with the requirements of AWS D1.4 for welding materials and procedures.
- F. Embed metal ties in mortar joints as work progresses, with a minimum mortar cover of 15 mm (5/8 inch) on exterior face of walls and 13 mm (1/2 inch) at other locations.
- G. Embed prefabricated horizontal joint reinforcement as the work progresses, with a minimum cover of 15 mm (5/8 inch) on exterior face of walls and 13 mm (1/2 inch) at other locations. Lap joint reinforcement not less than 150 mm (6 inches) at ends. Use prefabricated "L" and "T" sections to provide continuity at corners and intersections. Cut and bend joint reinforcement as recommended by manufacturer for continuity at returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures and other special conditions.
- H. Anchoring: Anchor reinforced masonry work to supporting structure as indicated.
- I. Anchor reinforced masonry walls to non-reinforced masonry where they intersect.

**3.16 INSTALLATION OF REINFORCED CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY**

- A. Do not wet concrete masonry units (CMU).
- B. Lay CMU units with full-face shell mortar beds. Fill vertical head joints (end joints between units) solidly with mortar from face of unit to a distance behind face equal to not less than the thickness of longitudinal face shells. Solidly bed cross-webs of starting courses in

mortar. Maintain head and bed joint widths shown, or if not shown, provide 10 mm (3/8 inch) joints.

C. Where solid CMU units are shown, lay with full mortar head and bed joints.

D. Walls:

1. Pattern Bond: Lay CMU wall units in 1/2-running bond with vertical joints in each course centered on units in courses above and below, unless otherwise indicated. Bond and interlock each course at corners and intersections. Use special-shaped units where shown, and as required for corners, jambs, sash, control joints, lintels, bond beams and other special conditions.
2. Maintain vertical continuity of core or cell cavities, which are to be reinforced and grouted, to provide minimum clear dimension indicated and to provide minimum clearance and grout coverage for vertical reinforcement bars. Keep cavities free of mortar. Solidly bed webs in mortar where adjacent to reinforced cores or cells.
3. Where horizontal reinforced beams (bond beams) are shown, use special units or modify regular units to allow for placement of continuous horizontal reinforcement bars. Place small mesh expanded metal lath or wire screening in mortar joints under bond beam courses over cores or cells of non-reinforced vertical cells, or provide units with solid bottoms.

F. Grouting:

1. Use "Fine Grout" per ASTM C476 for filling spaces less than 100 mm (4 inches) in one or both horizontal directions.
2. Use "Coarse Grout" per ASTM C476 for filling 100 mm (4 inch) spaces or larger in both horizontal directions.
3. Grouting Technique: At the Contractor's option, use either low-lift or high-lift grouting techniques subject to requirements which follow.

G. Low-Lift Grouting:

1. Provide minimum clear dimension of 50 mm (2 inches) and clear area of 5160 mm<sup>2</sup> (8 square inches) in vertical cores to be grouted.
2. Place vertical reinforcement prior to grouting of CMU. Extend above elevation of maximum pour height as required for splicing. Support in position at vertical intervals not exceeding 192 bar diameters nor 3 m (10 feet).
3. Lay CMU to maximum pour height. Do not exceed 1.5 m (5 foot) height, or if bond beam occurs below 1.5 m (5 foot) height, stop pour 38 mm (1-1/2 in) below top of bond beam.

4. Pour grout using chute container with spout or pump hose. Rod or vibrate grout during placing. Place grout continuously; do not interrupt pouring of grout for more than one hour. Terminate grout pours 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) below top course of pour.
5. Bond Beams: Stop grout in vertical cells 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) below bond beam course. Place horizontal reinforcement in bond beams; lap at corners and intersections as shown. Place grout in bond beam course before filling vertical cores above bond beam.

#### H. High-Lift Grouting:

1. Do not use high-lift grouting technique for grouting of CMU unless minimum cavity dimension and area is 75 mm (3 inches) and 6450 mm<sup>2</sup> (10 square inches), respectively.
2. Provide cleanout holes in first course at all vertical cells which are to be filled with grout.
3. Use units with one face shell removed and provide temporary supports for units above, or use header units with concrete brick supports, or cut openings in one face shell.
4. Construct masonry to full height of maximum grout pour specified, prior to placing grout.
5. Limit grout lifts to a maximum height of 1.5 m (5 feet) and grout pour to a maximum height of 7.3 m (24 feet), for single wythe hollow concrete masonry walls, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Place vertical reinforcement before grouting. Place before or after laying masonry units, as required by job conditions. Tie vertical reinforcement to dowels at base of masonry where shown and thread CMU over or around reinforcement. Support vertical reinforcement at intervals not exceeding 192 bar diameters nor 3 m (10 feet).
7. Where individual bars are placed after laying masonry, place wire loops extending into cells as masonry is laid and loosed before mortar sets. After insertion of reinforcement bar, pull loops and bar to proper position and tie free ends.
8. Where reinforcement is prefabricated into cage units before placing, fabricate units with vertical reinforcement bars and lateral ties of the size and spacing indicated.
9. Place horizontal beam reinforcement as the masonry units are laid.
10. Embed lateral tie reinforcement in mortar joints where indicated. Place as masonry units are laid, at vertical spacing shown.
11. Where lateral ties are shown in contact with vertical reinforcement bars, embed additional lateral tie reinforcement in mortar joints. Place as shown, or if not shown, provide as required to prevent grout



- blowout or rupture of CMU face shells, but provide not less than 4.1 mm diameter (8 gage) wire ties spaced 400 mm (16 inches) o.c. for members with 500 mm (20 inches) or less side dimensions, and 200 mm (8 inches) o.c. for members with side dimensions exceeding 500 mm (20 inches).
12. Preparation of Grout Spaces: Prior to grouting, inspect and clean grout spaces. Remove dust, dirt, mortar droppings, loose pieces of masonry and other foreign materials from grout spaces. Clean reinforcement and adjust to proper position. Clean top surface of structural members supporting masonry to ensure bond. After final cleaning and inspection, close cleanout holes and brace closures to resist grout pressures.
  13. Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained sufficient strength to resist displacement of masonry units and breaking of mortar bond. Install shores and bracing, if required, before starting grouting operations.
  14. Place grout by pumping into grout spaces unless alternate methods are acceptable to the Resident Engineer.
  15. Limit grout pours to sections which can be completed in one working day with not more than one hour interruption of pouring operation. Place grout in lifts which do not exceed 1.5 m (5 feet). Allow not less than 30 minutes, nor more than one hour between lifts of a given pour. Mechanically consolidate each grout lift during pouring operation.
  16. Place grout in lintels or beams over openings in one continuous pour.
  17. Where bond beam occurs more than one course below top of pour, fill bond beam course to within 25 mm (1 inch) of vertically reinforced cavities, during construction of masonry.
  18. When more than one pour is required to complete a given section of masonry, extend reinforcement beyond masonry as required for splicing. Pour grout to within 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) of top course of first pour. After grouted masonry is cured, lay masonry units and place reinforcement for second pour section before grouting. Repeat sequence if more pours are required.

### **3.17 CLEANING AND REPAIR**

#### **A. General:**

1. Clean exposed masonry surfaces on completion.
2. Protect adjoining construction materials and landscaping during cleaning operations.

3. Cut out defective exposed new joints to depth of approximately 19 mm (3/4 inch) and repoint.
4. Remove mortar droppings and other foreign substances from wall surfaces.

C. Concrete Masonry Units:

1. Immediately following setting, brush exposed surfaces free of mortar or other foreign matter.
2. Allow mud to dry before brushing.
3. Prepare schedule of test locations.

**3.18 WATER PENETRATION TESTING**

- A. Seven days before plastering or painting, in the presence of Resident Engineer, test solid exterior masonry walls for water penetration.
- B. Direct water on masonry for a period of one hour at a time when wind velocity is less than five miles per hour.
- C. Should moisture appear on inside of walls tested, make additional tests at other areas as directed by Resident Engineer.
- D. Correct the areas showing moisture on inside of walls, and repeat test at repaired areas, to insure that moisture penetration has been stopped.
- E. Make water test at following locations: As requested by Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 05 12 00**  
**STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

This section specifies structural steel shown and classified by Section 2, Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.

**1.2 RELATED WORK:**

- A. Materials testing and inspection during construction: Section 01 45 29, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Painting: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.
- D. Steel Decking: Section 05 31 00, STEEL DECKING.
- E. Composite Steel Deck: Section 05 36 00, COMPOSITE METAL DECKING.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- A. Fabricator and erector shall maintain a program of quality assurance in conformance with Section 8, Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges. Work shall be fabricated in an AISC certified Category // Conventional Steel Structures // Complex Steel Building Structures // fabrication plant.
- B. Before authorizing the commencement of steel erection, the controlling contractor shall ensure that the steel erector is provided with the written notification required by 29 CFR 1926.752. Provide copy of this notification to the Resident Engineer.

**1.4 TOLERANCES:**

Fabrication tolerances for structural steel shall be held within limits established by ASTM A6, by Section 7, Code of Standard Practice for Buildings and Bridges, and by Standard Mill Practice - General Information (AISC ASD Manual, Ninth Edition, Page 1-145 // LRFD Manual, Second Edition, Page 1-183 //), except as follows:

- A. Elevation tolerance for column splice points at time member is erected is 10 mm (3/8 inch).
- B. Elevation tolerance for top surface of steel beams and girders at connections to columns at time floor is erected is 13 mm (1/2 inch).
- C. Elevation tolerance for closure plates at the building perimeter and at slab openings prior to concrete placement is 6 mm (1/4 inch).

**1.5 DESIGN:**

- A. Connections: Design and detail all connections for each member size, steel grade and connection type to resist the loads and reactions indicated on the drawings or specified herein. Use details consistent

with the details shown on the Drawings, supplementing where necessary. The details shown on the Drawings are conceptual and do not indicate the required weld sizes or number of bolts unless specifically noted. Use rational engineering design and standard practice in detailing, accounting for all loads and eccentricities in both the connection and the members. Promptly notify the Resident Engineer of any location where the connection design criteria is not clearly indicated. The design of all connections is subject to the review and acceptance of the Resident Engineer. Submit structural calculations prepared and sealed by a qualified engineer registered in the state where the project is located. Submit calculations for review before preparation of detail drawings.

//B. Cooling Tower Supports: Unless otherwise shown on the Contract Documents, the design, location, and dimensions of cooling tower supports are based upon a typical installation. Contractor shall furnish and install at no additional cost to the Government, adequate structural supports for equipment furnished for this installation. Design shall be based on loads supplied by the Cooling Tower Manufacturer and must include an allowance for wind and other lateral loads. Submit detailed drawings and design calculations, prepared by a registered Professional Engineer, for approval before members are fabricated. //

#### **1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. AISC: Specification for Structural Steel Buildings - Allowable Stress Design.
- B. AISC: Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.

#### **1.7 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop and Erection Drawings: Complete
- C. Certificates:
  - 1. Structural steel.
  - 2. Steel for all connections.
  - 3. Welding materials.
  - 4. Shop coat primer paint.
- D. Test Reports:
  - 1. Welders' qualifying tests.
- E. Design Calculations and Drawings:
  - 1. Connection calculations, if required.
- //2. Cooling Tower Supports: If not designed on the Structural Drawings//.
- F. Record Surveys.

**1.8 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):
1. Specification for Structural Steel Buildings - Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design (Second Edition, 2005)
  2. 3. Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges (2010).
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
- B18.22.1-65(R2008).....Plain Washers
- B18.22M-81(R2000).....Metric Plain Washers
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A6/A6M-09.....Standard Specification for General Requirements  
for Rolled Structural Steel Bars, Plates,  
Shapes, and Sheet Piling
- A36/A36M-08.....Standard Specification for Carbon Structural  
Steel
- A53/A53M-10.....Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black  
and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless
- A123/A123M-09.....Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip  
Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
- A242/A242M-04(R2009)....Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-  
Alloy Structural Steel
- A283/A283M-03(R2007)....Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate  
Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates
- A307-10.....Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts  
and Studs, 60,000 psi Tensile Strength
- A325-10.....Standard Specification for Structural Bolts,  
Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile  
Strength
- A490-10.....Standard Specification for Heat-Treated Steel  
Structural Bolts 150 ksi Minimum Tensile  
Strength
- A500/A500M-10.....Standard Specification for Cold Formed Welded  
and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in  
Rounds and Shapes
- A501-07.....Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and  
Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing
- A572/A572M-07.....Standard Specification for High-Strength  
Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel

A992/A992M-06.....Standard Specification for Structural Steel  
Shapes

E. American Welding Society (AWS):

D1.1/D1.1M-10.....Structural Welding Code-Steel

F. Research Council on Structural Connections (RCSC) of The Engineering  
Foundation:

Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts

G. Military Specifications (Mil. Spec.):

MIL-P-21035.....Paint, High Zinc Dust Content, Galvanizing,  
Repair

H. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):

29 CFR Part 1926-2001...Safety Standards for Steel Erection

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS:**

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A992 //.

B. Structural Tubing: ASTM A500, Grade B.

C.

E. Bolts, Nuts and Washers:

1. High-strength bolts, including nuts and washers: ASTM // A325 // A490  
//.

2. Bolts and nuts, other than high-strength: ASTM A307, Grade A.

3. Plain washers, other than those in contact with high-strength bolt  
heads and nuts: ANSI Standard B18.22.1.

F. Zinc Coating: ASTM A123.

G. Galvanizing Repair Paint: Mil. Spec. MIL-P-21035.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 CONNECTIONS (SHOP AND FIELD):**

A. Welding: Welding in accordance with AWS D1.1. Welds shall be made only  
by welders and welding operators who have been previously qualified by  
tests as prescribed in AWS D1.1 to perform type of work required.

B. High-Strength Bolts: High-strength bolts tightened to a bolt tension not  
less than proof load given in Specification for Structural Joints Using  
ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts. Tightening done by turn-of-nut method.

### **3.2 FABRICATION:**

Fabrication in accordance with Chapter M, Specification for Steel  
Buildings - Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design

### **3.3 SHOP PAINTING:**

A. General: Shop paint steel with primer in accordance with Section 6, Code  
of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.

B. Shop paint for steel surfaces is specified in Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

C. Do not apply paint to following:

1. Surfaces within 50 mm (2 inches) of joints to be welded in field.
2. Surfaces which will be encased in concrete.
3. Surfaces which will receive sprayed on fireproofing.
4. Top flange of members which will have shear connector studs applied.

//D. Structural steel in the interstitial space that does not receive sprayed on fireproofing shall be painted with primer in accordance with general requirement of shop painting. //

E. Zinc Coated (Hot Dip Galvanized) per ASTM A123 (after fabrication):  
Touch-up after erection: Clean and wire brush any abraded and other spots worn through zinc coating, including threaded portions of bolts and welds and touch-up with galvanizing repair paint.

### **3.4 ERECTION:**

- A. General: Erection in accordance with Section 7, Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.
- B. Temporary Supports: Temporary support of structural steel frames during erection in accordance with Section 7, Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.

### **3.5 FIELD PAINTING:**

- A. After erection, touch-up steel surfaces specified to be shop painted. After welding is completed, clean and prime areas not painted due to field welding.
- B. Finish painting of steel surfaces is specified in Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

### **3.6 SURVEY:**

Upon completion of finish bolting or welding on any part of the work, and prior to start of work by other trades that may be supported, attached, or applied to the structural steel work, submit a certified report of survey to Resident Engineer for approval. Reports shall be prepared by Registered Land Surveyor or Registered Civil Engineer as specified in Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS. Report shall specify that location of structural steel is acceptable for plumbness, level and alignment within specified tolerances specified in the AISC Manual.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 05 31 00**  
**STEEL DECKING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

This section specifies material and services required for installation of steel decking as shown and specified.

**1.2 RELATED WORK:**

- A. Materials testing and inspection during construction: Section 01 45 29, TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES.
- B. Finish Painting: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

**1.3 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. Design steel decking in accordance with AISI publication, "Specification for the Design of Cold-formed Steel Structural Members" except as otherwise shown or specified.
- B. Design all elements with the latest published version of applicable codes.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings: Shop and erection drawings showing decking unit layout, connections to supporting members, and similar information necessary for completing installation as shown and specified, including supplementary framing, sump pans, ridge and valley plates, cant strips, cut openings, special jointing or other accessories. Show welding, side lap, closure, deck reinforcing and closure reinforcing details. Show openings required for work of other trades, including openings not shown on structural drawings. Indicate where temporary shoring is required to satisfy design criteria.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Showing steel decking section properties and specifying structural characteristics.
- D. Certification: For each type and gauge of metal deck supporting concrete slab or fill, furnish certification of the specified fire ratings. Certify that the units supplied are U.L. listed as a "Steel Floor and Form Unit".



**1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A36/A36M-08.....Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
  - A611-97.....Standard Specification for Structural Steel (SS), Sheet, Carbon, Cold-Rolled
  - A653/A653M-08.....Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process
  - C423-08.....Standard Test Method for Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method
- C. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):
- 1. Specification for Structural Steel Buildings - Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design (ninth Edition, 1989)
  - 2. Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings (Latest Edition)
- D. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
- 1. Specification and Commentary for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members
- E. American Welding Society (AWS):
- D1.3-08.....Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel
- F. Factory Mutual (FM Global):
- 1. Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28: Wind Loads to Roof Systems and Roof Deck Securement
  - 2. Factory Mutual Research Approval Guide (2002)
- G. Military Specifications (Mil. Spec.)
- MIL-P-21035B.....Paint, High Zinc Dust Content, Galvanizing Repair

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MATERIALS:**

- A. Steel Decking: ASTM A653, Structural Quality , Grade C, D, or E //.
- B. Galvanizing: ASTM A653, G60.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: Mil. Spec. MIL-P-21035B.
- D. Primer for Shop Painted Sheets: Manufacturer's standard primer (2 coats). When finish painting of steel decking is specified in Section 09

91 00, PAINTING primer coating shall be compatible with specified finish painting.

E. Miscellaneous Steel Shapes: ASTM A36.

F. Welding Electrode: E60XX minimum.

G. Sheet Metal Accessories: ASTM A653, galvanized, unless noted otherwise. Provide accessories of every kind required to complete the installation of metal decking in the system shown. Finish sheet metal items to match deck including, but not limited to, the following items:

1. Metal Cover Plates: For end-abutting deck units, to close gaps at changes in deck direction, columns, walls and openings. Same quality as deck units but not less than 1.3 mm (18 gauge) sheet steel.
2. Continuous Sheet Metal Edging: At openings, concrete slab edges and roof deck edges. Same quality as deck units but not less than 1.3 mm (18 gauge) steel. Side and end closures supporting concrete and their attachment to supporting steel shall be designed by the manufacturer to safely support the wet weight of concrete and construction loads. The deflection of cantilever closures shall be limited to 3 mm (1/8 inch) maximum.
3. Metal Closure Strips: For openings between decking and other construction, of not less than 1.3 mm (18 gauge) sheet steel of the same quality as the deck units. Form to the configuration required to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of flutes and sides of decking.
4. Ridge and Valley Plates: Provide 1.3 mm (18 gauge), minimum 100 mm (4 inch) wide ridge and valley plates where roof slope exceeds 40 mm per meter (1/2 inch per foot).
5. Cant Strips: Provide bent metal 45 degree leg cant strips where indicated on the Drawings. Fabricate cant strips from 1 mm (20 gauge) metal with a minimum 125 mm (5 inch) face width.
6. Seat Angles for Deck: Provide where a beam does not frame into a column.
7. Sump Pans for Roof Drains: Fabricated from single piece of minimum 1.9 mm (14 gauge) galvanized sheet steel with level bottoms and sloping sides to direct water flow to drain, unless otherwise shown. Provide sump pans of adequate size to receive roof drains and with bearing flanges not less than 75 mm (3 inches) wide. Recess pans not less than 38 mm (1 1/2 inches) below roof deck surface, unless otherwise shown or required by deck configuration. Holes for drains will be cut in the field.

**2.2 REQUIREMENTS:**

A. Provide steel decking of the type, depth, gauge, and section properties as shown.

D. Metal Roof Deck: Single pan fluted units with flat horizontal top surfaces utilized to act as a permanent support for all superimposed loads. Comply with the depth and minimum gage requirements as shown on the Contract Documents.

1. Wide Rib (Type B) deck.

5. Finish: Galvanized G-60.

F. Do not use steel deck for hanging supports for any type or kind of building components including suspended ceilings, electrical light fixtures, plumbing, heating, or air conditioning pipes or ducts or electrical conduits.

G. Steel decking units used for interstitial levels shall include an integral system.

1. System to provide a simple point of attachment for light duty hanger devices.
2. System to allow for flexibility for attaching hangers for support of suspended ceilings, electrical, plumbing, heating, or air conditioning items, weight not to exceed 50 kg/m<sup>2</sup> (10 psf).
3. System shall provide for a minimum spacing pattern of 300 mm (12 inches) on centers longitudinally and 600 mm (24 inches) on centers transversely.
4. Maximum load suspended from any hanger is 23 kg (50 pounds).
5. System consisting of fold-down type hanger tabs or lip hanger is acceptable.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 ERECTION:**

A. Do not start installation of metal decking until corresponding steel framework has been plumbed, aligned and completed and until temporary shoring, where required, has been installed. Remove any oil, dirt, paint, ice, water and rust from steel surfaces to which metal decking will be welded.

B. Coordinate and cooperate with structural steel erector in locating decking bundles to prevent overloading of structural members.

- C. Do not use floor deck units for storage or working platforms until permanently secured. Do not overload deck units once placed. Replace any deck units that become damaged after erection and prior to casting concrete at no cost to the Government.
- D. Provide steel decking in sufficient lengths to extend over 3 or more spans, except for interstitial levels.
- E. Place steel decking units at right angles to supporting members. End laps of sheets of roof deck shall be a minimum of 50 mm (2 inches) and shall occur over supports.
- F. Fastening Deck Units:
  - 1. Fasten floor deck units to steel supporting members by not less than 16 mm (5/8 inch) diameter puddle welds or elongated welds of equal strength, spaced not more than 305 mm (12 inches) o.c. with a minimum of two welds per unit at each support. Where two units abut, fasten each unit individually to the supporting steel framework.
  - 2. Tack weld or use self-tapping No. 8 or larger machine screws at 915 mm (3 feet) o.c. for fastening end closures. Only use welds to attach longitudinal end closures.
  - 3. Weld side laps of adjacent floor deck units that span more than 1524 mm (5 feet). Fasten at midspan or 915 mm (3 feet) o.c., whichever is smaller.
  - 4. Fasten roof deck units to steel supporting members by not less than 16 mm (5/8 inch) diameter puddle welds or elongated welds of equal strength, spaced not more than 305 mm (12 inches) o.c. at every support, and at closer spacing where required for lateral force resistance by diaphragm action. Attach split or partial panels to the structure in every valley. In addition, secure deck to each supporting member in ribs where side laps occur. Power driven fasteners may be used in lieu of welding for roof deck if strength equivalent to the welding specified above is provided. Submit test data and design calculations verifying equivalent design strength.
  - 5. Mechanically fasten side laps of adjacent roof deck units with spans greater than 1524 mm (5 feet) between supports, at intervals not exceeding 915 mm (3 feet) o.c., or midspan, whichever is closer, using self-tapping No. 8 or larger machine screws.

7. Uplift Loading: Install and anchor roof deck units to resist gross uplift loading of 2.1 kPa (45 psf) at eave overhang and 1.4 kPa (30 psf) for other roof areas.
8. Weld end laps of corrugated form deck units in valley of side lap and at middle of sheet (maximum spacing of welds is 380 mm (15 inches)).
9. Weld corrugated deck to intermediate supports in an X pattern. Weld in valley of side laps on every other support and in the valley of the center corrugation on the remaining supports (maximum spacing of welds is 760 mm (30 inches)).

G. Cutting and Fitting:

1. Cut all metal deck units to proper length in the shop prior to shipping.
2. Field cutting by the metal deck erector is restricted to bevel cuts, notching to fit around columns and similar items, and cutting openings that are located and dimensioned on the Structural Drawings.
3. Other penetrations shown on the approved metal deck shop drawings but not shown on the Structural Drawings are to be located, cut and reinforced by the trade requiring the opening.
4. Make all cuts neat and trim using a metal saw, drill or punchout device; cutting with torches is expressly prohibited.
5. Do not make any cuts in the metal deck that are not shown on the approved metal deck drawings. If an additional opening not shown on the approved shop drawings is required, submit a sketch, to scale, locating the required new opening and any other openings and supports in the immediate area. Do not cut the opening until the sketch has been reviewed and accepted by the Resident Engineer. Provide any additional reinforcing or framing required for the opening at no cost to the Government. Failure to comply with these requirements is cause for rejection of the work and removal and replacement of the affected metal deck.
6. Reinforcement at Openings: Provide additional metal reinforcement and closure pieces as required for strength, continuity of decking, and support of other work shown.

**3.2 WELDING:**

Welds shall be made only by welders and welding operators who have been previously qualified by tests as prescribed in AWS D1.3.

**3.3 FIELD REPAIR:**

1. Areas scarred during erection.

2. Welds to be thoroughly cleaned and touched-up. Touch-up paint for zinc-coated units shall be zinc rich galvanizing repair paint.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 05 50 00  
METAL FABRICATIONS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies items and assemblies fabricated from structural steel shapes and other materials as shown and specified.
- B. Items specified.
  - 1. Support for Wall and Ceiling Mounted Items: (12, 14A, 14C)
  - 2. Frames: (24E)
  - 3. Guards
  - 4. Covers and Frames for Pits and Trenches.
  - 5. Gratings
  - 6. Loose Lintels
  - 7. Shelf Angles
  - 9. Plate Door Sill
  - 10. Safety Nosings
  - 11. Ladders
  - 12. Railings: (10)

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Railings attached to steel stairs: Section 05 51 00, METAL STAIRS.
- B. Colors, finishes, and textures: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- C. Prime and finish painting: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Each item specified, showing complete detail, location in the project, material and size of components, method of joining various components and assemblies, finish, and location, size and type of anchors.
  - 2. Mark items requiring field assembly for erection identification and furnish erection drawings and instructions.
  - 3. Provide templates and rough-in measurements as required.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificates:
  - 1. Anodized finish as specified.
  - 2. Live load designs as specified.
- D. Design Calculations for specified live loads including dead loads.

- E. Furnish setting drawings and instructions for installation of anchors to be preset into concrete and masonry work, and for the positioning of items having anchors to be built into concrete or masonry construction.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Each manufactured product shall meet, as a minimum, the requirements specified, and shall be a standard commercial product of a manufacturer regularly presently manufacturing items of type specified.
- B. Each product type shall be the same and be made by the same manufacturer.
- C. Assembled product to the greatest extent possible before delivery to the site.
- D. Include additional features, which are not specifically prohibited by this specification, but which are a part of the manufacturer's standard commercial product.

#### **1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):
- B18.6.1-97.....Wood Screws
- B18.2.2-87(R2005).....Square and Hex Nuts
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A36/A36M-08.....Structural Steel
- A47-99(R2009).....Malleable Iron Castings
- A48-03(R2008).....Gray Iron Castings
- A53-10.....Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated  
Welded and Seamless
- A123-09.....Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and  
Steel Products
- A167-99(R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip
- A269-10.....Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel  
Tubing for General Service
- A307-10.....Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile  
Strength
- A312/A312M-09.....Seamless, Welded, and Heavily Cold Worked  
Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes
- A391/A391M-07.....Grade 80 Alloy Steel Chain



- A653/A653M-10.....Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
- A786/A786M-09.....Rolled Steel Floor Plate
- B221-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
- B456-03 (R2009).....Electrodeposited Coatings of Copper Plus Nickel Plus Chromium and Nickel Plus Chromium
- B632-08.....Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate
- C1107-08.....Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
- D3656-07.....Insect Screening and Louver Cloth Woven from Vinyl-Coated Glass Yarns
- F436-10.....Hardened Steel Washers
- F468-10.....Nonferrous Bolts, Hex Cap Screws, and Studs for General Use
- F593-02 (R2008).....Stainless Steel Bolts, Hex Cap Screws, and Studs
- F1667-11.....Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes and Staples
- D. American Welding Society (AWS):
- D1.1-10.....Structural Welding Code Steel
- D1.2-08.....Structural Welding Code Aluminum
- D1.3-08.....Structural Welding Code Sheet Steel
- E. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM)
- AMP 521-01.....Pipe Railing Manual
- AMP 500-06.....Metal Finishes Manual
- MBG 531-09.....Metal Bar Grating Manual
- MBG 532-09.....Heavy Duty Metal Bar Grating Manual
- F. Structural Steel Painting Council (SSPC)/Society of Protective Coatings:
- SP 1-04.....No. 1, Solvent Cleaning
- SP 2-04.....No. 2, Hand Tool Cleaning
- SP 3-04.....No. 3, Power Tool Cleaning
- G. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec):
- RR-T-650E.....Treads, Metallic and Nonmetallic, Nonskid

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 DESIGN CRITERIA**

- A. In addition to the dead loads, design fabrications to support the following live loads unless otherwise specified.
- B. Ladders and Rungs: 120 kg (250 pounds) at any point.
- C. Railings and Handrails: 900 N (200 pounds) in any direction at any point.

- D. Floor Plates, Gratings, Covers, Trap Doors, Catwalks, and Platforms:  
500 kg/m<sup>2</sup> (100 pounds per square foot).
- E. Manhole Covers: 1200 kg/m<sup>2</sup> (250 pounds per square foot).

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A36.
- B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304.
- C. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5 unless otherwise specified.  
For structural shapes use alloy 6061-T6 and alloy 6061-T4511.
- D. Floor Plate:
  - 1. Steel ASTM A786.
  - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B632.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53.
  - 1. Galvanized for exterior locations.
  - 2. Type S, Grade A unless specified otherwise.
  - 3. NPS (inside diameter) as shown.
- F. Cast-Iron: ASTM A48, Class 30, commercial pattern.
- G. Malleable Iron Castings: A47.
- H. Primer Paint: As specified in Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.
- I. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A269, type 302 or 304.
- J. Modular Channel Units:
  - 1. Factory fabricated, channel shaped, cold formed sheet steel shapes, complete with fittings bolts and nuts required for assembly.
  - 2. Form channel within turned pyramid shaped clamping ridges on each side.
  - 3. Provide case hardened steel nuts with serrated grooves in the top edges designed to be inserted in the channel at any point and be given a quarter turn so as to engage the channel clamping ridges. Provide each nut with a spring designed to hold the nut in place.
  - 4. Factory finish channels and parts with oven baked primer when exposed to view. Channels fabricated of ASTM A525, G90 galvanized steel may have primer omitted in concealed locations. Finish screws and nuts with zinc coating.
  - 5. Fabricate snap-in closure plates to fit and close exposed channel openings of not more than 0.3 mm (0.0125 inch) thick stainless steel.
- K. Grout: ASTM C1107, pourable type.
- L. Insect Screening: ASTM D3656.

## 2.3 HARDWARE

- A. Rough Hardware:
  - 1. Furnish rough hardware with a standard plating, applied after punching, forming and assembly of parts; galvanized, cadmium plated,

or zinc-coated by electro-galvanizing process. Galvanized G-90 where specified.

2. Use G90 galvanized coating on ferrous metal for exterior work unless non-ferrous metal or stainless is used.

B. Fasteners:

1. Bolts with Nuts:

- a. ASME B18.2.2.
- b. ASTM A307 for 415 MPa (60,000 psi) tensile strength bolts.
- c. ASTM F468 for nonferrous bolts.
- d. ASTM F593 for stainless steel.

2. Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

3. Washers: ASTM F436, type to suit material and anchorage.

4. Nails: ASTM F1667, Type I, style 6 or 14 for finish work.

## **2.4 FABRICATION GENERAL**

A. Material

1. Use material as specified. Use material of commercial quality and suitable for intended purpose for material that is not named or its standard of quality not specified.
2. Use material free of defects which could affect the appearance or service ability of the finished product.

B. Size:

1. Size and thickness of members as shown.
2. When size and thickness is not specified or shown for an individual part, use size and thickness not less than that used for the same component on similar standard commercial items or in accordance with established shop methods.

C. Connections

1. Except as otherwise specified, connections may be made by welding, riveting or bolting.
2. Field riveting will not be approved.
3. Design size, number and placement of fasteners, to develop a joint strength of not less than the design value.
4. Holes, for rivets and bolts: Accurately punched or drilled and burrs removed.
5. Size and shape welds to develop the full design strength of the parts connected by welds and to transmit imposed stresses without permanent deformation or failure when subject to service loadings.
6. Use Rivets and bolts of material selected to prevent corrosion (electrolysis) at bimetallic contacts. Plated or coated material will not be approved.

7. Use stainless steel connectors for removable members machine screws or bolts.

D. Fasteners and Anchors

1. Use methods for fastening or anchoring metal fabrications to building construction as shown or specified.
2. Where fasteners and anchors are not shown, design the type, size, location and spacing to resist the loads imposed without deformation of the members or causing failure of the anchor or fastener, and suit the sequence of installation.
3. Use material and finish of the fasteners compatible with the kinds of materials which are fastened together and their location in the finished work.
4. Fasteners for securing metal fabrications to new construction only, may be by use of threaded or wedge type inserts or by anchors for welding to the metal fabrication for installation before the concrete is placed or as masonry is laid.
5. Fasteners for securing metal fabrication to existing construction or new construction may be expansion bolts, toggle bolts, power actuated drive pins, welding, self drilling and tapping screws or bolts.

E. Workmanship

1. General:

- a. Fabricate items to design shown.
- b. Furnish members in longest lengths commercially available within the limits shown and specified.
- c. Fabricate straight, true, free from warp and twist, and where applicable square and in same plane.
- d. Provide holes, sinkages and reinforcement shown and required for fasteners and anchorage items.
- e. Provide openings, cut-outs, and tapped holes for attachment and clearances required for work of other trades.
- f. Prepare members for the installation and fitting of hardware.
- g. Cut openings in gratings and floor plates for the passage of ducts, sumps, pipes, conduits and similar items. Provide reinforcement to support cut edges.
- h. Fabricate surfaces and edges free from sharp edges, burrs and projections which may cause injury.

2. Welding:

- a. Weld in accordance with AWS.
- b. Welds shall show good fusion, be free from cracks and porosity and accomplish secure and rigid joints in proper alignment.

- c. Where exposed in the finished work, continuous weld for the full length of the members joined and have depressed areas filled and protruding welds finished smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces.
  - d. Finish welded joints to match finish of adjacent surface.
3. Joining:
- a. Miter or butt members at corners.
  - b. Where frames members are butted at corners, cut leg of frame member perpendicular to surface, as required for clearance.
4. Anchors:
- a. Where metal fabrications are shown to be preset in concrete, weld 32 x 3 mm (1-1/4 by 1/8 inch) steel strap anchors, 150 mm (6 inches) long with 25 mm (one inch) hooked end, to back of member at 600 mm (2 feet) on center, unless otherwise shown.
  - b. Where metal fabrications are shown to be built into masonry use 32 x 3 mm (1-1/4 by 1/8 inch) steel strap anchors, 250 mm (10 inches) long with 50 mm (2 inch) hooked end, welded to back of member at 600 mm (2 feet) on center, unless otherwise shown.
5. Cutting and Fitting:
- a. Accurately cut, machine and fit joints, corners, copes, and miters.
  - b. Fit removable members to be easily removed.
  - c. Design and construct field connections in the most practical place for appearance and ease of installation.
  - d. Fit pieces together as required.
  - e. Fabricate connections for ease of assembly and disassembly without use of special tools.
  - f. Joints firm when assembled.
  - g. Conceal joining, fitting and welding on exposed work as far as practical.
  - h. Do not show rivets and screws prominently on the exposed face.
  - i. The fit of components and the alignment of holes shall eliminate the need to modify component or to use exceptional force in the assembly of item and eliminate the need to use other than common tools.
- F. Finish:
- 1. Finish exposed surfaces in accordance with NAAMM Metal Finishes Manual.
  - 2. Aluminum: NAAMM AMP 501.
    - a. Mill finish, AA-M10, as fabricated, use unless specified otherwise.

- b. Clear anodic coating, AA-C22A41, chemically etched medium matte, with Architectural Class 1, 0.7 mils or thicker.
  - c. Colored anodic coating, AA-C22A42, chemically etched medium matte with Architectural Class 1, 0.7 mils or thicker.
  - d. Painted: AA-C22R10.
3. Steel and Iron: NAAMM AMP 504.
- a. Zinc coated (Galvanized): ASTM A123, G90 unless noted otherwise.
  - b. Surfaces exposed in the finished work:
    - 1) Finish smooth rough surfaces and remove projections.
    - 2) Fill holes, dents and similar voids and depressions with epoxy type patching compound.
  - c. Shop Prime Painting:
    - 1) Surfaces of Ferrous metal:
      - a) Items not specified to have other coatings.
      - b) Galvanized surfaces specified to have prime paint.
      - c) Remove all loose mill scale, rust, and paint, by hand or power tool cleaning as defined in SSPC-SP2 and SP3.
      - d) Clean of oil, grease, soil and other detrimental matter by use of solvents or cleaning compounds as defined in SSPC-SP1.
      - e) After cleaning and finishing apply one coat of primer as specified in Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.
    - 2) Non ferrous metals: Comply with MAAMM-500 series.
4. Stainless Steel: NAAMM AMP-504 Finish No. 4.
5. Chromium Plating: ASTM B456, satin or bright as specified, Service Condition No. SC2.
- G. Protection:
- 1. Insulate aluminum surfaces that will come in contact with concrete, masonry, plaster, or metals other than stainless steel, zinc or white bronze by giving a coat of heavy-bodied alkali resisting bituminous paint or other approved paint in shop.
  - 2. Spot prime all abraded and damaged areas of zinc coating which expose the bare metal, using zinc rich paint on hot-dip zinc coat items and zinc dust primer on all other zinc coated items.

## 2.5 SUPPORTS

- A. General:
- 1. Fabricate ASTM A36 structural steel shapes as shown.
  - 2. Use clip angles or make provisions for welding hangers and braces to overhead construction.
  - 3. Field connections may be welded or bolted.

## C. For Wall Mounted Items:

1. For items supported by metal stud partitions.
2. Steel strip or hat channel minimum of 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick.
3. Steel strip minimum of 150 mm (6 inches) wide, length extending one stud space beyond end of item supported.
4. Steel hat channels where shown. Flange cut and flattened for anchorage to stud.
5. Structural steel tube or channel for grab bar at water closets floor to structure above with clip angles or end plates formed for anchors.
6. Use steel angles for thru wall counters. Drill angle for fasteners at ends and not over 100 mm (4 inches) on center between ends.

## D. For Trapeze Bars:

1. Construct assembly above ceilings as shown and design to support not less than a 340 kg (750 pound) working load at any point.
2. Fabricate trapeze supports as shown, with all exposed members, including screws, nuts, bolts and washers, fabricated of stainless steel.
3. Fabricate concealed components of structural steel shapes unless shown otherwise.
4. Stainless steel ceiling plate drilled for eye bolt.
5. Continuously weld connections where welds shown.
6. Use modular channel where shown with manufacturers bolts and fittings.
  - a. Weld ends of steel angle braces to steel plates and secure to modular channel units as shown. Drill plates for anchor bolts.
  - b. Fabricate eye bolt, special clamp bolt, and plate closure full length of modular channel at ceiling line and secure to modular channel unit with manufacturers standard fittings.

**2.6 FRAMES**

## A. Elevator Entrance Wall Opening.

1. Fabricate of channel shapes, plates, and angles as shown.
2. Weld or bolt head to jamb as shown.
3. Weld clip angles to bottom of frame and top of jamb members extended to structure above for framed construction.
  - a. Provide holes for anchors.
  - b. Weld head to jamb members.

## B. Channel Door Frames:

1. Fabricate of structural steel channels of size shown.
2. Miter and weld frames at corners.

3. Where anchored to masonry or embedded in concrete, weld to back of frame at each jamb, 5 mm (3/16 inch) thick by 44 mm (1-3/4 inch) wide steel strap anchors with ends turned 50 mm (2 inches), and of sufficient length to extend at least 300 mm (12 inches) into wall. Space anchors 600 mm (24 inches) above bottom of frame and 600 mm (24 inches) o.c. to top of jamb. Weld clip angles to bottom of jambs and provide holes for expansion bolts.
  4. Where anchored to concrete or masonry in prepared openings, drill holes at jambs for anchoring with expansion bolts. Weld clip angles to bottom of frame and provide holes for expansion bolt anchors as shown. Drill holes starting 600 mm (24 inches) above bottom of frame and 600 mm (24 inches) o.c. to top of jamb and at top of jamb. Provide pipe spacers at holes welded to channel.
  5. Where closure plates are shown, continuously weld them to the channel flanges.
  6. Weld continuous 19 x 19 x 3 mm (3/4 x 3/4 x 1/8 inch) thick steel angles to the interior side of each channel leg at the head and jambs to form a caulking groove.
  7. Prepare frame for installation of hardware specified in Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
    - a. Cut a slot in the lock jamb to receive the lock bolt.
    - b. Where shown use continuous solid steel bar stops at perimeter of frame, weld or secure with countersunk machine screws at not more than 450 mm (18 inches) on center.
- C. Frames for Breech Opening:
1. Fabricate from steel channels, or combination of steel plates and angles to size and contour shown.
  2. Weld strap anchors on back of frame at not over 600 mm (2 feet) on centers for concrete or masonry openings.

## 2.7 GUARDS

- A. Wall Corner Guards:
1. Fabricate from steel angles and furnish with anchors as shown.
  2. Continuously weld anchor to angle.
- B. Guard Angles for Overhead Doors:
1. Cut away top portion of outstanding leg of angle and extend remaining portion of angle up wall.
  2. Weld filler piece across head of opening to jamb angles.
  3. Make provisions for fasteners and anchorage.
- C. Channel Guard at Loading Platform:
1. Fabricate from steel channel of size shown.



2. Weld anchors to channels as shown.
3. Drill channel for bumper anchor bolts.
- D. Edge Guard Angles for Openings in slabs.
  1. Fabricate from steel angles of sizes and with anchorage shown.
  2. Where size of angle is not shown, provide 50 x 50 x 6 mm (2 x 2 x 1/4 inch) steel angle with 32 x 5 mm (1-1/4 x 3/16 inch) strap anchors, welded to back.
  3. Miter or butt angles at corners and weld.
  4. Use one anchor near end and three feet on centers between end anchors.
- E. Wheel Guards:
  1. Construct wheel guards of not less than 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick cast iron.
  2. Provide corner type, with flanges for bolting to walls.

## **2.8 COVERS AND FRAMES FOR PITS AND TRENCHES**

- A. Fabricate covers to support live loads specified.
- B. Galvanized steel members after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123, G-90 coating.
- C. Steel Covers:
  1. Use 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick floor plate for covers unless otherwise shown. Use gratings where shown as specified in paragraph GRATINGS. Use smooth floor plate unless noted otherwise.
  2. Provide clearance at all sides to permit easy removal of covers.
  3. Make cutouts within 6 mm (1/4 inch) of penetration for passage of pipes and ducts.
  4. Drill covers for flat head countersunk screws.
  5. Make cover sections not to exceed 2.3 m<sup>2</sup> (25 square feet) in area and 90 kg (200 pounds) in weight.
  6. Fabricate trench cover sections not be over 900 mm (3 feet) long and if width of trench is more than 900 mm (3 feet) or over, equip one end of each section with an angle or "T" bar stiffener to support adjoining plate.
  7. Use two, 13 mm (1/2 inch) diameter steel bar flush drop handles for each cover section.
- D. Cast Iron Covers
  1. Fabricate covers to support live loads specified.
  2. Fabricate from ASTM A48, cast-iron, 13 mm (1/2 inch) minimum metal thickness, cast with stiffeners as required.

3. Fabricate as flush type with frame, reasonably watertight and be equipped with flush type lifting rings. Provide seals where watertight covers noted.

4. Make covers in sections not over 90 kg (200 pounds) except round covers.

E. Steel Frames:

1. Form frame from structural steel angles as shown. Where not shown use 63 x 63 x 6 mm (2-1/2 x 2-1/2 x 1/4 inch) angles for frame openings over 1200 mm (4 feet) long and 50 x 50 x 6 mm (2 ix 2 x 1/4 inch) for frame openings less than 1200 mm (4 feet).

2. Fabricate intermediate supporting members from steel "T's" or angles; located to support cover section edges.

3. Where covers are required use steel border bars at frames so that top of cover will be flush with frame and finish floor.

4. Weld steel strap anchors to frame. Space straps not over 600 mm (24 inches) o.c., not shown otherwise between end anchors. Use 6 x 25 x 200 mm (1/4 x 1 x 8 inches) with 50 mm (2 inch) bent ends strap anchors unless shown otherwise.

5. Drill and tap frames for screw anchors where plate covers occur.

F. Cast Iron Frames:

1. Fabricate from ASTM A48 cast iron to shape shown.

2. Provide anchors for embedding in concrete, spaced near ends and not over 600 mm (24 inches) apart.

## 2.9 GRATINGS

A. Fabricate gratings to support live loads specified and a concentrated load as specified.

B. Provide clearance at all sides to permit easy removal of grating.

C. Make cutouts in gratings with 6 mm (1/4 inch) minimum to 25 mm (one inch) maximum clearance for penetrations or passage of pipes and ducts. Edge band cutouts.

D. Fabricate in sections not to exceed 2.3 m<sup>2</sup> (25 square feet) in area and 90 kg (200 pounds) in weight.

E. Fabricate sections of grating with end-banding bars.

F. Fabricate angle frames and supports, including anchorage as shown.

1. Fabricate intermediate supporting members from "T's" or angles.

2. Locate intermediate supports to support grating section edges.

3. Fabricate frame to finish flush with top of grating.

4. Locate anchors at ends and not over 600 mm (24 inches) o.c.

5. Butt or miter, and weld angle frame at corners.

## G. Plank Gratings:

1. Conform to Fed. Spec. RR-G-1602.
2. Manufacturers standard widths, lengths and side channels to meet live load requirements.
3. Galvanize exterior steel gratings ASTM A123, G-90 after fabrication.
4. Fabricate interior steel gratings from galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A525, where bearing on concrete or masonry.
5. Fabricate other interior grating from steel sheet and finish with shop prime paint. Prime painted galvanized sheet may be used.

## H. Cast Iron Gratings:

1. Fabricate gratings to support a live load of 23940 Pa (500 pounds per square foot).
2. Fabricate gratings and frames for gutter type drains from cast-iron conforming to ASTM A48.
3. Fabricate gratings in section not longer than 1200 mm (4 feet) or over 90 kg (200 pounds) and fit so as to be readily removable.

**2.10 LOOSE LINTELS**

- A. Furnish lintels of sizes shown. Where size of lintels is not shown, provide the sizes specified.
- B. Fabricate lintels with not less than 150 mm (6 inch) bearing at each end for nonbearing masonry walls, and 200 mm (8 inch) bearing at each end for bearing walls.
- C. Provide one angle lintel for each 100 mm (4 inches) of masonry thickness as follows except as otherwise specified or shown.
  1. Openings 750 mm to 1800 mm (2-1/2 feet to 6 feet) - 100 x 90 x 8 mm (4 x 3-1/2 x 5/16 inch).
  2. Openings 1800 mm to 3000 mm (6 feet to 10 feet) - 150 x 90 x 9 mm (6 x 3-1/2 x 3/8 inch).
- D. For 150 mm (6 inch) thick masonry openings 750 mm to 3000 mm (2-1/2 feet to 10 feet) use one angle 150 x 90 x 9 mm (6 x 3-1/2 x 3/8 inch).
- E. Provide bearing plates for lintels where shown.
- F. Weld or bolt upstanding legs of double angle lintels together with 19 mm (3/4 inch bolts) spaced at 300 mm (12 inches) on centers.
- G. Insert spreaders at bolt points to separate the angles for insertion of metal windows, louver, and other anchorage.
- H. Where shown or specified, punch upstanding legs of single lintels to suit size and spacing of anchor bolts.
- I. Elevator Entrance:
  1. Fabricate lintel from plate bent to channel shape, and provide a minimum of 100 mm (4 inch) bearing each end.

2. Cut away the front leg of the channel at each end to allow for concealment behind elevator hoistway entrance frame.

#### **2.11 SHELF ANGLES**

- A. Fabricate from steel angles of size shown.
- B. Fabricate angles with horizontal slotted holes for 19 mm (3/4 inch) bolts spaced at not over 900 mm (3 feet) on centers and within 300 mm (12 inches) of ends.
- C. Provide adjustable malleable iron inserts for embedded in concrete framing.

#### **2.12 PLATE DOOR SILL**

- A. Fabricate of checkered plate as detailed.
  1. Aluminum Plate: ASTM B632, 3 mm (0.125 inch) thick.
  2. Steel Plate: ASTM A786, 3 mm (0.125 inch thick), galvanized G90.
- B. Fabricate for anchorage with flat head countersunk bolts at each end and not over 300 mm (12 inches), o.c.

#### **2.13 SAFETY NOSINGS**

- A. Fed. Spec. RR-T-650, Type C.
  1. Aluminum: Class 2, Style 2.
  2. Cast iron: Class 4.
- B. Fabricate nosings for exterior use from cast aluminum, and nosings for interior use from either cast aluminum or cast iron. Use one Class throughout.
- C. Fabricate nosings approximately 100 mm (4 inches) wide with not more than 9 mm (3/8 inch) nose.
- D. Provide nosings with integral type anchors spaced not more than 100 mm (4 inches) from each end and intermediate anchors spaced approximately 375 mm (15 inches) on center.
- E. Fabricate nosings to extend within 100 mm (4 inches) of ends of concrete stair treads except where shown to extend full width.
- F. Fabricate nosings to extend full width between stringers of metal stairs and full width of door openings.
- G. On curved steps fabricate to terminate at point of curvature of steps having short radius curved ends.

#### **2.14 LADDERS**

- A. Steel Ladders:
  1. Fixed-rail type with steel rungs shouldered and headed into and welded to rails.
  2. Fabricate angle brackets of 50 mm (2 inch) wide by 13 mm (1/2 inch) thick steel; brackets spaced maximum of 1200 mm (4 feet) apart and of

length to hold ladder 175 mm (7 inches) from wall to center of rungs. Provide turned ends or clips for anchoring.

3. Provide holes for anchoring with expansion bolts through turned ends and brackets.
4. Where shown, fabricate side rails curved, twisted and formed into a gooseneck.
5. Galvanize exterior ladders after fabrication, ASTM A123, G-90.

B. Aluminum Ladders:

1. Fixed-rail type, constructed of structural aluminum, with mill finish.
2. Fabricate side rails and rungs of size and design shown, with the rungs shouldered and headed into and welded to the rails.
3. Where shown fabrication side rails curved, twisted and formed into gooseneck.
4. Fabricate angle brackets at top and bottom and intermediate brackets where shown. Drill for bolting.

C. Ladder Rungs:

1. Fabricate from 25 mm (one inch) diameter steel bars.
2. Fabricate so that rungs will extend at least 100 mm (4 inches) into wall with ends turned 50 mm (2 inches), project out from wall 175 mm (7 inches), be 400 mm (16 inches) wide and be designed so that foot cannot slide off end.
3. Galvanized after fabrication, ASTM A123, G-90 rungs for exterior use and for access to pits.

## **2.15 RAILINGS**

- A. In addition to the dead load design railing assembly to support live load specified.

B. Fabrication General:

1. Provide continuous welded joints, dressed smooth and flush.
2. Standard flush fittings, designed to be welded, may be used.
3. Exposed threads will not be approved.
4. Form handrail brackets to size and design shown.
5. Exterior Post Anchors.
  - a. Fabricate tube or pipe sleeves with closed ends or plates as shown.
  - b. Where inserts interfere with reinforcing bars, provide flanged fittings welded or threaded to posts for securing to concrete with expansion bolts.
  - c. Provide heavy pattern sliding flange base plate with set screws at base of pipe or tube posts.

## 6. Interior Post Anchors:

- a. Provide flanged fittings for securing fixed posts to floor with expansion bolts, unless shown otherwise.
- b. Weld or thread flanged fitting to posts at base.
- c. For securing removable posts to floor, provide close fitting sleeve insert or inverted flange base plate with stud bolts or rivets concrete anchor welded to the base plate.
- d. Provide sliding flange base plate on posts secured with set screws.
- e. Weld flange base plate to removable posts set in sleeves.

## C. Handrails:

1. Close free ends of rail with flush metal caps welded in place except where flanges for securing to walls with bolts are shown.
2. Make provisions for attaching handrail brackets to wall, posts, and handrail as shown.

## D. Steel Pipe Railings:

1. Fabricate of steel pipe with welded joints.
2. Number and space of rails as shown.
3. Space posts for railings not over 1800 mm (6 feet) on centers between end posts.
4. Form handrail brackets from malleable iron.
5. Fabricate removable sections with posts at end of section.

## 6. Removable Rails:

- a. Provide "U" shape brackets at each end to hold removable rail as shown. Use for top and bottom horizontal rail when rails are joined together with vertical members.
- b. Secure rail to brackets with 9 mm (3/8 inch) stainless steel through bolts and nuts at top rail only when rails joined with vertical members.
- c. Continuously weld brackets to post.
- d. Provide slotted bolt holes in rail bracket.
- e. Weld bolt heads flush with top of rail.
- f. Weld flanged fitting to post where posts are installed in sleeves.

## 7. Opening Guard Rails:

- a. Fabricate rails with flanged fitting at each end to fit between wall opening jambs.
- b. Design flange fittings for fastening with machine screws to steel plate anchored to jambs.
- c. Fabricate rails for floor openings for anchorage in sleeves.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Set work accurately, in alignment and where shown, plumb, level, free of rack and twist, and set parallel or perpendicular as required to line and plane of surface.
- B. Items set into concrete or masonry.
  - 1. Provide temporary bracing for such items until concrete or masonry is set.
  - 2. Place in accordance with setting drawings and instructions.
  - 3. Build strap anchors, into masonry as work progresses.
- C. Set frames of gratings, covers, corner guards, trap doors and similar items flush with finish floor or wall surface and, where applicable, flush with side of opening.
- D. Field weld in accordance with AWS.
  - 1. Design and finish as specified for shop welding.
  - 2. Use continuous weld unless specified otherwise.
- E. Install anchoring devices and fasteners as shown and as necessary for securing metal fabrications to building construction as specified. Power actuated drive pins may be used except for removable items and where members would be deformed or substrate damaged by their use.
- F. Spot prime all abraded and damaged areas of zinc coating as specified and all abraded and damaged areas of shop prime coat with same kind of paint used for shop priming.
- G. Isolate aluminum from dissimilar metals and from contact with concrete and masonry materials as required to prevent electrolysis and corrosion.
- H. Secure escutcheon plate with set screw.

**3.2 INSTALLATION OF SUPPORTS**

- A. Anchorage to structure.
  - 1. Secure angles or channels and clips to overhead structural steel by continuous welding unless bolting is shown.
  - 2. Secure supports to concrete inserts by bolting or continuous welding as shown.
  - 3. Secure supports to mid height of concrete beams when inserts do not exist with expansion bolts and to slabs, with expansion bolts. unless shown otherwise.
  - 4. Secure steel plate or hat channels to studs as detailed.

**3.3 COVERS AND FRAMES FOR PITS AND TRENCHES**

- A. Set frame and cover flush with finish floor.
- B. Secure plates to frame with flat head countersunk screws.

- C. Set gratings loose in drainage trenches or over pits unless shown anchored.

### **3.5 DOOR FRAMES**

- A. Secure clip angles at bottom of frames to concrete slab with expansion bolts as shown.
- B. Level and plumb frame; brace in position required.
- C. At masonry, set frames in walls so anchors are built-in as the work progresses unless shown otherwise.
- D. Set frames in formwork for frames cast into concrete.
- E. Where frames are set in prepared openings, bolt to wall with spacers and expansion bolts.

### **3.6 OTHER FRAMES**

- A. Set frame flush with surface unless shown otherwise.
- B. Anchor frames at ends and not over 450 mm (18 inches) on centers unless shown otherwise.
- C. Set in formwork before concrete is placed.

### **3.7 GUARDS**

- A. Steel Angle Corner Guards:
  - 1. Build into masonry as the work progress.
  - 2. Set into formwork before concrete is placed.
  - 3. Set angles flush with edge of opening and finish floor or wall or as shown.
  - 4. At existing construction fasten angle and filler piece to adjoining construction with 16 mm (5/8 inch) diameter by 75 mm (3 inch) long expansion bolts 450 mm (18 inches) on center.
  - 5. Install Guard Angles at Edges of Stairwell and Overhead Doors where shown.
- B. Channel Guard at Top Edge of Concrete Platforms:
  - 1. Install in formwork before concrete is placed.
  - 2. Set channel flush with top of the platform.
- C. Wheel Guards:
  - 1. Set flanges of wheel guard at least 50 mm (2 inches) into pavement.
  - 2. Anchor to walls as shown, expansion bolt if not shown.

### **3.8 GRATINGS**

- A. Set grating flush with finish floor; top of curb, or areaway wall. Set frame so that horizontal leg of angle frame is flush with face of wall except when frame is installed on face of wall.
- B. Set frame in formwork before concrete is placed.
- C. Where grating terminates at a wall bolt frame to concrete or masonry with expansion bolts unless shown otherwise.



- D. Secure removable supporting members in place with stainless steel bolts.
- E. Bolt gratings to supports.

### **3.9 STEEL LINTELS**

- A. Use lintel sizes and combinations shown or specified.
- B. Install lintels with longest leg upstanding, except for openings in 150 mm (6 inch) masonry walls install lintels with longest leg horizontal.
- C. Install lintels to have not less than 150 mm (6 inch) bearing at each end for nonbearing walls, and 200 mm (8 inch) bearing at each end for bearing walls.

### **3.10 SHELF ANGLES**

- A. Anchor shelf angles with 19 mm (3/4 inch) bolts unless shown otherwise in adjustable malleable iron inserts, set level at elevation shown.
- B. Provide expansion space at end of members.

### **3.11 PLATE DOOR SILL**

- A. Install after roofing base flashing and counter flashing work is completed.
- B. Set in sealant and bolt to curb.

### **3.12 SAFETY NOSINGS**

- A. Except as specified and where preformed rubber treads are shown or specified install safety nosings at the following:
  - 1. Exterior concrete steps.
  - 2. Door sills of areaway entrances curbs.
  - 3. Exposed edges of curbs of door sills at transformer and service rooms.
  - 4. Interior concrete steps, including concrete filled treads of metal stairs of service stairs.
- B. Install flush with horizontal and vertical surfaces.
- C. Install nosing to within 100 mm (4 inches) of ends of concrete stair treads, except where shown to extend full width.
- D. Extend nosings full width of door openings.
- E. Extend nosings, full width between stringers of metal stairs, and terminate at point of curvature of steps having short radius curved ends.

### **3.13 LADDERS**

- A. Anchor ladders to walls and floors with expansion bolts through turned lugs or angle clips or brackets.
- B. In elevator pits, set ladders to clear all elevator equipment where shown on the drawings.
  - 1. Where ladders are interrupted by division beams, anchor ladders to beams by welding, and to floors with expansion bolts.

2. Where ladders are adjacent to division beams, anchor ladders to beams with bent steel plates, and to floor with expansion bolts.

C. Ladder Rungs:

1. Set ladder rungs into formwork before concrete is placed. // Build ladder rungs into masonry as the work progresses. //
2. Set step portion of rung 150 mm (6 inches) from wall.
3. Space rungs approximately 300 mm (12 inches) on centers.
4. Where only one rung is required, locate it 400 mm (16 inches) above the floor.

### **3.14 RAILINGS**

A. Steel Posts:

1. Secure fixed posts to concrete with expansion bolts through flanged fittings except where sleeves are shown with pourable grout.
2. Install sleeves in concrete formwork.
3. Set post in sleeve and pour grout to surface. Apply beveled bead of urethane sealant at perimeter of post or under flange fitting as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS—on exterior posts.
4. Secure removable posts to concrete with either machine screws through flanged fittings which are secured to inverted flanges embedded in and set flush with finished floor, or set posts in close fitting pipe sleeves without grout.
5. Secure sliding flanged fittings to posts at base with set screws.
6. Secure fixed flanged fittings to concrete with expansion bolts.
7. Secure posts to steel with welds.

B. Handrails:

1. Anchor brackets for metal handrails as detailed.
2. Install brackets within 300 mm (12 inches) of return of walls, and at evenly spaced intermediate points not exceeding 1200 mm (4 feet) on centers unless shown otherwise.
3. Expansion bolt to concrete or solid masonry.
4. Toggle bolt to installed supporting frame wall and to hollow masonry unless shown otherwise.

### **3.18 STEEL COMPONENTS FOR MILLWORK ITEMS**

Coordinate and deliver to Millwork fabricator for assembly where millwork items are secured to metal fabrications.

### **3.19 CLEAN AND ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust movable parts including hardware to operate as designed without binding or deformation of the members centered in the opening or frame and, where applicable, contact surfaces fit tight and even without forcing or warping the components.

B. Clean after installation exposed prefinished and plated items and items fabricated from stainless steel, aluminum and copper alloys, as recommended by the metal manufacture and protected from damage until completion of the project.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 05 51 00**  
**METAL STAIRS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Section specifies steel stairs with railings.
- B. Types:
  - 1. Closed riser stairs with concrete filled treads and platforms.
  - 2. Industrial stairs: Closed riser stairs.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Concrete fill for treads and platforms: Section 03 30 00, CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.
- B. Wall handrails and railings for other than steel stairs: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- C. Requirements for shop painting: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show design, fabrication details, installation, connections, material, and size of members.

**1.4 APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by basic designation.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - A36/A36M-08.....Structural Steel
  - A47-99 (R2009).....Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
  - A48-03(R2008).....Gray Iron Castings
  - A53-10.....Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated  
Welded and Seamless
  - A307-10.....Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60000 psi Tensile  
Strength
  - A653/653M-10.....Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc  
Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip  
Process
  - A563-07.....Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts
  - A1008-10.....Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural,  
High-Strength, Low-Alloy
  - A786/A786M-09.....Rolled Steel Floor Plates

- A1011-10.....Steel, Sheet and Strip, Strip, Hot-Rolled  
Carbon, Structural, High-Strength, Low-Alloy
- C. American Welding Society (AWS):
- D1.1-10.....Structural Welding Code-Steel
- D1.3-08.....Structural Welding Code-Sheet Steel
- D. The National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM)  
Manuals:
- Metal Bar Gratings (ANSI/NAAMM MBG 531-09)
- AMP521-01.....Pipe Railing Manual, Including Round Tube
- E. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
- 2001.....Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 DESIGN CRITERIA**

- A. Design stairs to support a live load of 500 kg/m<sup>2</sup> (100 pounds per square foot).
- B. Structural design, fabrication and assembly in accordance with requirements of NAAMM Metal Stairs Manual, except as otherwise specified or shown.
- C. Design Grating treads in accordance with NAAMM Metal Bar Grating Manual.
- D. Design pipe railings in accordance with NAAMM Pipe Railing Manual for 900 N (200 pounds) in any direction at any point.

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53, Standard Weight, zinc coated.
- B. Steel Grating: Metal bar type grating NAAMM BG.
- C. Sheet Steel: ASTM A1008.
- D. Structural Steel: ASTM A36.
- E. Steel Floor Plate: ASTM 786.
- F. Steel Decking: Form from zinc coated steel conforming to ASTM A446, with properties conforming to AISI Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members.
- G. Steel Plate: ASTM A1011.
- H. Iron Castings: ASTM A48, Class 30.
- I. Malleable Iron Castings: ASTM A47.

### **2.3 FABRICATION GENERAL**

- A. Fasteners:
1. Conceal bolts and screws wherever possible.
  2. Use countersunk heads on exposed bolts and screws with ends of bolts and screws dressed flush after nuts are set.
- B. Welding:

1. Structural steel, AWS D1.1 and sheet steel, AWS D1.3.
  2. Where possible, locate welds on unexposed side.
  3. Grind exposed welds smooth and true to contour of welded member.
  4. Remove welding splatter.
- C. Remove sharp edges and burrs.
- D. Fit stringers to head channel and close ends with steel plates welded in place where shown.
- E. Fit face stringer to newel post by tenoning into newel post, or by notching and fitting face stringer to side of newel where shown.
- F. Shop Prime Painting: Prepare surface and apply primer as specified for ferrous metals in Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

## **2.4 RAILINGS**

- A. Fabricate railings, including handrails, from steel pipe with flush.
1. Connections may be standard fittings designed for welding, or coped or mitered pipe with full welds.
  2. Wall handrails are provided under Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- B. Return ends of handrail to wall and close free end.
- C. Provide standard terminal castings where fastened to newel.
- D. Space intermediate posts not over six feet on center between end post.
- E. Fabricate handrail brackets from cast malleable iron.
- F. Provide standard terminal fittings at ends of post and rails.

## **2.5 CLOSED RISER STAIRS**

- A. Provide treads, risers, platforms, railings, stringers, headers and other supporting members.
- B. Fabricate pans for treads and platforms, and risers from sheet steel // Fabricate pans for platforms from steel decking where shown //.
- C. Form risers with sanitary cove.
- D. Fabricate stringers, headers, and other supporting members from structural steel.
- E. Construct newel posts of steel tubing having wall thickness not less than 5 mm (3/16-inch), with forged steel caps and drops.

## **2.6 INDUSTRIAL STAIRS**

- A. Provide treads, platforms, railings, stringers and other supporting members as shown.
- B. Treads and platforms of checkered steel floor plate:

1. Turn floor plate down to form nosing on treads and edge of platform at head of stairs.
  2. Support tread and platforms with angles welded to plate.
  3. Do not leave exposed fasteners on top of treads or platform surfaces.
- C. Treads and platforms of steel grating:
1. Fabricate steel grating treads and platforms in accordance with requirements of NAAMM Metal Bar Grating Manuals.
  2. Provide end banding bars, except where carrier angle are used at tread ends.
  3. Support treads by use of carrier plates or carrier angle. Use carrier plate end banding bars on exterior stairs.
  4. Provide abrasive nosing on treads and edge of platforms at head of stairs.
  5. Provide toe plates on platforms where shown.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 STAIR INSTALLATION**

- A. Provide hangers and struts required to support the loads imposed.
- B. Perform job site welding and bolting as specified for shop fabrication.
- C. Set stairs and other members in position and secure to structure as shown.
- D. Install stairs plumb, level and true to line.
- E. Provide steel closure plate to fill any gap between the stringer and surrounding shaft wall. Weld and finish with prime and paint finish of adjoining steel.

#### **3.2 RAILING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install standard terminal fittings at ends of posts and rails.
- B. Secure brackets, posts and rails to steel by welds, and to masonry or concrete with expansion sleeves and bolts, except secure posts at concrete by setting in sleeves filled with commercial non-shrink grout.
- C. Set rails horizontal or parallel to rake of stairs to within 3 mm in 3650 mm (1/8-inch in 12 feet).
- D. Set posts plumb and aligned to within 3 mm in 3650 mm (1/8-inch in 12 feet).

#### **3.3 FIELD PRIME PAINTING**

- A. When installation is complete, clean field welds and surrounding areas to bright metal, and coat with same primer paint used for shop priming.
- B. Touch-up abraded areas with same primer paint used for shop priming.
- C. Touch up abraded galvanized areas with zinc rich paint as specified in section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 06 10 00  
ROUGH CARPENTRY****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

Section specifies wood blocking, framing, sheathing, furring, nailers, sub-flooring, rough hardware, and light wood construction.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings showing framing connection details, fasteners, connections and dimensions.

**1.4 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:**

- A. Protect lumber and other products from dampness both during and after delivery at site.
- B. Pile lumber in stacks in such manner as to provide air circulation around surfaces of each piece.
- C. Stack plywood and other board products so as to prevent warping.
- D. Locate stacks on well drained areas, supported at least 150 mm (6 inches) above grade and cover with well ventilated sheds having firmly constructed over hanging roof with sufficient end wall to protect lumber from driving rain.

**1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.
- B. American Forest and Paper Association (AFPA):  
National Design Specification for Wood Construction  
NDS-05.....Conventional Wood Frame Construction
- C. American Institute of Timber Construction (AITC):  
A190.1-07.....Structural Glued Laminated Timber
- D. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):  
B18.2.1-96(R2005).....Square and Hex Bolts and Screws  
B18.2.2-87.....Square and Hex Nuts  
B18.6.1-97.....Wood Screws  
B18.6.4-98(R2005).....Thread Forming and Thread Cutting Tapping Screws  
and Metallic Drive Screws
- E. American Plywood Association (APA):  
E30-07.....Engineered Wood Construction Guide
- F. American Society for Testing And Materials (ASTM):



- A47-99(R2009).....Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
- A48-03(R2008).....Gray Iron Castings
- A653/A653M-10.....Steel Sheet Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot Dip Process
- C954-10.....Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Board or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 inch (2.24 mm) to 0.112-inch (2.84 mm) in thickness
- C1002-07.....Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Metal Studs
- D143-09.....Small Clear Specimens of Timber, Method of Testing
- D1760-01.....Pressure Treatment of Timber Products
- D2559-10.....Adhesives for Structural Laminated Wood Products for Use Under Exterior (Wet Use) Exposure Conditions
- D3498-11.....Adhesives for Field-Gluing Plywood to Lumber Framing for Floor Systems
- F844-07.....Washers, Steel, Plain (Flat) Unhardened for General Use
- F1667-08.....Nails, Spikes, and Staples
- G. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
- MM-L-736C.....Lumber; Hardwood
- H. Commercial Item Description (CID):
- A-A-55615.....Shield, Expansion (Wood Screw and Lag Bolt Self Threading Anchors)
- I. Military Specification (Mil. Spec.):
- MIL-L-19140E.....Lumber and Plywood, Fire-Retardant Treated
- J. Truss Plate Institute (TPI):
- TPI-85.....Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses
- K. U.S. Department of Commerce Product Standard (PS)
- PS 1-95.....Construction and Industrial Plywood
- PS 20-05.....American Softwood Lumber Standard

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 LUMBER:**

- A. Unless otherwise specified, each piece of lumber bear grade mark, stamp, or other identifying marks indicating grades of material, and rules or standards under which produced.

1. Identifying marks in accordance with rule or standard under which material is produced, including requirements for qualifications and authority of the inspection organization, usage of authorized identification, and information included in the identification.
  2. Inspection agency for lumber approved by the Board of Review, American Lumber Standards Committee, to grade species used.
- C. Lumber Other Than Structural:
1. Unless otherwise specified, species graded under the grading rules of an inspection agency approved by Board of Review, American Lumber Standards Committee.
  2. Framing lumber: Minimum extreme fiber stress in bending of 1100.
  3. Furring, blocking, nailers and similar items 100 mm (4 inches) and narrower Standard Grade; and, members 150 mm (6 inches) and wider, Number 2 Grade.
- D. Sizes:
1. Conforming to Prod. Std., PS20.
  2. Size references are nominal sizes, unless otherwise specified, actual sizes within manufacturing tolerances allowed by standard under which produced.
- E. Moisture Content:
1. At time of delivery and maintained at the site.
  2. Boards and lumber 50 mm (2 inches) and less in thickness: 19 percent or less.
  3. Lumber over 50 mm (2 inches) thick: 25 percent or less.
- F. Fire Retardant Treatment:
1. Mil Spec. MIL-L-19140 with piece of treated material bearing identification of testing agency and showing performance rating.
  2. Treatment and performance inspection, by an independent and qualified testing agency that establishes performance ratings.
- G. Preservative Treatment:
1. Do not treat Heart Redwood and Western Red Cedar.
  2. Treat wood members and plywood exposed to weather or in contact with plaster, masonry or concrete, including framing of open roofed structures; sills, sole plates, furring, and sleepers that are less than 600 mm (24 inches) from ground; nailers, edge strips, blocking, crickets, curbs, cant, vent strips and other members used in connection with roofing and flashing materials.
  3. Treat other members specified as preservative treated (PT).

4. Preservative treat by the pressure method complying with ASTM D1760, except any process involving the use of Chromated Copper arsenate (CCA) for pressure treating wood is not permitted.

## **2.2 PLYWOOD**

- A. Comply with Prod. Std., PS 1.
- B. Bear the mark of a recognized association or independent inspection agency that maintains continuing control over quality of plywood which identifies compliance by veneer grade, group number, span rating where applicable, and glue type.
- C. Sheathing:
  1. APA rated Exposure 1 or Exterior; panel grade CD or better.
  2. Wall sheathing:
    - a. Minimum 9 mm (11/32 inch) thick with supports 400 mm (16 inches) on center and 12 mm (15/32 inch) thick with supports 600 mm (24 inches) on center unless specified otherwise.
    - b. Minimum 1200 mm (48 inches) wide at corners without corner bracing of framing.

## **2.4 ROUGH HARDWARE AND ADHESIVES:**

- A. Anchor Bolts:
  1. ASME B18.2.1 and ANSI B18.2.2 galvanized, 13 mm (1/2 inch) unless shown otherwise.
  2. Extend at least 200 mm (8 inches) into masonry or concrete with ends bent 50 mm (2 inches).
- B. Miscellaneous Bolts: Expansion Bolts: C1D, A-A-55615; lag bolt, long enough to extend at least 65 mm (2-1/2 inches) into masonry or concrete. Use 13 mm (1/2 inch) bolt unless shown otherwise.
- C. Washers
  1. ASTM F844.
  2. Use zinc or cadmium coated steel or cast iron for washers exposed to weather.
- D. Screws:
  1. Wood to Wood: ANSI B18.6.1 or ASTM C1002.
  2. Wood to Steel: ASTM C954, or ASTM C1002.
- E. Nails:
  1. Size and type best suited for purpose unless noted otherwise. Use aluminum-alloy nails, plated nails, or zinc-coated nails, for nailing wood work exposed to weather and on roof blocking.
  2. ASTM F1667:

- a. Common: Type I, Style 10.
- b. Concrete: Type I, Style 11.
- c. Barbed: Type I, Style 26.
- d. Underlayment: Type I, Style 25.
- e. Masonry: Type I, Style 27.
- f. Use special nails designed for use with ties, strap anchors, framing connectors, joists hangers, and similar items. Nails not less than 32 mm (1-1/4 inches) long, 8d and deformed or annular ring shank.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION OF FRAMING AND MISCELLANEOUS WOOD MEMBERS:**

- A. Conform to applicable requirements of the following:
  - 1. AFPA National Design Specification for Wood Construction for timber connectors.
  - 2. AITC Timber Construction Manual for heavy timber construction.
  - 3. AFPA WCD-number 1, Manual for House Framing for nailing and framing unless specified otherwise.
  - 4. APA for installation of plywood or structural use panels.
  - 5. ASTM F 499 for wood underlayment.
  - 6. TPI for metal plate connected wood trusses.
- B. Fasteners:
  - 2. Bolts:
    - a. Fit bolt heads and nuts bearing on wood with washers.
    - b. Countersink bolt heads flush with the surface of nailers.
    - c. Embed in concrete and solid masonry or use expansion bolts. Special bolts or screws designed for anchor to solid masonry or concrete in drilled holes may be used.
    - d. Use toggle bolts to hollow masonry or sheet metal.
    - e. Use bolts to steel over 2.84 mm (0.112 inch, 11 gage) in thickness. Secure wood nailers to vertical structural steel members with bolts, placed one at ends of nailer and 600 mm (24 inch) intervals between end bolts. Use clips to beam flanges.
  - 3. Drill Screws to steel less than 2.84 mm (0.112 inch) thick.
    - a. ASTM C1002 for steel less than 0.84 mm (0.033 inch) thick.
    - b. ASTM C 954 for steel over 0.84 mm (0.033 inch) thick.
  - 4. Power actuated drive pins may be used where practical to anchor to solid masonry, concrete, or steel.
  - 5. Do not anchor to wood plugs or nailing blocks in masonry or concrete. Use metal plugs, inserts or similar fastening.
  - 6. Screws to Join Wood:

- a. Where shown or option to nails.
  - b. ASTM C1002, sized to provide not less than 25 mm (1 inch) penetration into anchorage member.
  - c. Spaced same as nails.
- E. Blocking Nailers, and Furring:
- 1. Install furring, blocking, nailers, and grounds where shown.
  - 2. Use longest lengths practicable.
  - 3. Use fire retardant treated wood blocking where shown at openings and where shown or specified.
  - 4. Layers of Blocking or Plates:
    - a. Stagger end joints between upper and lower pieces.
    - b. Nail at ends and not over 600 mm (24 inches) between ends.
    - c. Stagger nails from side to side of wood member over 125 mm (5 inches) in width.
- N. Sheathing:
- 1. Use plywood or structural-use panels for sheathing.
  - 2. Lay panels with joints staggered, with edge and ends 3 mm (1/8 inch) apart and nailed over bearings as specified.
  - 3. Set nails not less than 9 mm (3/8 inch) from edges.
  - 4. Install 50 mm by 100 mm (2 inch by 4 inch) blocking spiked between joists, rafters and studs to support edge or end joints of panels.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 12 00**  
**BUILT-UP BITUMINOUS WATERPROOFING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

This section specifies impervious built-up membranes of bituminous materials used for waterproofing.

**1.2 RELATED WORK:**

- A. Reglets: Section 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
- B. Wood Nailers: Section 06 10 00, ROUGH CARPENTRY.
- C. Cement Topping: Section 03 30 00, CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Fiberboard, asphalt primer, felts and fabrics (each type to be used)
- C. Certificates: Indicating materials conform to contract specifications.

**1.4 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:**

- A. Deliver materials to job in manufacturer's original unopened containers with brand name marked thereon.
- B. Before proceeding with work, protect surfaces from excessive changes in temperature and protect piping, conduits and installed equipment and materials.

**1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - C208-08.....Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board
  - D41-11.....Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing, and Waterproofing
  - D43-00 (R2006).....Coal Tar Primer used in Roofing, Dampproofing, and Waterproofing
  - D173-03.....Bitumen-Saturated Cotton Fabrics used in Roofing and Waterproofing
  - D226-09.....Asphalt-Saturated Organic Roofing Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
  - D227-03.....Coal-Tar-Saturated Organic Roofing Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
  - D449-03 (R2009).....Asphalt Used in Dampproofing and Waterproofing

D450-07.....Coal Tar Pitch Used in Roofing, Dampproofing,  
and Waterproofing  
D1327-04.....Bitumen-Saturated Woven Burlap Fabrics Used in  
Roofing and Waterproofing  
D1668-97(R2006).....Glass Fabrics (Woven and Treated) for Roofing  
and Waterproofing  
D2178-04.....Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and  
Waterproofing  
D4022-07.....Coal Tar Roof Cement  
D4586-07.....Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Free

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS:****2.1 BITUMEN:**

- A. Asphalt: ASTM D449, Type I, for exterior work below grade, Type III for work above grade, where asphalt will be exposed to sunlight.
- B. Coal-Tar: ASTM D450, Type II.

**2.2 FELTS AND FABRICS (FOR USE WITH ASPHALT):**

- A. Cotton Fabric Asphalt-Saturated: ASTM D173.
- B. Organic Felt Asphalt-Saturated: ASTM D226, Type I.
- C. Glass Mat (Fabric) Asphalt-impregnated: ASTM D2178, Type IV.

**2.4 PRIMER:**

- A. Use ASTM D41 for asphalt products.

**2.5 FIBERBOARD:**

- ASTM C208, Type V, Class C, 13 mm (1/2-inch) thick.

**2.6 CEMENT:**

- B. ASTM D4586 with asphalt products.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION:****3.1 PREPARATION:**

- A. Do not apply waterproofing when ambient temperature is 4.4°C (40°F) or lower.
- B. Cleaning and Filling:
  - 1. Before applying waterproofing materials, clean surfaces smooth, firm and dry.
  - 2. Remove high spots, depressions, loose and foreign particles; and fill all voids, joints and cracks with Portland cement mortar.
  - 3. Surface shall be approved by Resident Engineer before waterproofing is started.

**3.2 GENERAL:**

- A. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation for waterproofing installed in enclosed spaces.

- B. Compatibility of Materials: Use coal-tar pitch with coal-tar-saturated felts and fabric. Use asphalt with asphalt-saturated felts and fabrics.
- C. Temperature of Bitumen: Heat bitumen to flow freely when applied, but not above 190°C (375°F) for coal-tar, and not above 230°C (450°F) for asphalt.
- D. Rate of Application: Apply primers at the rate of 0.4 L/m<sup>2</sup> (one gallon per 100 square feet) over concrete and parging. Apply coal-tar at the rate of 1.9 kg/m<sup>2</sup> (40 pounds per 100 square feet) and asphalt at the rate of 1.5 kg/m<sup>2</sup> (30 pounds per 100 square feet), for each mopping.
- E. Number of Plies:
  - 1. Membrane waterproofing shall consist of four plies of felt or fabric.
  - 2. Install membrane by lapping each ply approximately three-quarters over the preceding ply.
  - 3. Use appropriate width starting strips of felt or fabric at the starting line to provide four plies at the edge.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Exterior Vertical Surfaces:
  - 1. Start each ply at the bottom, placed vertically, in hot bitumen and complete prior to applying the next ply.
  - 2. Overlap plies downward.
  - 3. Lap each ply 100 mm (4 inches) at the end. Stagger end laps not less than 450 mm (18 inches) in relation to preceding layer.
  - 4. Bitumen shall be applied to exterior vertical surfaces with cotton roller mops or other approved application devices.
  - 5. Waterproofing membranes shall be installed vertically, shingle fashion, in the manner specified herein.
  - 6. The membrane shall extend 50 mm (2 inches) from the outer edge of footing, across the top of the footing, and up foundation wall to approximately 100 mm (4 inches) below the finished grade.
  - 7. Tops of the membranes shall be secured and protected as indicated. Nailing shall be 200 mm (8 inches) on centers on a line 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) below the top of the membranes.
- B. Horizontal Surfaces:
  - 1. Apply waterproofing membranes for floor slabs to a primed, smooth surface base slab.
  - 2. Apply felts shingle fashion in moppings of hot bitumen.



3. Carry membranes up abutting vertical surfaces to the level approximately 150 mm (six inches) above the finish floor unless otherwise shown.
4. Extend felts to intersections with interior surfaces of foundation walls.
5. Where membranes pass over interior footings for load-bearing partitions, they shall be reinforced with two plies of fabric membrane in moppings of hot bitumen applied at the rate specified.
6. The fabric plies shall extend a minimum of 150 mm and 200 mm (6 and 8 inches), respectively, beyond the edges of the footing.
7. After all reinforcing membranes have been installed, the entire surface shall be covered uniformly with hot bitumen applied at the rate specified.

C. Fabric Membrane Reinforcement:

1. Provide fabric membranes to reinforce felts at intersections.
2. Reinforcement shall consist of two plies of fabric membrane cemented in place and to each other with roofing cement not less than 2 mm (1/16 inch) thick for each coating.
3. At the intersection of slabs and vertical surfaces, extend the first ply at least 150 mm (6 inches) on the slab and 100 mm (4 inches) up the vertical surface.
4. At Intersections of two vertical surfaces, extend the first ply at least 250 mm (10 inches) on each side of the intersection.
5. The second ply shall lap the first by not less than 50 mm (two inches).

D. Keyed Joint Footings:

1. Provide an asphaltic-coated 454 g (16-ounce) cold-rolled copper flashing sheet with joints soldered and neatly formed to the contours of keyed joints in foundation wall footings.
2. The flashing sheet shall extend a minimum of 250 mm (10 inches) beyond the inside edge of the footing and shall be bent down 100 mm (4 inches) on the outside of the footing.
3. Protect the flashing sheet until it is lapped by the waterproofing membranes for the subsurface floor slabs and foundation walls.

E. Flashing Flanges:

1. Prime flashing flanges of the sleeves of pipe and ducts penetrating the waterproofing membrane.

2. Allow primer to dry and strip flanges in with two fabric membrane collars cemented in place and to each other with bituminous plastic cement. The collars shall extend 100 mm and 150 mm (four and six inches), respectively, beyond the edge of the flanges, cover the flanges, and fit tight against the sleeve.
3. Waterproofing connecting with work exposed to the weather shall extend back of same, or be counter-flashed to form a watertight connection.

F. Clamping Devices:

At floor drains and elsewhere as indicated, extend membrane into clamping device set in heavy coating of bituminous roof cement and clamp securely.

G. Reglets:

1. Where indicated, install continuous reglets as specified in Section, 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL, to receive the exposed edges of membrane waterproofing.
2. After placement of waterproofing, completely fill reglets with bitumen.

H. Wood Nailers:

1. Where indicated, upper edges of membrane waterproofing shall be nailed to wood nailers and covered with two plies of fabric reinforcement.
2. Wood nailers are specified in Section 06 10 00, ROUGH CARPENTRY.

**3.4 PROTECTIVE COVERING:**

A. Fiberboard Protection of Waterproofing on Walls:

1. Install 13 mm (1/2-inch) thick fiberboard for protection of exterior membrane waterproofing walls and footings below grade.
2. Fiberboard shall extend full height of backfill.
3. Mop a coat of hot pitch or asphalt over membrane sufficient for installation of one piece of fiberboard and embed board therein.
4. Assure overall contact on vertical surfaces by use of a wooden mallet.
5. Repeat the operation in adjoining areas until protection is complete.
6. Adjoining boards shall have edges in moderate contact.
7. After protection boards are in place, mop exposed surfaces with hot pitch or asphalt, and fill joints.

B. Horizontal Surfaces: As soon as the application has thoroughly dried, apply protective cement topping specified under Section 03 30 00, CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

**3.5 INSPECTION:**

Do not cover waterproofed surfaces by other materials or backfill until the work is approved by Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

SECTION 07 19 16  
WATER-REPELLENT COATING**PART 1 - PRODUCTS****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Solvent-based water repellent sealer for exterior above grade horizontal concrete surfaces as scheduled.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
  - 2. Section 03 45 00 - Precast Architectural Concrete.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data sheets and LEED product information for each product.
- B. Submit list of project references as documented in this Specification under Quality Assurance Article. Include contact name and phone number of person charged with oversight of each project.
- C. Quality Control Submittals:
  - 1. Provide protection plan of surrounding areas and non-work surfaces.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company with minimum 15 years of experience in manufacturing of specified products.
  - 2. Applicator Qualifications: Company with minimum of 5 years experience in application of specified products on projects of similar size and scope, and is acceptable to product manufacturer.
    - a. Successful completion of a minimum of 5 projects of similar size and complexity to specified Work.
- B. Field Sample:
  - 1. Install at Project site or pre-selected area of building an area for field sample, as directed by Architect.
    - a. Provide mockup of at least 100 sf (9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) to include surface preparation, sealant joint, and juncture details and allow for evaluation of repellent performance and finish.
    - b. Conduct absorption test on cured field sample. Adjust application until required repellent performance is achieved.
    - c. Apply material in accordance with manufacturer's written application instructions.

2. Manufacturer's representative or designated representative will review technical aspects; surface preparation, application, and workmanship.
3. Field sample will be standard for judging workmanship on remainder of Project.
4. Maintain field sample during construction for workmanship comparison.
5. Do not alter, move, or destroy field sample until Work is completed and approved by Architect.
6. Obtain Architect's written approval of field sample before start of material application, including approval of aesthetics, color, texture, and appearance.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead-time requirements to avoid construction delays.
- B. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- C. Store in unopened containers in clean, dry area between 35 degrees F (2 degrees C) and 110 degrees F (43 degrees C).

#### **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Requirements:
  1. Minimum application temperature is 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) and rising.
  2. Do not apply in rain or when rain is expected within 4 hours. Do not apply above 96 degrees F (35 degrees C) or below 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) or when temperatures are expected to fall below 20 degrees F (minus 7 degrees C) within 12 hours.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Basis of Design Product:
  1. Acceptable Product: MasterProtect H 440HZ (formerly Hydrozo Silane 40 VOC) by BASF Corporation Construction Chemicals.
- B. Subject to compliance with requirements, equivalent products of alternative manufacturers will be considered for approval.
  1. Alternative manufacturers shall comply with minimum levels of material and detailing indicated in Specifications or on Drawings.

**2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Clear, breathable, solvent-based, VOC-compliant, greater than 40 percent alkylalkoxysilane penetrating sealer. Penetrates deeply and chemically reacts with concrete to form long-lasting water-repellent surface.
- B. Sealer shall have the following minimum performance:
  - 1. Active Alkylalkoxysilane Content by Weight: Greater than 40 percent.
  - 2. Penetration, average depth, depending upon substrate: 0.20 inch (5 mm).
  - 3. Surface Appearance After Application: Unchanged.
  - 4. Flash Point, SETA, IPA: 53 degrees F (12 degrees C).
  - 5. Waterproofing after Abrasion, Alberta Transportation and Utilities Type 1B, 225 sf per gal (5.6 m<sup>2</sup>/L): 88.4 percent.
  - 6. Resistance to Chloride:
    - a. Criteria of 1.5 at 1/2 inch: Less than 0.2 lb per cy.
    - b. Criteria of 0.75 at 1 inch: 0.00 lb per cy.
  - 7. Water Weight Gain, NCHRP 244 Series II Cube Test, 200 sf per gal (5 m<sup>2</sup>/L): 86 percent exceeds criteria.
  - 8. Absorbed Chloride, NCHRP 244 Series II Cube Test, 200 sf per gal (5 m<sup>2</sup>/L): 92 percent, exceeds criteria.
  - 9. Absorbed Chloride, NCHRP 244 Series IV Southern Climate, 200 sf per gal (5 m<sup>2</sup>/L): 99 percent, exceeds criteria.
  - 10. Moisture-Vapor Transmission Rate, OHD-L-35: 102 percent.
  - 11. VOC Content:
    - a. Less than 5.01 lbs per gal (600 g/L), less water and exempt solvents.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION**

- A. Protection: Protect plant life and surfaces to remain uncoated during application. Use drop cloths or masking as required.
- B. Prepare surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Verify substrate has properly cured. Surfaces shall be clean and structurally sound. Remove dust, dirt, oil, grease, chemical films, coatings and other contaminants before application.
- D. Do not apply sealer if standing water is visible on surface to be treated.

**3.2 APPLICATION**

- A. Apply sealer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

- B. Stir material thoroughly before and during application.
- C. Apply sealer to saturation.
- D. Apply even distribution of sealer.

**3.3 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect sealer from damage during construction.

END OF SECTION 07 19 16

**SECTION 07 22 00  
ROOF AND DECK INSULATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Roof and deck insulation, and cover board on new construction ready to receive roofing or waterproofing membrane.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. General sustainable design documentation requirements: Section 01 81 13 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS.
- B. Wood cants, blocking, and edge strips: Section 06 10 00, ROUGH CARPENTRY.
- C. Sheet metal components and wind uplift requirements for roof-edge design: Section 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.

**1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only. Editions of applicable publications current on date of issue of bidding documents apply unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ASTM International (ASTM):
- C208-08.....Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board
  - C552-07.....Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
  - C726-05.....Mineral Fiber Roof Insulation Board
  - C728-05.....Perlite Thermal Insulation Board
  - C1177/C1177M-08.....Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing
  - C1278/C1278M-07.....Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Gypsum Panel
  - C1289-10.....Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board
  - C1396/C1396M-09.....Standard Specification for Gypsum Board
  - D41-05.....Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing, and Waterproofing
  - D312-06.....Asphalt Used in Roofing
  - D1970-09.....Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials



- Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection
- D2178-04.....Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
- D2822-05.....Asphalt Roof Cement
- D4586-07.....Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Free
- E84-09.....Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Material
- F1667-05.....Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes, and Staples
- C. FM Approvals: RoofNav Approved Roofing Assemblies and Products.
- 4450-89.....Approved Standard for Class 1 Insulated Steel Deck Roofs
- 4470-10.....Approved Standard for Class 1 Roof Coverings
- 1-28-09.....Loss Prevention Data Sheet: Design Wind Loads.
- 1-29-09.....Loss Prevention Data Sheet: Above-Deck Roof Components
- 1-49-09.....Loss Prevention Data Sheet: Perimeter Flashing
- D. National Roofing Contractors Association: Roofing and Waterproofing Manual
- E. U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA): USDA BioPreferred Catalog, [www.biopreferred.gov](http://www.biopreferred.gov)
- F. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL): Fire Resistance Directory (2009)
- G. U.S. Department of Commerce National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST):
- DOC PS 1-09.....U.S. Product Standard for Construction and Industrial Plywood
- DOC PS 2-04.....Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-Use Panels.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- B. FM Approvals: Provide roof insulation complying with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and 4470 as part of specified roofing system, listed in FM Approvals "RoofNav" as part of roofing system meeting Fire/Windstorm Classification in Division 07 roofing section.

**1.5 QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Requirements of Division 07 roofing section for qualifications of roofing system insulation Installer; Work of this Section shall be performed by same Installer.
- B. Requirements of Division 07 roofing section for inspection of Work of this Section and qualifications of Inspector.
- C. Unless specified otherwise, comply with the recommendations of the NRCA "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" applicable to insulation for storage, handling, and application.
- D. Requirements of roofing system uplift pressure design for specified roofing system.
- E. Requirements of applicable FM Approval for specified roofing system insulation attachment.
- F. Requirements of applicable Miami-Dade County approval for high-wind zone design.

**1.6 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Product Data:
  - 1. Asphalt and adhesive materials, each type.
  - 2. Roofing cement, each type.
  - 3. Roof insulation, each type.
  - 4. Substrate board, each type.
  - 5. Cover board, each type.
  - 6. Fastening requirements.
  - 7. Insulation span data for flutes of metal decks.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, sections, details, and attachments.
  - 1. Nailers, cants, and terminations.
  - 2. Layout of insulation showing slopes, tapers, penetration, and edge conditions.
- D. Samples:
  - 1. Roof insulation, each type.
  - 2. Nails and fasteners, each type.
- E. Certificates:
  - 1. Indicating type, thermal conductance, and minimum and average thickness of insulation.

2. Indicating materials and method of application of insulation system meet the requirements of FM Approvals for specified roofing system.
- F. Laboratory Test Reports: Thermal values of insulation products.
- G. Layout of tapered roof system showing units required.
- H. Documentation of supervisors' and inspectors' qualifications.

#### **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND MARKING**

- A. Comply with the recommendations of the NRCA "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" applicable to built-up roofing for storage, handling and installation requirements.

#### **1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- A. Roof insulation on combustible or steel decks shall have a flame spread rating not greater than 75 and a smoke developed rating not greater than 150, exclusive of covering, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, or shall have successfully passed FM Approvals 4450.
  1. Insulation bearing the UL label and listed in the UL Building Materials Directory as meeting the flame spread and smoke developed ratings will be accepted in-lieu-of copies of test reports.
  2. Compliance with flame spread and smoke developed ratings will not be required when insulation has been tested as part of a roof construction assembly of the particular type used for this project and the construction is listed as fire-classified in the UL Building Materials Directory or listed as Class I roof deck construction in the FM Approvals "RoofNav."
  3. Insulation tested as part of a roof construction assembly shall bear UL or FM labels attesting to the ratings specified herein.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 ADHESIVE MATERIALS**

- A. Adhesive Materials, General: Adhesive and sealant materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use, identical to materials utilized in approved listed roofing system, and compatible with roofing membrane.
  1. Liquid-type adhesive materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):

- a. Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
  - b. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
  - c. Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
  - d. Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
  - e. Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
  - f. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
  - g. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
  - h. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- B. Primer: ASTM D41.
- C. Asphalt: ASTM D312, Type III or IV for vapor retarders and insulation.
- D. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
- E. Bead-Applied Urethane Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multi-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
- F. Full-Spread Applied Urethane Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
- G. Roof Cement: Asbestos free, ASTM D2822, Type I or Type II, ; or, D4586, Type I or Type II.

## 2.2 ROOF AND DECK INSULATION

- A. Roof and Deck Insulation, General: Preformed roof insulation boards approved by roofing manufacturer and listed as component of FM Approvals-approved roofing system.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
- C. Cellular Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C552, Type IV, kraft-paper sheet faced.
- D. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C728, expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
- E. Cellulosic Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C208, Type II, Grade 2 for single-ply roofing.
- F. Tapered Roof Insulation System:

1. Fabricate of mineral fiberboard, polyisocyanurate, perlite board, or cellular glass. Use only one insulation material for tapered sections. Use only factory-tapered insulation.
  2. Cut to provide high and low points with crickets and slopes as shown.
  3. Minimum thickness of tapered sections; 38 mm (1-1/2 inch).
  4. Minimum slope 1:48 (1/4 inch per 12 inches).
- G. Composite Nail Base Insulated Roof Sheathing:
1. Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing: polyisocyanurate thermal insulation ASTM C1289, Type V, insulation thickness as indicated, with oriented strand board laminated to top surface.
  2. Oriented Strand Board: NBS DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, 11 mm (7/16 inch).
  3. Bottom surface faced with felt facers.

### 2.3 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Glass (Felt): ASTM D2178, Type VI, heavy duty ply sheet.
- B. Cants and Tapered Edge Strips:
1. Wood Cant Strips: Refer to Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
  2. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
  3. Tapered Edge Strips: 1:12 (one inch per foot), from 0 mm (0 inches), 300 mm to 450 mm (12 inches to 18 inches) wide.
    - a. Cellulosic Fiberboard: ASTM C208.
    - b. Mineral Fiberboard: ASTM C726.
    - c. Perlite Board: ASTM C728.
- C. Vapor Retarder:
1. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.
  2. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D1970, minimum of 1.0-mm- (40-mil-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive, or 0.76- to 1.0-mm- (30- to 40-mil-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m (0.1 perm).
- D. Substrate Board:
1. Type X gypsum board, ASTM C1396/C1396M, 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick.
  2. Glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, ASTM C1177/C1177M, 1/2 inch thick, factory primed.

3. Cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, ASTM C1278/C1278M 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick.

4. Perlite Board Insulation, ASTM C728, //(19 mm (3/4 inch)// //25 mm (1 inch)//.

E. Cover Board:

1. Glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, ASTM C1177/C1177M, 16 mm (5/8 inch) thick, factory primed.

## **2.4 FASTENERS**

A. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

B. Staples and Nails: ASTM F1667. Type as designated for item anchored and for substrate.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

A. Comply with requirements of Division 07 roofing section.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

A. Comply with requirements of Division 07 roofing section.

### **3.3 SUBSTRATE BOARD INSTALLATION**

A. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressures according to roofing system manufacturers instructions and requirements of FM Approvals listing for specified roofing system.

### **3.4 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION**

A. General:

1. Install continuous vapor retarder on roof decks where indicated.

2. At vertical surfaces, turn up vapor retarder to top of insulation or base flashing.

3. At all pipes, walls, and similar penetrations through vapor retarder, seal openings with roof cement to prevent moisture entry from below.

4. Seal penetrations with roof cement.

B. Cast in Place Concrete Decks, Except Insulating Concrete:

1. Prime deck as specified.

2. Apply two plies of asphalt saturated felt mopped down to deck.

C. Precast Concrete Unit Decks Without Concrete Topping:

1. Prime deck as specified.
2. Apply two plies of asphalt saturated felt.
3. Mop to deck, keeping bitumen 100 mm (four inches) away from joints of precast units. Bridge joints with felt. Mop between plies as specified.

D. Steel Deck:

1. Material and method of application of roofing systems used on metal decks shall meet the requirements of FM Approvals for Class I-A Insulated Steel Roof Deck.
2. Attach substrate board and subsequent components to meet the requirements of FM Approval's "RoofNav" listing for specified system meeting Fire/Windstorm Classification indicated in Division 07 roofing section.
3. Locate the long dimension edge joints to have solid bearing on top of decking ribs; do not cantilever over rib openings or flutes.

### 3.5 RIGID INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation, General:

1. Install roof insulation in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install roof insulation in accordance with requirements of FM Approval's Listing for specified roofing system.
3. Base Sheet: Where required by roofing system, install one lapped base sheet specified in Division 07 roofing section by mechanically fastening to roofing substrate prior to installation of insulation.
4. Cant Strips: Install wood cant strips specified in Division 06 Section ROUGH CARPENTRY at junctures of roofing system with vertical construction.

B. Insulation Thickness:

1. Thickness of roof insulation shown on drawings is nominal.
2. Insulation on Metal Decks: Provide minimum thickness of insulation for metal decks recommended by the insulation manufacturer to span rib opening (flute size) of metal deck used. Support edges of insulation on metal deck ribs.
3. When thickness of insulation to be used is more or less than that shown on the drawings, make adjustments in the alignment and location of roof drains, flashing, gravel stops, fascias and similar items at no additional cost to the Government.

4. Where tapered insulation is used, the thickness of the insulation at high points and roof edges shall be as shown on the drawings; the thickness at the low point (drains) shall be not less than 38 mm (1-1/2 inches).
5. Use not less than two layers of insulation when insulation is 68 mm (2.7 inch) or more in thickness unless specified otherwise. Stagger joints minimum 150 mm (6 inches).
- C. Lay insulating units with close joints, in regular courses and with cross joints broken. When laid in more than one layer, break joints of succeeding layers of roof insulation with those in preceding layer.
- D. Lay units with long dimension perpendicular to the rolled (longitudinal) direction of the roofing felt.
- E. Seal all cut edges at penetrations and at edges against blocking with bitumen or roof cement.
- F. Cut to fit tight against blocking or penetrations.
- G. Cover all insulation installed on the same day; comply with temporary protection requirements of Division 07 roofing section.
- H. Installation Method:
  1. Adhered Insulation:
    - a. Prime substrate as required.
    - b. Set each layer of insulation firmly in solid mopping of hot asphalt.
    - c. Set each layer of insulation firmly in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive.
    - d. Set each layer of insulation firmly in uniform application of full-spread insulation adhesive.
  2. Mechanically Fastened Insulation:
    - a. Fasten insulation in accordance with FM Approval's "RoofNav" requirement in Division 07 roofing section.
    - b. Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressures specified in Division 07 roofing section.
  3. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation:
    - a. Fasten first layer of insulation according to "Mechanically Fastened Insulation" requirements.
    - b. Fasten each subsequent layer of insulation according to "Adhered Insulation" requirements.



4. Cover Board: Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with staggered end joints. Offset cover board joints from insulation joints minimum 150 mm (6 inches). Fasten cover boards according to "Mechanically Fastened Insulation" requirements.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 40 00  
ROOFING AND SIDING PANELS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies perforated metal wall screen panels as shown.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Sealant: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- B. Color and texture of finish: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**1.3 MANUFACTURER'S QUALIFICATIONS**

Metal wall panels shall be products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the fabrication and erection of metal panels of the type and design shown and specified.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Samples: Metal panel, 150 mm (six inch) square, showing finish, each color and texture.
- C. Shop Drawings: Wall and roof panels, showing details of construction and installation. Collateral steel framing thickness and kind of material, closures, flashing, fastenings and related components and accessories.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Wall and roof panels
- E. Fire Test Report: Report of fire test by recognized testing laboratory for fire rating specified, showing details of construction.

**1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extend referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - A653/A653M-10 ..... Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized), or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
  - A463-10 ..... Steel Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Aluminum-Coated, by the Hot-Dip Process
  - A924/A924M-10 ..... Steel Sheet, Metallic Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
  - A1008/A1008M-10 ..... Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High Strength Low Alloy
  - B209/209M-07 ..... Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate

C1396-11 .....	Standard Specification for Gypsum Board
C553-08 .....	Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications
C591-09 .....	Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation
C612-10 .....	Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation
E119-10 .....	Fire Test of Building Construction and Materials

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SHEET STEEL**

- A. Minimum 0.8mm thick for wall and roof panels.
- B. Steel, Sheet, Galvanized: ASTM A653/A653M, Structural.
  - 1. Grade 40, galvanized coating conforming to ASTM A924/A924M, Class Z 275 G-90.
- C. Steel, Sheet, Commercial: ASTM A1008, Type C.
- D. Steel, Sheet, Aluminized: ASTM A463. Steel shall be coated on both sides with 0.5 ounce of aluminum per square foot (0.15 Kg/sm ).

### **2.2 ALUMINUM PLATE AND SHEET**

ASTM B209/209M

### **2.3 FASTENERS**

Fasteners of size, type and holding strength as recommended by manufacturer.

### **2.6 FABRICATION**

- B. Uninsulated metal wall panels shall be single sheets, of approximate overall depth and configuration shown on drawings. Connection between panels shall be by interlocking joints filled with sealing compound as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS. Furnish wall panels in one continuous length for full height or at least one story height with no horizontal joints, except at openings.. Construct panels as follows:
  - 1. Wall panels:
    - a. 1.0 mm (0.040 inch) thick aluminum.
    - c. 0.9 mm (0.0359 inch) thick uncoated steel.
  - 3. Accessories and flashing shall be the same material as the panels. Thickness and installation of accessories and flashing shall be as recommended by the panel manufacturer.

**2.7 FINISH**

- A. For uninsulated wall panels , the finishes shall be as follows for aluminum face sheets:
1. AA-R1X finish Fluoropolymer enamel finish, consisting of a chemical pre-treatment of the base aluminum; then applying a primer coat of 0.1 to 0.4 mil dry film thickness; a polyvinylidene fluoride resin finish coat of 0.8 mil minimum dry film thickness on one side, and a wash coat of 0.3 to 0.4 mil minimum dry film thickness applied to reverse side.
  5. AA-M10C22A41 finish- (Unspecified) as fabricated, chemically etched medium matte finish, clear anodized 0.7 mil thick.
- B. For steel face sheets, the finishes shall be as follows:
1. Stainless Steel finish per manufacturer.
- C. Finish numbers for aluminum specified herein are in accordance with The Aluminum Association's Designation System. Each aluminum finish number preceded by letters AA identifies it as an Aluminum Association designation.
- D. Aluminum alloy used for color coating shall be as required to produce specified color. Color shall be as specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES. Color for sheet aluminum shall not deviate more than the colors of extrusion samples.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install panels in accordance with the manufacturer's approved erection instructions and diagrams, except as specified otherwise. Panels shall be in full and firm contact with supports and with each other at side and end laps. Where panels are cut in the field, or where any of the factory applied coverings or coatings are abraded or damaged in handling or installation, they shall, after the necessary repairs have been made with material of the same type and color as the weather coating, be approved before being installed. All cut ends and edges, including those at openings through the sheets shall be sealed completely. Correct defects or errors in the materials in an approved manner. Replace materials which cannot be corrected in an approved manner with nondefective material. Provide molded closure strips where indicated and whenever sheets terminate with open ends after installation.
- B. Wall Panels: Apply panels with the configuration in a vertical position. Provide panels in the longest obtainable lengths, with end laps occurring only at structural members /Seal side and end laps with

joint sealing material. Flash and seal walls at the base, at the top, around windows, door frames, framed louvers, and other similar openings. Install closure strips, flashings, and sealing material in an approved manner that will assure complete weather tightness. Flashing will not be required where approved "self-flashing" panels are used.

- D. Flashing: All flashing and related closures and accessories in connection with the preformed metal panels shall be provided as indicated and as necessary to provide a watertight installation. Details of installation, which are not indicated, shall be in accordance with the panel manufacturer's printed instruction and details, or the approved shop drawings. Installation shall allow for expansion and contraction of flashing.
- E. Fasteners: Fastener spacings shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as necessary to withstand the design loads indicated. Install fasteners in valleys or crowns as recommended by the manufacturer of the sheet being used. Install fasteners in straight lines within a tolerance of 13 mm (1/2-inch) in the length of a bay. Drive exposed penetrating type fasteners normal to the surface, and to a uniform depth to seat gasketed washers properly, and drive so as not to damage factory applied coating. Exercise extreme care in drilling pilot holes for fastenings to keep drills perpendicular and centered in valleys, or crowns, as applicable. After drilling, remove metal filings and burrs from holes prior to installing fasteners and washers. Torque used in applying fasteners shall not exceed that recommended by the manufacturer. Remove panels deformed or otherwise damaged by over-torqued fastenings, and provide new panels. Remove metal shavings and filings from roofs on completion to prevent rusting and discoloration of the panels.

### **3.2 ISOLATION OF ALUMINUM**

- A. Isolate aluminum in contact with or fastened to dissimilar metals other than stainless steel, white bronze, or other metal compatible with aluminum by one of the following:
1. Painting the dissimilar metal with a prime coat of Zinc-Molybdate followed by two coats of aluminum paint.
  2. Placing a non-abrasive tape or gasket between the aluminum and the dissimilar metal.
- B. Paint aluminum in contact with or built into mortar, concrete, plaster, or other masonry materials with a coat of alkali-resistant bituminous paint.

- C. Paint aluminum in contact with wood or other absorptive materials, that may become repeatedly wet, with two coats of bituminous paint, or two coats of aluminum paint. Seal joints with caulking material.

### **3.3 PROTECTION AND CLEANING**

- A. Protect panels and other components from damage during and after erection, and until project is accepted by the Government.
- B. After completion of work, all exposed finished surfaces of panels shall be cleaned of soil, discoloration and disfiguration. Touch-up abraded surfaces of panels.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 53 23**  
**ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-MONOMER ROOFING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer (EPDM) sheet roofing mechanically fastened to roof deck.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Treated wood framing, blocking, and nailers: Section 06 10 00, ROUGH CARPENTRY.
- B. Roof Insulation: Section 07 22 00, ROOF AND DECK INSULATION.
- C. Metal cap flashings, copings, fascias, and expansion joints: Section 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Approved applicator by the membrane roofing system manufacturer, and certified by the manufacturer as having the necessary expertise to install the specific system.
- B. Pre-Roofing Meeting:
1. Upon completion of roof deck installation and prior to any roofing application, hold a pre-roofing meeting arranged by the Contractor and attended by the Roofing Inspector, Material Manufacturers Technical Representative, Roofing Applicator, Contractor, and Resident Engineer,
  2. Discuss specific expectations and responsibilities, construction procedures, specification requirements, application, environmental conditions, job and surface readiness, material storage, and protection.
  3. Inspect roof deck at this time to:
    - a. Verify that work of other trades which penetrates roof deck is completed.
    - b. Determine adequacy of deck anchorage, presence of foreign material, moisture and unlevel surfaces, or other conditions that would prevent application of roofing system from commencing or cause a roof failure.
    - c. Examine samples and installation instructions of manufacturer.
    - d. Perform pull out test of fasteners (See paragraph 3.2).

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Applicators approval certification by manufacturer.
- C. Shop Drawings:

1. Sheet membrane layout.
  2. Fastener pattern, layout, and spacing requirements.
  3. Termination details.
- D. Manufacturers installation instructions revised for project.
- E. Samples:
1. Sheet membrane: One 150 mm (6 inch) square piece.
  2. Sheet flashing: One 150 mm (6 inch) square piece.
  3. Fasteners: Two, each type.
  4. Welded seam: Two 300 mm (12 inch) square samples of welded seams to represent quality of field welded seams.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver, store, and handle materials as specified by manufacturer.
- B. Store volatile materials separate from other materials with separation to prevent fire from damaging the work, or other materials.

#### **1.6 WARRANTY**

Roofing work subject to the terms of the Article "Warranty of Construction", FAR clause 52.246-21, except extend the warranty period to five years.

#### **1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A167-99(R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip
  - B209-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
  - D751-06.....Coated Fabrics
  - D2103-10.....Polyethylene Film and Sheeting
  - D2240-05(R2010).....Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness
  - D3884-09.....Abrasive Resistance of Textile Fabrics (Rotary Platform, Double-Head Method)
  - D4637-10.....EPDM Sheet Used in Single-Ply Roof Membrane
  - D4586-07.....Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Free
  - E96-10.....Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
  - E108-10.....Fire Tests of Roof Coverings
  - G21-09.....Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi
- C. National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA):
- Fifth Edition - 05.....The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual.
- D. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.)
- FF-S-107C(2).....Screws, Tapping and Drive



FF-S-111D(1).....Screw, Wood

UU-B-790A.....Building Paper, Vegetable Fiber (Kraft,  
Waterproofed, Water Repellent and Fire  
Resistant)E. Factory Mutual Engineering and Research Corporation (FM):  
Annual Issue.....Approval Guide Building MaterialsF. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc (UL):  
Annual Issue.....Building Materials Directory  
Annual Issue.....Fire Resistance DirectoryG. Warnock Hersey (WH):  
Annual Issue.....Certification Listings**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 EPDM SHEET ROOFING**

A. Conform to ASTM D4637, Type I, Grade 1, white color .

B. Additional Properties:

PROPERTY	TEST METHOD	REQUIREMENT
Shore A Hardness	ASTM D2240	55 to 75 Durometer
Water Vapor Permeance	ASTM E96	Minimum 0.14 perms Water Method
Fungi Resistance	ASTM G21	After 21 days, no sustained growth or discoloration.
Fire Resistance	ASTM E108 Class A	No Combustion Beyond Flame/Heat Source

C. Thickness:

2. Use 1.5 mm (0.060-inch) thick sheet for mechanically anchored system.

D. Pipe Boots:

1. Molded EPDM designed for flashing of round penetrations, 200 mm (8  
inch) minimum height.

2. Color same as roof membrane.

**2.2 EPDM FLASHING SHEET**A. Conform to ASTM D4637, Type I, Grade 1, Class U, unreinforced, color,  
same as roof membrane modified as specified for flashing.

B. Self curing EPDM flashing, adaptable to irregular shapes and surfaces.

C. Minimum thickness 1.5 mm (0.060-inch).

**2.3 MISCELLANEOUS ROOFING MEMBRANE MATERIALS**

A. Sheet roofing manufacturers specified products.

B. Splice Adhesive: For roofing and flashing sheet.

C. Lap Sealant: Liquid EPDM rubber for roofing sheet exposed lap edge.

- D. Bonding Adhesives: Neoprene, compatible with roofing membrane, flashing membrane, insulation, metals, concrete, and masonry for bonding roofing and flashing sheet to substrate.
- E. Fastener Sealer: One part elastomeric adhesive sealant.
- F. Temporary Closure Sealers (Night Sealant): Polyurethane two part sealer.
- G. Primers, Splice Tapes, Cleaners, and Butyl Rubber Seals: As specified by roof membrane manufacturer.
- H. Asphalt Roof Cement: ASTM D4586.

## **2.4 FASTENERS**

- A. Fasteners and washers required for securing sheet roofing to deck:
  - 1. Steel stress plate washers as required by sheet roofing manufacturer:
    - a. Coated against corrosion.
    - b. Separate or attached to fastener.
    - c. Approximately 50 mm (2 inch) diameter or 40 mm x 65 mm (1-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches) rectangular plate with rounded corners, minimum thickness 0.6 mm (0.023-inch).
  - 2. Fastening strip or batten strip for securing roof membrane to deck:
    - a. Stainless steel strip: ASTM A167 type 302 or 304, minimum 0.5 mm (0.018-inch) thick.
    - b. Aluminum strip: ASTM B209, minimum 2.4 mm (0.094-inch) thick.
    - c. Rounded corners on strips.
    - d. Form strips 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) wide, 3000 mm (10 feet) maximum length with 6 mm x 10 mm (1/4 by 3/8 inch) punched slotted holes at 100 mm (4 inch) centers; centered on width of strip. Punch holes 2 mm (1/16 inch) larger than fastener shank when shank is larger than 5 mm (3/16 inch).
  - 3. Steel decks: Screws; Fed Spec FF-S-107, hardened nylon screw or steel screw coated to resist corrosion, self drilling, anti-backout thread design. Minimum pullout resistance of 135 Kg (300 pounds), minimum thread penetration of 13 mm (1/2 inch).
  - 4. Gypsum, Insulating Concrete, and Structural Cement Fiber Decks: Diverging or hooking point fastener, anti-spin fitting; or specifically designed for anchorage to deck as recommended by roofing membrane manufacturer, coated to resist corrosion, minimum pullout resistance of 200 Kg (450 pounds).
  - 5. Concrete and Masonry Wall Surfaces:
    - a. Nail penetration 13 mm (1/2 inch).
  - 6. Wood:
    - a. Screws; Fed. Spec. FF-S-111, Type I, Style 2.5, coated to resist corrosion, length to provide 19 mm (3/4 inch) minimum penetration.
    - b. Nails: Barbed shank, galvanized.

7. Washers: Neoprene backed metal washer 28 mm (1-1/8 inch) minimum diameter.
  8. To Sheet Metal: Self tapping screw; Fed. Spec. FF-S-107, 2 mm (No. 14), sheet metal screw, minimum thread penetration of 6 mm (1/4 inch); stainless steel.
- B. Pipe Compression Clamp or Drawband:
1. Stainless steel or cadmium plated steel drawband.
  2. Worm drive clamp device.
- C. Surface mounted base flashing clamp strip:
1. Stainless steel strip, ASTM A167, type 302 or 304, dead soft temper, minimum 0.5 mm (0.018-inch) thick.
  2. Aluminum strip: ASTM B209 24 mm (.094-inch) thick.
  3. For exposed location, form strips with 6 mm (1/4 inch) wide top edge bent out 45 degrees (for sealant) from 40 mm (1-1/2 inch) wide material; 2400 mm (8 feet) maximum length with slotted 6 mm x 10 mm (1/4 by 3/8-inch) holes punched at 200 mm (8 inch) centers, centered between bend and bottom edges.
  4. For locations covered by cap flashings, form strips 30 mm (1-1/4 inch) wide, 2400 mm (8 feet) maximum length with slotted holes 6 mm x 10 mm (1/4 by 3/8 inch) punched at 200 mm (8 inch) centers, centered on strip width.

## **2.5 VAPOR RETARDER OR SEPARATION SHEETS**

- A. Polyethylene film: ASTM D2103, 0.2 mm (6 mils) thick.
- B. Building Paper: Fed. Spec. UU-B-790.
1. Water vapor resistance: Type I, Grade A, Style 4, reinforced.
  2. Water vapor permeable: Type I, Grade D, Style 4, reinforced.

## **2.6 FLEXIBLE TUBING**

- A. Closed cell neoprene, butyl polyethylene, vinyl, or polyethylene tube or rod.
- B. Diameter approximately 1-1/2 times joint width.

## **2.8 PROTECTION MAT OR SEPARATION SHEETS**

- A. Protection Mat:
1. Water pervious; either woven or non-woven pervious sheet of long chain polymeric filaments or yarns such as polypropylene, black polyethylene, polyester, or polyamide; or, polyvinylidene-chloride formed into a pattern with distinct and measurable openings.
  2. Filter fabric equivalent opening size (EOS): Not finer than the U.S.A. Standard Sieve Number 120 and not coarser than the U.S.A. Standard Sieve Number 100. EOS is defined as the number of the U.S.A.

- Standard Sieve having openings closest in size to the filter cloth openings.
3. Edges of fabric selvaged or otherwise finished to prevent raveling.
  4. Abrasion resistance:
    - a. After being abraded in conformance with ASTM D3884 using rubber-hose abrasive wheels with one kg load per wheel and 1000 revolutions, perform tensile strength test as specified in ASTM D1682, paragraph.
    - b. Result; 25 kg (55 pounds) minimum in any principle direction.
  5. Puncture strength:
    - a. ASTM D751 - tension testing machine with ring clamp; steel ball replaced with a 8 mm (5/16 inch) diameter solid steel cylinder with a hemispherical tip centered within the ring clamp.
    - b. Result; 57 kg (125 pounds) minimum.
  6. Non-degrading under a wet or humid condition within minimum 4°C (40°F) to maximum 66°C (150°F) when exposed to ultraviolet light.
  7. Minimum sheet width: 2400 mm (8 feet).

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 GENERAL**

- A. Do not apply if deck will be used for subsequent work platform, storage of materials, or staging or scaffolding will be erected thereon unless protection provided to distribute loads less than one-half compression resistance of roofing system materials.
  1. Curbs, blocking, edge strips, and other components to which roofing and base flashing is attached in place ready to receive insulation and, roofing.
  2. Coordinate roof operation with sheet metal work and roof insulation work so that insulation and flashing are installed concurrently to permit continuous roofing operations.
  3. Complete installation of flashing, insulation, and roofing in the same day except for the area where temporary protection is required when work is stopped.
- B. Phased construction is not permitted. The complete installation of roofing system is required in the same day except for area where temporary protection is required when work is stopped. Complete installation includes pavers and ballast for ballasted systems.
- C. Dry out surfaces including the flutes of metal deck, that become wet from any cause during progress of the work before roofing work is resumed.
- D. Apply materials only to dry substrates.

E. Except for temporary protection specified, do not apply materials during damp or rainy weather, during excessive wind conditions, nor while moisture (dew, snow, fog, ice, or frost) is present in any amount in or on the materials.

1. Do not apply materials to substrate having temperature of 4°C (40 degrees F) or less, or when materials applied with the roof require higher application temperature.
2. Do not apply materials when the temperature is below 4°C (40 degrees F).

F. Temporary Protection:

1. Install temporary protection consisting of a temporary seal and water cut-offs at the end of each day's work and when work is halted for an indefinite period or work is stopped when precipitation is imminent.
2. Temporarily seal exposed surfaces of insulation within the roofing membrane.
3. Do not leave insulation surfaces or edges exposed.
4. Use polyethylene film or building paper to separate roof sheet from bituminous materials.
5. Apply the temporary seal and water cut off by extending the roof membrane beyond the insulation and securely embedding the edge of the roof membrane in 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick by 50 mm (2 inches) wide strip of temporary closure sealant (night sealant) and weight edge with sandbags, to prevent displacement; space sandbags not over 2400 mm (8 foot) centers. Check daily to insure temporary seal remains watertight. Reseal open areas and weight down.
6. Before the work resumes, cut off and discard portions of the roof membrane in contact with roof cement or bituminous materials.
  - a. Cut not less than 150 mm (6 inches) back from bituminous coated edges or surfaces.
  - b. Remove temporary polyethylene film or building paper.
7. Remove and discard sandbags contaminated with bituminous products.
8. For roof areas that are to remain intact and that are subject to foot traffic and damage, provide temporary wood walkways with notches in sleepers to permit free drainage.
9. Provide 2 mm (6 mil) polyethylene sheeting or building paper cover over roofing membrane under temporary wood walkways and adjacent areas. Round all edges and corners of wood bearing on roof surface.

**3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Test pull out resistance of fasteners in deck in the presence of the Resident Engineer before starting roofing work. Tests are not required for wood.
  - 1. Test applicable fastener type in applicable deck.
  - 2. Install fasteners through a sample of the insulation, if any is to be used, into the structural deck.
  - 3. Test the pull out resistance with a pull out tester.
  - 4. Test one fastener in each deck level and one for every 230 m<sup>2</sup> (2500 square feet) of deck type and level.
  - 5. Test at locations designated by Resident Engineer.
  - 6. Do not proceed with the roofing work if the pull out resistance of the fasteners is less than specified.
  - 7. Test results:
    - a. Repeat tests using other type fasteners or use additional fasteners to stay within the pullout load resistance criteria.
    - b. Patch cementitious deck to repair areas of fastener tests holes.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, and surface moisture. Cover or fill voids greater than 6 mm (1/4 inch) wide to provide solid support for roof membrane.
- C. Install separation sheet over bituminous material on deck surface lapping edges and ends 150 mm (6 inches) or as recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
  - 1. Do not install of separation sheet beyond what can be covered by roofing membrane each day.
  - 2. Use polyethylene, or building paper, that will be compatible with seaming method.
  - 3. Insure separation sheet completely isolates bituminous materials from EPDM roofing membrane.
  - 4. Turn up at penetrations, or other surfaces where bituminous materials occur, to cover bituminous product.
  - 5. Turn down over edges of blocking at perimeters to cover blocking.

**3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING AND FLASHING**

- A. Do not allow the membrane to come in contact with surfaces contaminated with asphalt, coal tar, oil, grease, or other substances which are not compatible with EPDM roofing membrane.
- B. If possible, install the membrane so the sheets run perpendicular to the long dimension of the insulation boards.
- C. If possible, start at the low point of the roof and work towards the high point. Lap the sheets so the flow of water is not against the edges of the sheet. Coordinate with roof insulation installation.
- D. Position the membrane so it is free of buckles and wrinkles.

E. Roll sheet out on deck; inspect for defects as sheet is being rolled out and remove defective areas:

1. Allow 30 minutes for relaxing before proceeding.
2. Lap edges and ends of sheets 75 mm (3 inches) or more as recommended by the manufacturer. Clean lap surfaces as specified by manufacturer.
3. Adhesively splice laps. Apply pressure as required. Seam strength of laps as required by ASTM D4637.
4. Check seams to ensure continuous adhesion and correct defects.
5. Finish edges of laps with a continuous beveled bead of lap sealant to sheet edges to provide smooth transition as specified by manufacturer.
6. Finish seams as the membrane is being installed (same day).
7. Anchor perimeter to deck or wall as specified.

F. Membrane Perimeter Anchorage:

1. Install batten strip or steel stress plate with fasteners at the perimeter of each roof level, curb flashing, expansion joints and similar penetrations as indicated in accordance with membrane manufacturer's instructions on top of roof membrane to wall or deck.
2. Mechanically fastened as follows:
  - a. Top of mechanical fastener set flush with top surface of the nailing strip or stress plate.
  - b. Space mechanical fasteners a maximum 300 mm (12 inches) on center.
  - c. Start 25 mm (1 inch) from the end of the nailing strip when used.
  - d. When strip is cut round edge and corners before installing.
  - e. Set fasteners in lap sealant and cover fastener head with fastener sealer including batten strip or stress plate.
  - f. Stop fastening strip where the use of the nailing strip interferes with the flow of the surface water, separate by a 150 mm (6 inch) space, then start again.
  - g. After mechanically fastening cover and seal with a 225 mm (9 inch) wide strip of flashing sheet. Use splice adhesive on all laps and finish edge with sealant as specified.
  - i. At parapet walls intersecting building walls and curbs, secure the membrane to the structural deck with fasteners 150 mm (6 inches) on center or as shown in NRCA manual (Fifth Edition)

H. Mechanical Anchorage:

1. Secure the membrane to the structural deck with fasteners through stress plate or batten strips spaced and patterned in accordance with the membrane manufacturer's instructions to achieve a Factory Mutual 1-60 Wind Uplift rating.

2. When fasteners are installed within the laps of adjoining sheets, position the fastener so that the stress plates are a minimum 13 mm (1/2 inch) from the edge of the sheets.
  3. Apply lap sealant under stress plate or batten strip and anchor to deck while lap sealant is still fluid. Cover fastener head with fastener sealer.
  4. Where fasteners are installed over the membrane after the seams have been welded, cover the fasteners with a minimum 200 mm (8 inch) wide round EPDM membrane cap centered over the fastener stress plate. If batten strips are used cover the strip with a minimum 200 mm (8 inch) wide EPDM strip centered over the batten. Splice covers to roof membrane and finish edges with sealant as specified.
  5. Before installing fasteners into cast in place concrete, pre-drill the correct size hole into the deck. Drill the hole 10 mm (3/8 inch) deeper than the fastener penetration.
- I. Install flashings as the membrane is being installed (same day). If the flashing cannot be completely installed in one day, complete the installation until the flashing is in a watertight condition and provide temporary covers or seals.
- J. Flashing Roof Drains:
1. Install roof drain flashing as recommended by the membrane manufacturer, generally as follows:
    - a. Coordinate to set the metal drain flashing in asphalt roof cement, holding cement back from the edge of the metal flange.
    - b. Do not allow the roof cement to come in contact with the EPDM roof membrane.
    - c. Adhere the EPDM roof membrane to the metal flashing with the membrane manufacturer's recommended bonding adhesive.
  2. Turn down the metal drain flashing and EPDM roof membrane into the drain body and install clamping ring and stainer.
- M. Installing EPDM Base Flashing and Pipe Flashing:
1. Install EPDM flashing membranes to pipes, walls or curbs to a height not less than 200 mm (8 inches) above roof surfaces and 100 mm (4 inches) on roof membranes. Install in accordance with NRCA manual:
    - a. Adhere flashing to pipe, wall or curb with bonding adhesive.
    - b. Form inside and outside corners of EPDM flashing membrane in accordance with NRCA manual (Fifth Edition). Form pipe flashing in accordance with NRCA manual (Fifth Edition).
    - c. Lap ends not less than 100 mm (4 inches).



- d. Adhesively splice flashing membranes together and flashing membranes to roof membranes. Finish exposed edges with sealant as specified.
- 2. Anchor top of flashing to walls or curbs with fasteners spaced not over 150 mm (6 inches) on center. Use surface mounted fastening strip with sealant on ducts. Use pipe clamps on pipes or other round penetrations.
- 3. Apply sealant to top edge of flashing.
- O. Repairs to membrane and flashings:
  - 1. Remove sections of EPDM sheet roofing or flashing that is creased wrinkled or fishmouthed.
  - 2. Cover removed areas, cuts and damaged areas with a patch extending 100 mm (4 inches) beyond damaged, cut, or removed area. Adhesively splice to roof membrane or flashing. Finish edge of lap with sealant as specified.

### **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Examine and probe seams in the membrane and flashing in the presence of the Resident Engineer and Membrane Manufacturer's Inspector.
- B. Probe the edges of welded seams with a blunt tipped instrument. Use sufficient hand pressure to detect marginal bonds, voids, skips, and fishmouths.
- C. Cut 100 mm (4 inch) wide by 300 mm (12 inch) long samples through the seams where directed by the Resident Engineer.
  - 1. Cut one sample for every 450 m (1500 linear feet) of seams.
  - 2. Cut the samples perpendicular to the longitudinal direction of the seams.
  - 3. Failure of the samples to maintain the standard of quality within a reasonable tolerance of the approved samples will be cause for rejection of the work.
- D. Repair areas of welded seams where samples have been taken or marginal bond voids or skips occur.
- E. Repair fishmouths and wrinkles by cutting to lay flat and installing patch over cut area extending 100 mm (4 inches) beyond cut.

### **3.7 TEMPORARY ROOF**

- A. Install temporary roof when sequences of work or weather does not permit installation of a completed permanent roof system or roof would be subject to phasing of roof work, construction traffic, scaffolds, and work over roof area.
- B. Use of 1.15 mm (0.045-inch) thick non-reinforced EPDM membrane or other temporary membrane as approved.

- C. Install not less than 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick plywood underlayment over steel decks before installing temporary roof.
- D. Secure membrane to deck with mechanical fasteners or temporary ballast not exceeding deck dead load capacity.
- E. Repair cuts, tears, and punctures with patches to keep system watertight.
- F. Install permanent roof system within one year.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 60 00  
FLASHING AND SHEET METAL****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

Formed sheet metal work for wall and roof flashing, copings, roof edge metal, fasciae, drainage specialties are specified in this section.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Manufactured flashing, copings, roof edge metal, and fasciae: Section 07 72 00 ROOF ACCESSORIES.
- C. Flashing components of factory finished roofing and wall systems: Division 07 roofing and wall system sections.
- D. Joint Sealants: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- E. Color of factory coated exterior architectural metal and anodized aluminum items: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- F. Integral flashing components of manufactured roof specialties and accessories or equipment: Section 07 72 00, ROOF ACCESSORIES, Division 22, PLUMBING sections and Division 23 HVAC sections.
- G. Paint materials and application: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

**1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only. Editions of applicable publications current on date of issue of bidding documents apply unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aluminum Association (AA):
  - AA-C22A41.....Aluminum Chemically etched medium matte, with clear anodic coating, Class I Architectural, 0.7-mil thick
  - AA-C22A42.....Chemically etched medium matte, with integrally colored anodic coating, Class I Architectural, 0.7 mils thick
  - AA-C22A44.....Chemically etched medium matte with electrolytically deposited metallic compound, integrally colored coating Class I Architectural, 0.7-mil thick finish

- C. American National Standards Institute/Single-Ply Roofing Institute  
(ANSI/SPRI):  
ANSI/SPRI ES-1-03.....Wind Design Standard for Edge Systems Used with  
Low Slope Roofing Systems
- D. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):  
AAMA 620.....Voluntary Specification for High Performance  
Organic Coatings on Coil Coated Architectural  
Aluminum  
AAMA 621.....Voluntary Specification for High Performance  
Organic Coatings on Coil Coated Architectural  
Hot Dipped Galvanized (HDG) and Zinc-Aluminum  
Coated Steel Substrates
- E. ASTM International (ASTM):  
A167-99(R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip  
A653/A653M-09.....Steel Sheet Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc  
Alloy Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot- Dip  
Process  
B32-08.....Solder Metal  
B209-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate  
B370-09.....Copper Sheet and Strip for Building  
Construction  
D173-03.....Bitumen-Saturated Cotton Fabrics Used in  
Roofing and Waterproofing  
D412-06.....Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers-  
Tension  
D1187-97(R2002).....Asphalt Base Emulsions for Use as Protective  
Coatings for Metal  
D1784-08.....Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and  
Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC)  
Compounds  
D3656-07.....Insect Screening and Louver Cloth Woven from  
Vinyl-Coated Glass Yarns  
D4586-07.....Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Free
- F. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association  
(SMACNA): Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.
- G. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):

AMP 500-06.....Metal Finishes Manual

H. Federal Specification (Fed. Spec):

A-A-1925A.....Shield, Expansion; (Nail Anchors)

UU-B-790A.....Building Paper, Vegetable Fiber

I. International Code Commission (ICC): International Building Code,  
Current Edition

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Wind Uplift Forces: Resist the following forces per FM Approvals 1-49:

4. Wind Zone 3: 2.20 to 4.98 kPa (46 to 104 lbf/sq. ft.): 9.96-kPa  
(208-lbf/sq. ft.) perimeter uplift force, 14.94-kPa (312-lbf/sq.  
ft.) corner uplift force, and 4.98-kPa (104-lbf/sq. ft.) outward  
force.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT  
DATA, AND SAMPLES.

B. Shop Drawings: For all specified items, including:

1. Flashings
2. Copings
4. Gutter and Conductors
6. Fascia-cant

C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: For all specified items, including:

1. Two-piece counterflashing
2. Thru wall flashing
4. Nonreinforced, elastomeric sheeting
9. Fascia-cant

D. Certificates: Indicating compliance with specified finishing  
requirements, from applicator and contractor.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302B, dead soft temper.

E. Polyethylene Coated Copper: Copper sheet ASTM B370, weighing 1 Kg/m<sup>2</sup> (3  
oz/sf) bonded between two layers of (two mil) thick polyethylene sheet.

- H. Nonreinforced, Elastomeric Sheeting: Elastomeric substances reduced to thermoplastic state and extruded into continuous homogenous sheet (0.056 inch) thick. Sheeting shall have not less than 7 MPa (1,000 psi) tensile strength and not more than seven percent tension-set at 50 percent elongation when tested in accordance with ASTM D412. Sheeting shall show no cracking or flaking when bent through 180 degrees over a 1 mm (1/32 inch) diameter mandrel and then bent at same point over same size mandrel in opposite direction through 360 degrees at temperature of -30°C (-20 °F).

## 2.2 FLASHING ACCESSORIES

- A. Solder: ASTM B32; flux type and alloy composition as required for use with metals to be soldered.
- B. Rosin Paper: Fed-Spec. UU-B-790, Type I, Grade D, Style 1b, Rosin-sized sheathing paper, weighing approximately 3 Kg/10 m<sup>2</sup> ( 6 lbs/100 sf).
- C. Bituminous Paint: ASTM D1187, Type I.
- D. Fasteners:
1. Use copper, copper alloy, bronze, brass, or stainless steel for copper and copper clad stainless steel, and stainless steel for stainless steel and aluminum alloy. Use galvanized steel or stainless steel for galvanized steel.
  2. Nails:
    - a. Minimum diameter for copper nails: 3 mm (0.109 inch).
    - b. Minimum diameter for aluminum nails 3 mm (0.105 inch).
    - c. Minimum diameter for stainless steel nails: 2 mm (0.095 inch) and annular threaded.
    - d. Length to provide not less than 22 mm (7/8 inch) penetration into anchorage.
  3. Rivets: Not less than 3 mm (1/8 inch) diameter.
  4. Expansion Shields: Fed Spec A-A-1925A.
- E. Sealant: As specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS for exterior locations.
- F. Insect Screening: ASTM D3656, 18 by 18 regular mesh.
- G. Roof Cement: ASTM D4586.

**2.3 SHEET METAL THICKNESS**

- A. Except as otherwise shown or specified use thickness or weight of sheet metal as follows:
- B. Concealed Locations (Built into Construction):
  - 2. Stainless steel: 0.25 mm (0.010 inch) thick.
- C. Exposed Locations:
  - 2. Stainless steel: 0.4 mm (0.015 inch).

**2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL**

- A. Jointing:
  - 1. In general, copper, stainless steel and copper clad stainless steel joints, except expansion and contraction joints, shall be locked and soldered.
  - 2. Jointing of copper over 0.5 Kg (20 oz) weight or stainless steel over 0.45 mm (0.018 inch) thick shall be done by lapping, riveting and soldering.
  - 3. Joints shall conform to following requirements:
    - a. Flat-lock joints shall finish not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) wide.
    - b. Lap joints subject to stress shall finish not less than 25 mm (one inch) wide and shall be soldered and riveted.
    - c. Unsoldered lap joints shall finish not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide.
  - 4. Flat and lap joints shall be made in direction of flow.
  - 5. Edges of bituminous coated copper, copper covered paper, nonreinforced elastomeric sheeting and polyethylene coated copper shall be jointed by lapping not less than 100 mm (4 inches) in the direction of flow and cementing with asphalt roof cement or sealant as required by the manufacturer's printed instructions.
  - 6. Soldering:
    - a. Pre tin both mating surfaces with solder for a width not less than 38 mm (1 1/2 inches) of uncoated copper, stainless steel, and copper clad stainless steel.
    - b. Wire brush to produce a bright surface before soldering lead coated copper.
    - c. Treat in accordance with metal producers recommendations other sheet metal required to be soldered.
    - d. Completely remove acid and flux after soldering is completed.

## B. Expansion and Contraction Joints:

1. Fabricate in accordance with the Architectural Sheet Metal Manual recommendations for expansion and contraction of sheet metal work in continuous runs.
2. Space joints as shown or as specified.
3. Space expansion and contraction joints for copper, stainless steel, and copper clad stainless steel at intervals not exceeding 7200 mm (24 feet).
4. Space expansion and contraction joints for aluminum at intervals not exceeding 5400 mm (18 feet), except do not exceed 3000 mm (10 feet) for gravel stops and fascia-cant systems.
5. Fabricate slip-type or loose locked joints and fill with sealant unless otherwise specified.
6. Fabricate joint covers of same thickness material as sheet metal served.

## C. Cleats:

1. Fabricate cleats to secure flashings and sheet metal work over 300 mm (12 inches) wide and where specified.
2. Provide cleats for maximum spacing of 300 mm (12 inch) centers unless specified otherwise.
3. Form cleats of same metal and weights or thickness as the sheet metal being installed unless specified otherwise.
4. Fabricate cleats from 50 mm (2 inch) wide strip. Form end with not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) wide loose lock to item for anchorage. Form other end of length to receive nails free of item to be anchored and end edge to be folded over and cover nail heads.

## D. Edge Strips or Continuous Cleats:

1. Fabricate continuous edge strips where shown and specified to secure loose edges of the sheet metal work.
2. Except as otherwise specified, fabricate edge strips or minimum 0.6 mm (0.024 inch) thick stainless steel.
3. Use material compatible with sheet metal to be secured by the edge strip.
4. Fabricate in 3000 mm (10 feet) maximum lengths with not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) loose lock into metal secured by edge strip.



5. Fabricate Strips for fascia anchorage to extend below the supporting wood construction to form a drip and to allow the flashing to be hooked over the lower edge at least 19 mm (3/4-inch).
6. Fabricate anchor edge maximum width of 75 mm (3 inches) or of sufficient width to provide adequate bearing area to insure a rigid installation using 0.8 mm (0.031 inch) thick stainless steel.

E. Drips:

1. Form drips at lower edge of sheet metal counter-flashings (cap flashings), fascias, gravel stops, wall copings, by folding edge back 13 mm (1/2 inch) and bending out 45 degrees from vertical to carry water away from the wall.
2. Form drip to provide hook to engage cleat or edge strip for fastening for not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) loose lock where shown.

F. Edges:

1. Edges of flashings concealed in masonry joints opposite drain side shall be turned up 6 mm (1/4 inch) to form dam, unless otherwise specified or shown otherwise.
2. Finish exposed edges of flashing with a 6 mm (1/4 inch) hem formed by folding edge of flashing back on itself when not hooked to edge strip or cleat. Use 6 mm (1/4 inch) minimum penetration beyond wall face with drip for through-wall flashing exposed edge.
3. All metal roof edges shall meet requirements of IBC, current edition.

G. Metal Options:

1. Where options are permitted for different metals use only one metal throughout.
2. Stainless steel may be used in concealed locations for fasteners of other metals exposed to view.
3. Where copper gravel stops, copings and flashings will carry water onto cast stone, stone, or architectural concrete, or stainless steel.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Use same finish on adjacent metal or components and exposed metal surfaces unless specified or shown otherwise.

- B. In accordance with NAAMM Metal Finishes Manual AMP 500, unless otherwise specified.
- C. Finish exposed metal surfaces as follows, unless specified otherwise:
  - 2. Stainless Steel: Finish No. 2B or 2D.
  - 3. Aluminum:
    - a. Clear Finish: AA-C22A41 medium matte, clear anodic coating, Class 1 Architectural, 18 mm (0.7 mils) thick.
    - b. Colored Finish: AA-C22A42 (anodized) or AA-C22A44 (electrolytically deposited metallic compound) medium matte, integrally colored coating, Class 1 Architectural, 18 mm (0.7 mils) thick. Dyes will not be accepted.
    - c. Fluorocarbon Finish: AAMA 620, high performance organic coating.
    - d. Mill finish.
  - 4. Steel and Galvanized Steel:
    - a. Finish painted under Section 09 91 00, PAINTING unless specified as prefinished item.
    - b. Manufacturer's finish:
      - 1) Baked on prime coat over a phosphate coating.
      - 2) Baked-on prime and finish coat over a phosphate coating.
      - 3) Fluorocarbon Finish: AAMA 621, high performance organic coating.

## 2.6 THROUGH-WALL FLASHINGS

- A. Form through-wall flashing to provide a mechanical bond or key against lateral movement in all directions. Install a sheet having 2 mm (1/16 inch) deep transverse channels spaced four to every 25 mm (one inch), or ribbed diagonal pattern, or having other deformation unless specified otherwise.
  - 1. Fabricate in not less than 2400 mm (8 feet) lengths; 3000 mm (10 feet) maximum lengths.
  - 2. Fabricate so keying nests at overlaps.
- D. For Flashing at Architectural Precast Concrete Panels or Stone Panels.
  - 1. Use plan flat sheet of stainless steel.
  - 2. Form exposed portions with drip as specified or receiver.

## 2.7 BASE FLASHING

- A. Use metal base flashing at vertical surfaces intersecting built-up roofing without cant strips or where shown.

1. Use stainless steel, thickness specified unless specified otherwise.
  2. When flashing is over 250 mm (10 inches) in vertical height or horizontal width use 0.5 mm (0.018 inch) stainless steel.
  3. Use stainless steel at aluminum roof curbs where flashing contacts the aluminum.
  4. Use stainless steel at pipe flashings.
- B. Fabricate metal base flashing up vertical surfaces not less than 200 mm (8 inch) nor more than 400 mm (16 inch).
- C. Fabricate roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide unless shown otherwise. When base flashing length exceeds 2400 mm (8 feet) form flange edge with 13 mm (1/2 inch) hem to receive cleats.
- D. Form base flashing bent from strip except pipe flashing. Fabricate ends for riveted soldered lap seam joints. Fabricate expansion joint ends as specified.
- E. Pipe Flashing: (Other than engine exhaust or flue stack)
1. Fabricate roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) beyond sleeve on all sides.
  2. Extend sleeve up and around pipe and flange out at bottom not less than 13 mm (1/2 inch) and solder to flange and sleeve seam to make watertight.
  3. At low pipes 200 mm (8 inch) to 450 mm (18 inch) above roof:
    - a. Form top of sleeve to turn down into the pipe at least 25 mm (one inch).
    - b. Allow for loose fit around and into the pipe.
  4. At high pipes and pipes with goosenecks or other obstructions which would prevent turning the flashing down into the pipe:
    - a. Extend sleeve up not less than 300 mm (12 inch) above roofing.
    - b. Allow for loose fit around pipe.

## **2.8 COUNTERFLASHING (CAP FLASHING OR HOODS)**

- A. Either copper or stainless steel, unless specified otherwise.
- B. Fabricate to lap base flashing a minimum of 100 mm (4 inches) with drip:
1. Form lock seams for outside corners. Allow for lap joints at ends and inside corners.
  2. In general, form flashing in lengths not less than 2400 mm (8 feet) and not more than 3000 mm (10 feet).

3. Two-piece, lock in type flashing may be used in-lieu-of one piece counter-flashing.
4. Manufactured assemblies may be used.
5. Where counterflashing is installed at new work use an integral flange at the top designed to be extended into the masonry joint or reglet in concrete.
6. Where counterflashing is installed at existing work use surface applied type, formed to provide a space for the application of sealant at the top edge.

C. One-piece Counterflashing:

1. Back edge turned up and fabricate to lock into reglet in concrete.
2. Upper edge formed to extend full depth of masonry unit in mortar joint with back edge turned up 6 mm (1/4 inch).

D. Two-Piece Counterflashing:

1. Receiver to extend into masonry wall depth of masonry unit with back edge turned up 6 mm (1/4 inch) and exposed edge designed to receive and lock counterflashing upper edge when inserted.
2. Counterflashing upper edge designed to snap lock into receiver.

E. Surface Mounted Counterflashing; one or two piece:

1. Use at existing or new surfaces where flashing can not be inserted in vertical surface.
2. One piece fabricate upper edge folded double for 65 mm (2 1/2 inches) with top 19 mm (3/4 inch) bent out to form "V" joint sealant pocket with vertical surface. Perforate flat double area against vertical surface with horizontally slotted fastener holes at 400 mm (16 inch) centers between end holes. Option: One piece surface mounted counter-flashing (cap flashing) may be used. Fabricate as detailed on Plate 51 of SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.
3. Two pieces: Fabricate upper edge to lock into surface mounted receiver. Fabricate receiver joint sealant pocket on upper edge and lower edge to receive counterflashing, with slotted fastener holes at 400 mm (16 inch) centers between upper and lower edge.

F. Pipe Counterflashing:

1. Form flashing for water-tight umbrella with upper portion against pipe to receive a draw band and upper edge to form a "V" joint sealant receiver approximately 19 mm (3/4 inch) deep.
2. Fabricate 100 mm (4 inch) over lap at end.

3. Fabricate draw band of same metal as counter flashing. Use 0.6 Kg (24 oz) copper or 0.33 mm (0.013 inch) thick stainless steel or copper coated stainless steel.
  4. Use stainless steel bolt on draw band tightening assembly.
  5. Vent pipe counter flashing may be fabricated to omit draw band and turn down 25 mm (one inch) inside vent pipe.
- G. Where vented edge decks intersect vertical surfaces, form in one piece, shape to slope down to a point level with and in front of edge-set notched plank; then, down vertically, overlapping base flashing.

#### **2.14 REGLETS**

- A. Fabricate reglets of one of the following materials:
1. 0.4 Kg (16 ounce) copper.
  2. Stainless steel, not less than 0.3 mm (0.012 inch) thick.
  3. Plastic coated extruded aluminum, not less than 1.4 mm (0.055 inch) thick prefilled with butyl rubber sealer and complete with plastic wedges inserted at 1000 mm (40 inches) on centers.
  4. Plastic, ASTM D1784, Type II, not less than 2 mm (0.075 inch) thick.
- B. Fill open-type reglets with fiberboard or other suitable separator, to prevent crushing of the slot during installation.
- C. Bend edges of reglets for setting into concrete to an angle of not less than 45 degrees, and make wide enough to provide firm anchorage in the concrete.
- D. Fabricate reglets for building into horizontal masonry mortar joints not less than 19 mm (3/4 inch) deep, nor more than 25 mm (one inch) deep.
- E. Fabricate mitered corners, fittings, and special shapes as may be required by details.
- F. Reglets for concrete may be formed to receive flashing and have a 10 mm (3/8 inch), 45 degree snap lock.

#### **2.15 INSULATED EXPANSION JOINT COVERS**

- A. Either type optional, use only one type throughout.
- B. Types:
1. Construct of two preformed, stainless steel strips, not less than 0.4 mm (0.015 inch) thick, mechanically and adhesively bonded to both sides of a 2 mm (1/16 inch) thick neoprene or butyl sheet, or to a 0.4 mm (32 mil) thick reinforced chlorinated polyethylene

- sheet. Adhesively attach a 10 mm (3/8 inch) thick sheet of closed cell, neoprene foam insulation, to the underside of the neoprene, butyl, or chlorinated polyethylene sheet.
2. Constructed of a 2 mm (1/16 inch) thick vinyl sheet, flanged at both sides with stainless steel strips not less than 0.4 mm (0.015 inch) thick. Vinyl sheet locked and encased by the stainless steel strip and prepunched for nailing. A 10 mm (3/8 inch) thick closed cell polyvinyl chloride foam insulating strip shall be heat laminated to the underside of the vinyl sheet between the stainless steel strips.
- C. Expansion joint covers shall have factory fabricated mitered corners, crossing tees, and other necessary accessories. Furnish in the longest available lengths.
- D. Metal flange of sufficient width to extend over the top of the curb and down curb sides 50 mm (2 inches) with hemmed edge for lock to edge strip.

## **2.16 ENGINE EXHAUST PIPE OR FLUE OR STACK FLASHING**

- A. Flashing at penetrations through roofing shall consist of a metal collar, sheet metal flashing sleeve and hood.
- B. Fabricate collar with roof flange of 1.2 mm (0.047 inch) minimum thick black iron or galvanized steel sheet.
1. Fabricate inside diameter of collar 100 mm (4 inches) larger than the outside diameter of the item penetration the roofing.
  2. Extend collar height from structural roof deck to not less than 350 mm (14 inches) above roof surface.
  3. Fabricate collar roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide.
  4. Option: Collar may be of steel tubing 3 mm (0.125 inch) minimum wall thickness, with not less than four, 50 mm x 100 mm x 3 mm (2 inch by 4 inch by 0.125 inch) thick tabs bottom edge evenly spaced around tube in lieu of continuous roof flange. Full butt weld joints of collar.
- C. Fabricate sleeve base flashing with roof flange of either copper, stainless steel, or copper clad stainless steel.
1. Fabricate sleeve roof flange not less than 100 mm (4 inches) wide.
  2. Extend sleeve around collar up to top of collar.
  3. Flange bottom of sleeve out not less than 13 mm (1/24 inch) and soldered to 100 mm (4 inch) wide flange to make watertight.
  4. Fabricate interior diameter 50 mm (2 inch) greater than collar.

- D. Fabricate hood counter flashing from same material and thickness as sleeve.
  - 1. Fabricate the same as pipe counter flashing except allow not less than 100 mm (4 inch) lap below top of sleeve and to form vent space minimum of 100 mm (4 inch) wide.
  - 2. Hem bottom edge of hood 13 mm (1/2 inch).
  - 3. Provide a 50 mm (2 inch) deep drawband.
- E. Fabricate insect screen closure between sleeve and hood. Secure screen to sleeve with sheet metal screws.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. General:
  - 1. Install flashing and sheet metal items as shown in Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc., publication, ARCHITECTURAL SHEET METAL MANUAL, except as otherwise shown or specified.
  - 2. Apply Sealant as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
  - 3. Apply sheet metal and other flashing material to surfaces which are smooth, sound, clean, dry and free from defects that might affect the application.
  - 4. Remove projections which would puncture the materials and fill holes and depressions with material compatible with the substrate. Cover holes or cracks in wood wider than 6 mm (1/4 inch) with sheet metal compatible with the roofing and flashing material used.
  - 5. Coordinate with masonry work for the application of a skim coat of mortar to surfaces of unit masonry to receive flashing material before the application of flashing.
  - 6. Apply a layer of 7 Kg (15 pound) saturated felt followed by a layer of rosin paper to wood surfaces to be covered with copper. Lap each ply 50 mm (2 inch) with the slope and nail with large headed copper nails.
  - 7. Confine direct nailing of sheet metal to strips 300 mm (12 inch) or less wide. Nail flashing along one edge only. Space nail not over 100 mm (4 inches) on center unless specified otherwise.
  - 8. Install bolts, rivets, and screws where indicated, specified, or required in accordance with the SMACNA Sheet Metal Manual. Space

- rivets at 75 mm (3 inch) on centers in two rows in a staggered position. Use neoprene washers under fastener heads when fastener head is exposed.
9. Coordinate with roofing work for the installation of metal base flashings and other metal items having roof flanges for anchorage and watertight installation.
  10. Nail continuous cleats on 75 mm (3 inch) on centers in two rows in a staggered position.
  11. Nail individual cleats with two nails and bend end tab over nail heads. Lock other end of cleat into hemmed edge.
  12. Install flashings in conjunction with other trades so that flashings are inserted in other materials and joined together to provide a water tight installation.
  13. Where required to prevent galvanic action between dissimilar metal isolate the contact areas of dissimilar metal with sheet lead, waterproof building paper, or a coat of bituminous paint.
  14. Isolate aluminum in contact with dissimilar metals others than stainless steel, white bronze or other metal compatible with aluminum by:
    - a. Paint dissimilar metal with a prime coat of zinc-chromate or other suitable primer, followed by two coats of aluminum paint.
    - b. Paint dissimilar metal with a coat of bituminous paint.
    - c. Apply an approved caulking material between aluminum and dissimilar metal.
  15. Paint aluminum in contact with or built into mortar, concrete, plaster, or other masonry materials with a coat of bituminous paint.
  16. Paint aluminum in contact with absorptive materials that may become repeatedly wet with two coats of bituminous paint or two coats of aluminum paint.

### **3.2 THROUGH-WALL FLASHING**

#### **A. General:**

1. Install continuous through-wall flashing between top of concrete foundation walls and bottom of masonry building walls; at top of concrete floors; under masonry, concrete, or stone copings and elsewhere as shown.



2. Where exposed portions are used as a counterflashings, lap base flashings at least 100 mm (4 inches) and use thickness of metal as specified for exposed locations.
3. Exposed edge of flashing may be formed as a receiver for two piece counter flashing as specified.
4. Terminate exterior edge beyond face of wall approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) with drip edge where not part of counter flashing.
5. Turn back edge up 6 mm (1/4 inch) unless noted otherwise where flashing terminates in mortar joint or hollow masonry unit joint.
6. Terminate interior raised edge in masonry backup unit approximately 38 mm (1 1/2 inch) into unit unless shown otherwise.
7. Under copings terminate both edges beyond face of wall approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) with drip edge.
8. Lap end joints at least two corrugations, but not less than 100 mm (4 inches). Seal laps with sealant.
9. Where dowels, reinforcing bars and fastening devices penetrate flashing, seal penetration with sealing compound. Sealing compound is specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
10. Coordinate with other work to set in a bed of mortar above and below flashing so that total thickness of the two layers of mortar and flashing are same as regular mortar joint.
11. Where ends of flashing terminate turn ends up 25 mm (1 inch) and fold corners to form dam extending to wall face in vertical mortar or veneer joint.
12. Turn flashing up not less than 200 mm (8 inch) between masonry or behind exterior veneer.
13. When flashing terminates in reglet extend flashing full depth into reglet and secure with lead or plastic wedges spaced 150 mm (6 inch) on center.
14. Continue flashing around columns:
  - a. Where flashing cannot be inserted in column reglet hold flashing vertical leg against column.
  - b. Counterflash top edge with 75 mm (3 inch) wide strip of saturated cotton unless shown otherwise. Secure cotton strip with roof cement to column. Lap base flashing with cotton strip 38 mm (1 1/2 inch).

- B. Flashing at Top of Concrete Foundation Walls Where concrete is exposed.  
Turn up not less than 200 mm (8 inch) high and into masonry backup mortar joint or reglet in concrete backup as specified.
- C. Flashing at Top of Concrete Floors (except where shelf angles occur):  
Place flashing in horizontal masonry joint not less than 200 mm (8 inch) below floor slab and extend into backup masonry joint at floor slab 38 mm (1 1/2 inch).
- F. Lintel Flashing when not part of shelf angle flashing:
1. Install flashing full length of lintel to nearest vertical joint in masonry over veneer.
  2. Turn ends up 25 mm (one inch) and fold corners to form dam and extend end to face of wall.
  3. Turn back edge up to top of lintel; terminate back edge as specified for back-up wall.
- G. Window Sill Flashing:
1. Install flashing to extend not less than 100 mm (4 inch) beyond ends of sill into vertical joint of masonry or veneer.
  2. Turn back edge up to terminate under window frame.
  3. Turn ends up 25 mm (one inch) and fold corners to form dam and extend to face of wall.
- H. Door Sill Flashing:
1. Install flashing under bottom of plate sills of doors over curbs opening onto roofs. Extend flashing out to form counter flashing or receiver for counter flashing over base flashing. Set in sealant.
  2. Extend sill flashing 200 mm (8 inch) beyond jamb opening. Turn ends up one inch in vertical masonry joint, extend end to face of wall. Join to counter flashing for water tight joint.
  3. Where doors thresholds cover over waterproof membranes install sill flashing over water proof membrane under thresholds. Extend beyond opening to cover exposed portion of waterproof membrane and not less than 150 mm (6 inch) beyond door jamb opening at ends. Turn up approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) under threshold.
- I. Flashing at Masonry or Precast Concrete Copings:
1. Install flashing with drips on both wall faces unless shown otherwise.
  2. Form penetration openings to fit tight against dowel or other item with edge turned up. Seal penetrations with sealant.

### 3.3 BASE FLASHING

- A. Install where roof membrane type base flashing is not used and where shown.
  - 1. Install flashing at intersections of roofs with vertical surfaces or at penetrations through roofs, to provide watertight construction.
  - 2. Install metal flashings and accessories having flanges extending out on top of the built-up roofing before final bituminous coat and roof aggregate is applied.
  - 3. Set flanges in heavy trowel coat of roof cement and nail through flanges into wood nailers over bituminous roofing.
  - 4. Secure flange by nailing through roofing into wood blocking with nails spaced 75 mm (3 inch) on centers or, when flange over 100 mm (4 inch) wide terminate in a 13 mm (1/2 inch) folded edge anchored with cleats spaced 200 mm (8 inch) on center. Secure one end of cleat over nail heads. Lock other end into the seam.
- B. For long runs of base flashings install in lengths of not less than 2400 mm (8 feet) nor more than 3000 mm (ten feet). Install a 75 mm (3 inch) wide slip type, loose lock expansion joint filled with sealant in joints of base flashing sections over 2400 mm (8 feet) in length. Lock and solder corner joints at corners.
- C. Extend base flashing up under counter flashing of roof specialties and accessories or equipment not less than 75 mm (3 inch).

### 3.4 COUNTERFLASHING (CAP FLASHING OR HOODS)

- A. General:
  - 1. Install counterflashing over and in conjunction with installation of base flashings, except as otherwise specified or shown.
  - 2. Install counterflashing to lap base flashings not less than 100 mm (4 inch).
  - 3. Install upper edge or top of counterflashing not less than 225 mm (9 inch) above top of the roofing.
  - 4. Lap joints not less than 100 mm (4 inch). Stagger joints with relation to metal base flashing joints.
  - 5. Use surface applied counterflashing on existing surfaces and new work where not possible to integrate into item.
  - 6. When fastening to concrete or masonry, use screws driven in expansion shields set in concrete or masonry. Use screws to wood and sheet metal. Set fasteners in mortar joints of masonry work.

**B. One Piece Counterflashing:**

1. Where flashing is installed at new masonry, coordinate to insure proper height, embed in mortar, and end lap.
2. Where flashing is installed in reglet in concrete insert upper edge into reglet. Hold flashing in place with lead wedges spaced not more than 200 mm (8 inch) apart. Fill joint with sealant.
3. Where flashing is surface mounted on flat surfaces.
  - a. When top edge is double folded anchor flat portion below sealant "V" joint with fasteners spaced not over 400 mm (16 inch) on center:
    - 1) Locate fasteners in masonry mortar joints.
    - 2) Use screws to sheet metal or wood.
  - b. Fill joint at top with sealant.
4. Where flashing or hood is mounted on pipe.
  - a. Secure with draw band tight against pipe.
  - b. Set hood and secure to pipe with a one by 25 mm x 3 mm (1 x 1/8 inch) bolt on stainless steel draw band type clamp, or a stainless worm gear type clamp.
  - c. Completely fill joint at top with sealant.

**C. Two-Piece Counterflashing:**

1. Where receiver is installed at new masonry coordinate to insure proper height, embed in mortar, and lap.
2. Surface applied type receiver:
  - a. Secure to face construction in accordance, with manufacturers instructions.
  - b. Completely fill space at the top edge of receiver with sealant.
3. Insert counter flashing in receiver in accordance with fabricator or manufacturer's instructions and to fit tight against base flashing.

D. Where vented edge occur install so lower edge of counterflashing is against base flashing.

E. When counter flashing is a component of other flashing install as shown.

**3.5 REGLETS**

- A. Install reglets in a manner to provide a watertight installation.
- B. Locate reglets not less than 225 mm (9 inch) nor more than 400 mm (16 inch) above roofing, and not less than 125 mm (5 inch) nor more than 325 mm (13 inch) above cant strip.

- C. Butt and align end joints of each section of reglet and securely hold in position until concrete or mortar are hardened:
  - 1. Coordinate reglets for anchorage into concrete with formwork construction.
  - 2. Coordinate reglets for masonry to locate horizontally into mortar joints.

### **3.7 COPINGS**

#### **A. General:**

- 1. On walls topped with a wood plank, install a continuous edge strip on the front and rear edge of the plank. Lock the coping to the edge strip with a 19 mm (3/4 inch) loose lock seam.
- 2. Where shown turn down roof side of coping and extend down over base flashing as specified for counter-flashing. Secure counter-flashing to lock strip in coping at continuous cleat.
- 3. Install ends adjoining existing construction so as to form space for installation of sealants. Sealant is specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.

#### **B. Aluminum Coping:**

- 1. Install with 6 mm (1/4 inch) joint between ends of coping sections.
- 2. Install joint covers, centered at each joint, and securely lock in place.

#### **C. Stainless steel Copings:**

- 1. Join ends of sheets by a 19 mm (3/4 inch) locked and soldered seam, except at intervals of 9600 mm (32 feet), provide a 38 mm (1 1/2 inch) loose locked expansion joint filled with sealant or mastic.
- 2. At straight runs between 7200 mm (24 feet) and 19200 mm (64 feet) locate expansion joint at center.
- 3. At straight runs that exceed 9600 mm (32 feet) and form the leg of a corner locate the expansion joint not more than 4800 mm (16 feet) from the corner.

### **3.9 ENGINE EXHAUST PIPE OR STACK FLASHING**

- A. Set collar where shown and secure roof tabs or flange of collar to structural deck with 13 mm (1/2 inch) diameter bolts.
- B. Set flange of sleeve base flashing not less than 100 mm (4 inch) beyond collar on all sides as specified for base flashing.

- C. Install hood to above the top of the sleeve 50 mm (2 inch) and to extend from sleeve same distance as space between collar and sleeve beyond edge not sleeve:
1. Install insect screen to fit between bottom edge of hood and side of sleeve.
  2. Set collar of hood in high temperature sealant and secure with one by 3 mm (1/8 inch) bolt on stainless steel draw band type, or stainless steel worm gear type clamp. Install sealant at top of head.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 72 00  
ROOF ACCESSORIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies copings and fascias.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Color and texture of finish: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES
- B. Sealant material and installation: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- C. Rigid insulations for roofing: Section 07 22 00, ROOF AND DECK INSULATION

**1.3 QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. All roof accessories shall be the products of manufacturers regularly engaged in producing the kinds of products specified.
- B. Each accessory type shall be the same and be made by the same manufacturer.
- C. Each accessory shall be completely assembled to the greatest extent possible before delivery to the site.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Samples: Representative sample panel of color anodized aluminum not less than 100 mm X 100 mm (four by four inches), except extrusions shall be a width not less than section to be used. Sample shall show coating with integral color and texture and shall include manufacturer's identifying label.
- C. Shop Drawings: Each item specified showing design, details of construction, installation and fastenings.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Each item specified.
- E. Certificates: Stating that aluminum has been given specified thickness of anodizing.

**1.5 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extend referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Material (ASTM):
  - B209/209M-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy-Sheet and Plate
  - B221/221M-08.....Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
  - C612-10.....Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation

D1187-97 (R2002).....Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective  
Coatings for Metal

C. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):  
AMP 500-06.....Metal Finishes Manual

D. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):  
2605-11.....High Performance Organic Coatings on  
Architectural Extrusions and Panels.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221/B221M.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209/B209M.
- C. Galvanized Sheet Steel: ASTM A526/A526M; G-90 coating.
- D. Insulation: ASTM C612, Class 1 or 2.
- E. Asphalt Coating: ASTM D 1187, Type I, quick setting.

### **2.2 COPINGS**

- A. Fabricate of aluminum not less than 0.063 inch thick.
- B. Turn outer edges down each face of wall as shown.
- C. Maximum lengths of 3000 mm (10 feet).
- D. Shop fabricate external and internal corners as one piece assemblies with not less than 300 mm (12 inch) leg lengths.
- E. Provide 100 mm (four inch) wide 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick watertight joint covers.
- F. Provide anchor gutter bar of 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick with anchor holes formed for underside of joint.
- G. Provide concealed guttered splice plate of 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick with butyl or other resilient seal strips anchored to splice plate for underside of joint. Use galvanized steel anchor plate providing compression spring anchoring of coping cover.
- H. Finish: Anodized or Fluorocarbon.

### **2.3 EXTRUDED ALUMINUM FASCIAS**

- A. Fabricate of aluminum not less than 2 mm (0.078 inch) thick.
- B. Turn fascia down face of wall and up above roof as shown.
- C. Maximum lengths of 3000 mm (10-feet).
- D. Shop fabricate external and internal corners as one piece assemblies with not less than 300 mm (12 inch) leg lengths.
- E. Provide 100 mm (four inch) wide 2 mm (0.078 inch) thick watertight joint covers with 150 mm (six inch) wide 0.8 mm (0.030 inch) thick underside joint flashing.



**2.4 EXTRUDED ALUMINUM FASCIA-CANT SYSTEM**

- A. The fascia-cant system consists of three pieces, an extruded aluminum fascia, a galvanized steel cant, and an aluminum compression clamp.
- B. Furnish in stock lengths of not more than 3000 mm (10 feet) long.
- C. Form fascia from not less than 2 mm (0.070 inch) thick aluminum. Provide four inch wide 0.8 mm (0.032-inch) thick concealed sheet aluminum joint cover plates in back of fascia.
- D. Form cant strip from galvanized steel not less than 0.8 mm (0.0299 inch) thick, to profile shown and design to hold lower edge of the fascia.
- E. Form compression clamp of not less than 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick aluminum designed to hold the top edge of the fascia and the built-up flashing.
- F. Internal and external corners:
  - 1. Factory fabricate and fully weld mitered joints.
  - 2. Furnish corner sections in manufacturers standard sizes
- G. Finish on aluminum: anodized and fluorocarbon

**2.5 EXTRUDED ALUMINUM ROOF EXPANSION JOINT COVERS**

- A. Fabricate in 3000 mm (10 foot) lengths with fastener openings slotting for expansion not over 600 mm (24 inch) centers.
- B. Provide four-way expansion, for joint widths shown.
- C. Mill finish on aluminum.
- D. Form waterstop or moisture seals of continuous sheets of neoprene, not less than 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick.
- E. Fabricate corners as one piece assembly with mitered and welded joint and least dimension legs not less than 300 mm (12 inches) long.
- F. Factory fabricate end caps and transitions to insure waterproof assembly.
- G. Three piece assembly:
  - 1. Roof expansion joint cover system consists of an extruded aluminum cover, extruded frame or curb vertical section, galvanized steel cant, and aluminum compression clamp counter flashing, complete with moisture seals. Form cover and vertical section from extruded aluminum, 2 mm (0.080 inch) minimum thickness with spring stainless steel tension or pivot bar.
  - 2. Form cant from galvanized steel not less than 0.8 (0.029 inch) thick formed to profile shown.
  - 3. Form splice plates of not less than 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick aluminum sheet.

4. Form counter flashing member of 1.3 mm (0.050 inch) thick sheet aluminum, secured with screws to the top edge of the vertical section and providing compression clamp over base flashing.
  5. Provide compression gasket separating cover from curb bearing.
- H. Two piece assembly:
1. Roof expansion joint system consists of an extruded aluminum cover combination extruded aluminum frame or curb with integral adjustable counter flashing flange, and moisture seals.
  2. Form cover from extruded aluminum 2 mm (0.078 inch) minimum thickness.
  3. Form cover anchor system of stainless steel pivot bar.
  4. Form frame assembly of not less than 2 mm (0.076 inch) aluminum except for flashing portion.
  5. Provide compression gasket separating cover from curb at bearing.

## **2.6 FINISH**

- A. In accordance with NAAMM Amp 500-505.
- B. Aluminum, Mill Finish: AA-MIX, as fabricated.
- C. Aluminum, Clear Finish: AA-C22A41 medium matte, clear anodic coating, or Class 1, Architectural, 0.7 mils thick. D. Aluminum Colored Finish: AA-C22A42 (anodized or AA0C22A44 (electrolytically deposited metallic compound) medium matte, integrally colored coating, Class 1, Architectural, 0.7 mils thick
- D. Fluorocarbon Finish: AAMA 2605.2 high performance organic coating.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install roof accessories where shown.
- B. Secure with fasteners in accordance with manufacture's printed installation instructions and approved shop drawings unless shown otherwise.
- C. Coordinate to install insulation where shown; see Section 07 22 00, ROOF AND DECK INSULATION.
- D. Comply with section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS to install sealants where manufactures installation instructions require sealant.
- E. Coordinate with roofing work for installation of items in sequence to prevent water infiltration.
- F. Gravel Stops and Fascias:
  1. Install gravel stops and fascia with butt joints with approximately 6 mm (1/4 inch) space for expansion.

2. Over each joint provide cover plates of sheet aluminum, complete with concealed sheet aluminum flashing, centered under each joint.
3. Lap cover plates and concealed flashing over the gravel stop and fascia not less than four inches.
4. Extend concealed flashing over built-up roofing, embed in roof cement and turn down over face of blocking at roof edge.

G. Aluminum Coping:

1. Install sections of coping with approximately 6 mm (1/4-inch) space between ends of sections.
2. Center joint gutter bar and covers at joints and securely lock in place.
3. When snap-on system is used insure front and back edges are locked in place.

H. Fascia-Cant System:

1. Install galvanized steel cant; coordinate with roofing work and after completion of roofing work install extruded aluminum fascia, concealed joint cover plate, and aluminum compression clamp, where shown.
2. Install system to allow for expansion and contraction with 6 mm (1/4 inch) space between extruded aluminum members and galvanized steel cant as required by manufacturer of system.
3. Offset joints in extruded aluminum members from galvanized steel cant joints.

I. Expansion Joint Covers:

1. Install to terminate base flashing 200 mm (8 inches) above roof.
2. Install moisture seals to drain water to outlets that do not permit water to enter buildings construction.
3. Use stainless steel screws when exposed.
4. Three piece assembly:
  - a. Install curb section with screws to wood blocking, allowing 6 mm (1/4 inch) at butt joints between sections with splice plate at joint.
  - b. Install cant to wood blocking by nailing along horizontal flange every 150 mm (6 inches), with galvanized roofing nails 25 mm (one inch) long.
  - c. After completion of base flashing install cap flashing and compression clamp and fasten to the curb or metal cant with stainless steel self-tapping screws with neoprene washers under head spaced approximately 450 mm (18 inches) on center.

- d. Install expansion joint cover with a 6 mm (1/4 inch) wide end joints.
  - e. Install over end joint a cover plate complete with concealed aluminum flashing, centered under each joint. Fabricate flashing to lap cover not less than four inches.
5. Two piece assembly:
- a. Install curb section with screws allowing 6 mm (1/4 inch) space at end joints with splice plate at joint.
  - b. After completion of base flashing bend down cap flashing flange and secure to blocking with screws.
  - c. Install expansion joint cover with 6 mm (1/4 inch) wide space at end joints and tension bars at 600 mm (24 inches) on center.
  - d. Install cover plates with formed aluminum flashing concealed and centered on joint. Flashing to lap cover not less than 100 mm (4 inches).

### **3.2 PROTECTION OF ALUMINUM**

- A. Provide protection for aluminum against galvanic action wherever dissimilar materials are in contact, by painting the contact surfaces of the dissimilar material with two coats of asphalt coating (complete coverage), or by separating the contact surfaces with a preformed neoprene tape having pressure sensitive adhesive coating on side.
- B. Paint aluminum in contact with wood, concrete and masonry, or other absorptive materials, that may become repeatedly wet, with two coats of asphalt coating.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

Adjust expansion joints to close tightly and be watertight; insuring maximum allowance for building movement.

### **3.4 PROTECTION**

Protect roof accessories from damage during installation and after completion of the work from subsequent construction.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 92 00  
JOINT SEALANTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

Section covers all sealant and caulking materials and their application, wherever required for complete installation of building materials or systems.

**1.2 RELATED WORK:**

- A. Sealing of site work concrete paving: Section 32 05 23, CEMENT AND CONCRETE FOR EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS.
- B. Masonry control and expansion joint: Section 04 20 00, UNIT MASONRY.
- D. Glazing: Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
- E. Glazed aluminum curtain wall: Section 08 44 13, GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS.
- G. Mechanical Work: Section 22 05 11, COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING  
Section 23 05 11, COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC AND STEAM GENERATION.

**1.3 QUALITY CONTROL:**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has specialized in installing joint sealants similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in joint-sealant installations with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Product Testing: Obtain test results from a qualified testing agency based on testing current sealant formulations within a 12-month period.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021.
  - 2. Test elastomeric joint sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C920, and where applicable, to other standard test methods.
  - 4. Test other joint sealants for compliance with requirements indicated by referencing standard specifications and test methods.
- E. VOC: Acrylic latex and Silicon sealants shall have less than 50g/l VOC content.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's installation instructions for each product used.
- C. Cured samples of exposed sealants for each color where required to match adjacent material.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Caulking compound
  - 2. Primers
  - 3. Sealing compound, each type, including compatibility when different sealants are in contact with each other.

**1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS:**

- A. Environmental Limitations:
  - 1. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under following conditions:
    - a. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint sealant manufacturer or are below 4.4 °C (40 °F).
    - b. When joint substrates are wet.
- B. Joint-Width Conditions:
  - 1. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
- C. Joint-Substrate Conditions:
  - 1. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants until contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion are removed from joint substrates.

**1.6 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE:**

- A. Deliver materials in manufacturers' original unopened containers, with brand names, date of manufacture, shelf life, and material designation clearly marked thereon.
- B. Carefully handle and store to prevent inclusion of foreign materials.
- C. Do not subject to sustained temperatures exceeding 32° C (90° F) or less than 5° C (40° F).

**1.7 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Definitions of terms in accordance with ASTM C717 and as specified.
- B. Back-up Rod: A type of sealant backing.

- C. Bond Breakers: A type of sealant backing.
- D. Filler: A sealant backing used behind a back-up rod.

**1.8 WARRANTY:**

- A. Warranty exterior sealing against leaks, adhesion, and cohesive failure, and subject to terms of "Warranty of Construction", FAR clause 52.246-21, except that warranty period shall be extended to two years.
- B. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Government of other rights Government may have under other provisions of Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of Contract Documents.

**1.9 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - C509-06.....Elastomeric Cellular Preformed Gasket and Sealing Material.
  - C612-10.....Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation.
  - C717-10.....Standard Terminology of Building Seals and Sealants.
  - C834-10.....Latex Sealants.
  - C919-08.....Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications.
  - C920-10.....Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
  - C1021-08.....Laboratories Engaged in Testing of Building Sealants.
  - C1193-09.....Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants.
  - C1330-02 (R2007).....Cylindrical Sealant Backing for Use with Cold Liquid Applied Sealants.
  - D1056-07.....Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials—Sponge or Expanded Rubber.
  - E84-09.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- C. Sealant, Waterproofing and Restoration Institute (SWRI).  
The Professionals' Guide

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SEALANTS:**

## A. S-1:

1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.
2. Type M.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 20-40

## B. S-2:

1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.
2. Type M.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade P.
5. Shore A hardness of 25-40.

## C. S-3:

1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25, joint movement range of plus or minus 50 percent.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 15-25.
6. Minimum elongation of 700 percent.

## D. S-4:

1. ASTM C920 polyurethane or polysulfide.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25-40.

## E. S-5:

1. ASTM C920, polyurethane or polysulfide.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade P.
5. Shore hardness of 15-45.

## F. S-6:

1. ASTM C920, silicone, neutral cure.
2. Type S.
3. Class: Joint movement range of plus 100 percent to minus 50 percent.



4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 15-20.
6. Minimum elongation of 1200 percent.

## G. S-7:

1. ASTM C920, silicone, neutral cure.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25-30.
6. Structural glazing application.

## H. S-8:

1. ASTM C920, silicone, acetoxycure.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25-30.
6. Structural glazing application.

## I. S-9:

1. ASTM C920 silicone.
2. Type S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25-30.
6. Non-yellowing, mildew resistant.

## J. S-10:

1. ASTM C920, coal tar extended fuel resistance polyurethane.
2. Type M/S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade P/NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 15-20.

## K. S-11:

1. ASTM C920 polyurethane.
2. Type M/S.
3. Class 25.
4. Grade P/NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 35 to 50.

## L. S-12:

1. ASTM C920, polyurethane.
2. Type M/S.
3. Class 25, joint movement range of plus or minus 50 percent.
4. Grade P/NS.
5. Shore A hardness of 25 to 50.

**2.2 CAULKING COMPOUND:**

- A. C-1: ASTM C834, acrylic latex.
- B. C-2: One component acoustical caulking, non drying, non hardening, synthetic rubber.

**2.3 COLOR:**

- A. Sealants used with exposed masonry shall match color of mortar joints.
- B. Sealants used with unpainted concrete shall match color of adjacent concrete.
- C. Color of sealants for other locations shall be light gray or aluminum, unless specified otherwise.
- D. Caulking shall be light gray or white, unless specified otherwise.

**2.4 JOINT SEALANT BACKING:**

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, of type indicated below and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance:
  1. Type C: Closed-cell material with a surface skin.
- C. Elastomeric Tubing Sealant Backings: Neoprene, butyl, EPDM, or silicone tubing complying with ASTM D1056, nonabsorbent to water and gas, and capable of remaining resilient at temperatures down to minus 32° C (minus 26° F). Provide products with low compression set and of size and shape to provide a secondary seal, to control sealant depth, and otherwise contribute to optimum sealant performance.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

**2.5 FILLER:**

- A. Mineral fiber board: ASTM C612, Class 1.
- B. Thickness same as joint width.
- C. Depth to fill void completely behind back-up rod.

**2.6 PRIMER:**

- A. As recommended by manufacturer of caulking or sealant material.
- B. Stain free type.

**2.7 CLEANERS-NON POURIOUS SURFACES:**

Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturer of sealants and sealant backing material, free of oily residues and other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent non-porous surfaces and formulated to promote adhesion of sealant and substrates.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSPECTION:**

- A. Inspect substrate surface for bond breaker contamination and unsound materials at adherent faces of sealant.
- B. Coordinate for repair and resolution of unsound substrate materials.
- C. Inspect for uniform joint widths and that dimensions are within tolerance established by sealant manufacturer.

**3.2 PREPARATIONS:**

- A. Prepare joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and SWRI.
- B. Clean surfaces of joint to receive caulking or sealants leaving joint dry to the touch, free from frost, moisture, grease, oil, wax, lacquer paint, or other foreign matter that would tend to destroy or impair adhesion.
  - 1. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants.
  - 2. Remove loose particles remaining from above cleaning operations by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint surfaces include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

4. Clean nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants.
  - a. Metal.
  - b. Glass.
  - c. Porcelain enamel.
  - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- C. Do not cut or damage joint edges.
- D. Apply masking tape to face of surfaces adjacent to joints before applying primers, caulking, or sealing compounds.
  1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- E. Apply primer to sides of joints wherever required by compound manufacturer's printed instructions.
  1. Apply primer prior to installation of back-up rod or bond breaker tape.
  2. Use brush or other approved means that will reach all parts of joints.
- F. Take all necessary steps to prevent three sided adhesion of sealants.

### **3.3 BACKING INSTALLATION:**

- A. Install back-up material, to form joints enclosed on three sides as required for specified depth of sealant.
- B. Where deep joints occur, install filler to fill space behind the back-up rod and position the rod at proper depth.
- C. Cut fillers installed by others to proper depth for installation of back-up rod and sealants.
- D. Install back-up rod, without puncturing the material, to a uniform depth, within plus or minus 3 mm (1/8 inch) for sealant depths specified.
- E. Where space for back-up rod does not exist, install bond breaker tape strip at bottom (or back) of joint so sealant bonds only to two opposing surfaces.
- F. Take all necessary steps to prevent three sided adhesion of sealants.

### **3.4 SEALANT DEPTHS AND GEOMETRY:**

- A. At widths up to 6 mm (1/4 inch), sealant depth equal to width.

- B. At widths over 6 mm (1/4 inch), sealant depth 1/2 of width up to 13 mm (1/2 inch) maximum depth at center of joint with sealant thickness at center of joint approximately 1/2 of depth at adhesion surface.

### **3.5 INSTALLATION:**

A. General:

1. Apply sealants and caulking only when ambient temperature is between 5° C and 38° C (40° and 100° F).
2. Do not use polysulfide base sealants where sealant may be exposed to fumes from bituminous materials, or where water vapor in continuous contact with cementitious materials may be present.
3. Do not use sealant type listed by manufacture as not suitable for use in locations specified.
4. Apply caulking and sealing compound in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
5. Avoid dropping or smearing compound on adjacent surfaces.
6. Fill joints solidly with compound and finish compound smooth.
7. Tool joints to concave surface unless shown or specified otherwise.
8. Finish paving or floor joints flush unless joint is otherwise detailed.
9. Apply compounds with nozzle size to fit joint width.
10. Test sealants for compatibility with each other and substrate. Use only compatible sealant.

- B. For application of sealants, follow requirements of ASTM C1193 unless specified otherwise.

- C. Where gypsum board partitions are of sound rated, fire rated, or smoke barrier construction, follow requirements of ASTM C919 only to seal all cut-outs and intersections with the adjoining construction unless specified otherwise.

1. Apply a 6 mm (1/4 inch) minimum bead of sealant each side of runners (tracks), including those used at partition intersections with dissimilar wall construction.
2. Coordinate with application of gypsum board to install sealant immediately prior to application of gypsum board.
3. Partition intersections: Seal edges of face layer of gypsum board abutting intersecting partitions, before taping and finishing or application of veneer plaster-joint reinforcing.

4. Openings: Apply a 6 mm (1/4 inch) bead of sealant around all cut-outs to seal openings of electrical boxes, ducts, pipes and similar penetrations. To seal electrical boxes, seal sides and backs.
5. Control Joints: Before control joints are installed, apply sealant in back of control joint to reduce flanking path for sound through control joint.

### **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL:**

- B. Inspect joints for complete fill, for absence of voids, and for joint configuration complying with specified requirements. Record results in a field adhesion test log.
- C. Inspect tested joints and report on following:
  1. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate.
  2. Compare these results to determine if adhesion passes sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
  3. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free from voids.
  4. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
- D. Record test results in a field adhesion test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant fill, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
- E. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used to originally seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and new sealant contacts original sealant.
- F. Evaluation of Field-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

**3.7 CLEANING:**

- A. Fresh compound accidentally smeared on adjoining surfaces: Scrape off immediately and rub clean with a solvent as recommended by the caulking or sealant manufacturer.
- B. After filling and finishing joints, remove masking tape.
- C. Leave adjacent surfaces in a clean and unstained condition.

**3.8 LOCATIONS:**

- A. Exterior Building Joints, Horizontal and Vertical:
  - 1. Metal to Metal: Type S-1, S-2
  - 2. Metal to Masonry Type S-1
  - 3. Masonry to Masonry or Stone: Type S-1
  - 6. Threshold Setting Bed: Type S-1, S-3, S-4
  - 7. Masonry Expansion and Control Joints: Type S-6
- B. Metal Reglets and Flashings:
  - 1. Flashings to Wall: Type S-6
  - 2. Metal to Metal: Type S-6
- D. Horizontal Traffic Joints:
  - 1. Concrete Paving, Unit Pavers: Type S-11 or S-12
  - 2. Garage/Parking Decks: Type S-10
- F. Interior Caulking:
  - 1. Typical Narrow Joint 6 mm, (1/4 inch) or less at Walls and Adjacent Components: Types C-1, C-2 and C-3.
  - 2. Perimeter of Doors, Windows, Access Panels which Adjoin Concrete or Masonry Surfaces: Types C-1, C-2 and C-3.
  - 3. Joints at Masonry Walls and Columns, Piers, Concrete Walls or Exterior Walls: Types C-1, C-2 and C-3.
  - 5. Exposed Isolation Joints at Top of Full Height Walls: Types C-1, C-2 and C-3.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 07 95 13  
EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Section specifies floor, wall and ceiling and building expansion joint assemblies.
- B. Types of assemblies:
  - Metal Plate Cover
  - Elastomeric Joint Covers
  - Preformed Elastomeric Sealant Joint

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Sheet Metal Expansion Joint Seals: Section 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
- B. Roof Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies: Section 07 72 00, ROOF ACCESSORIES.
- C. Color of Elastomer Inserts, Filler Strips, Exterior Wall Seals and Metal Finishes: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES
- D. Steel Plate Expansion Joint Covers: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Project Conditions:
  - 1. Check actual locations of walls and other construction, to which work must fit, by accurate field measurements before fabrication.
  - 2. Show recorded measurements on final shop drawings.
- B. Fire tests performed by Factory Mutual, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., Warnock Hersey or other approved independent testing laboratory.

**1.4 DELIVERY STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Take care in handling of materials so as not to injure finished surface and components.
- B. Store materials under cover in a dry and clean location off the ground.
- C. Remove materials which are damaged or otherwise not suitable for installation from job site and replace with acceptable materials.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:



1. Submit copies of manufacturer's current literature and data for each item specified.
  2. Clearly indicate movement capability of cover assemblies and suitability of material used in exterior seals for ultraviolet exposure.
- C. Certificates: Material test reports from approved independent testing laboratory indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance of fire-rated expansion joint assemblies with requirements specified.
- D. Shop Drawings:
1. Showing full extent of expansion joint cover assemblies; include large-scale details indicating profiles of each type of expansion joint cover assembly, splice joints between sections, joiners with other type assemblies, special end conditions, anchorages, fasteners, and relationship to adjoining work and finishes.
  2. Include description of materials and finishes and installation instructions.
- E. Samples:
1. Samples of each type and color of metal finish on metal of same thickness and alloy used in work.
  2. Samples of each type and color of flexible seal used in work.

#### **1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed form part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referred to in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A36/A36M-08.....Structural Steel
- A167-99 (R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
- A283/A283M-07.....Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon  
Steel Plates
- A786/A786M-05 (R2009) ....Rolled Steel Floor Plates
- B36/B36M-08.....Brass, Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Rolled Bar
- B121-01 (R2006).....Leaded Brass Plate, Sheet, Strip and Rolled Bar
- B209M-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate  
(Metric)
- B221M-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars,  
Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes (Metric)

- B455-10.....Copper-Zinc Lead Alloy (Leaded Brass) Extruded Shapes
- C864-05.....Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers
- C920-11.....Elastomeric Joint Sealants
- D1187-97 (R2002).....Asphalt Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal
- D2287-96 (R2010).....Non-rigid Vinyl Chloride Polymer and Copolymer Molding and Extrusion Compounds
- E119-10.....Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
- E814-11.....Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops
- C. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec):
- TT-P-645B.....Primer, Paint, Zinc-Molybdate, Alkyd Type
- D. The National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
- AMP 500 Series.....Metal Finishes Manual.
- E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
- 251-06.....Tests of Fire Endurance of Building Construction and Materials
- F. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
- 263-11.....Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304.
- B. Structural Steel Shapes: ASTM A36.
- C. Steel Plate: ASTM A283, Grade C.
- D. Rolled Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A786.
- E. Aluminum:
1. Extruded: ASTM B221, alloy 6063-T5.
  2. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B209, alloy 6061-T6.
- H. Elastomeric Sealant:
1. ASTM C920, polyurethane.
  2. Type.
  3. Class 25.
  4. Grade P or NS.
  5. Shore A hardness 25, unless specified otherwise.

## I. Thermoplastic Rubber:

1. ASTM C864.
2. Dense Neoprene or other material standard with expansion joint manufacturers having the same physical properties.

## J. Vinyl Invertor Sealant Waterstops: Manufacturers' standard shapes and grade.

## K. Zinc-Molybdate Primer: Fed. Spec. TT-P-645.

## L. Accessories:

1. Manufacturer's standard anchors, fasteners, set screws, spaces, flexible secondary water stops or seals and filler materials, drain tubes, adhesive and other accessories as indicated or required for complete installations.
2. Compatible with materials in contact.
3. Water stops.

**2.2 FABRICATION**

## A. General:

1. Use ceiling and wall expansion joint cover assemblies of same design as floor to wall and floor to floor expansion joint cover assemblies. Unless shown otherwise.
2. Provide expansion joint cover assemblies of design, basic profile, materials and operation indicated required to accommodate joint size variations in adjacent surfaces, and as required for anticipated structural movement.
3. Deliver to job site ready for use and fabricated in as large sections and assemblies as practical. Assemblies identical to submitted and reviewed shop drawings, samples and certificates.
4. Furnish units in longest practicable lengths to minimize number of end joints. Provide mitered corners where joint changes directions or abuts other materials.
5. Include closure materials and transition pieces, tee-joints, corners, curbs, cross-connections and other assemblies.
6. Seal Strip factory - formed and bonded to metal frames and anchor members.
7. Compression Seals: Prefabricate from thermoplastic rubber or dense neoprene to sizes and approximate profiles shown.

## B. Floor-to-Floor Metal Plate Joints:

1. Frames on each side of joint designed to support cover plate of design shown.
  - a. Continuous frame designed to finish flush with adjacent floor of profile indicated with seating surface and raised floor rim to accommodate flooring.
  - b. Provide concealed bolt and steel anchors for embedment in concrete.
  - c. Designed for filler materials between raised rim of frame and edge of cover plate where shown.
  - d. Frame and cover plates of some metal where exposed.
    - 1) Design cover plates to support 180 Kg (400 lbs) per 0.3 square meters (1-square foot).
    - 2) Cover plates free of rattle due to traffic.
    - 3) No gaps or budges occur on filler material during design movement of joint.
    - 4) Provide manufacturer's continuous standard flexible vinyl water stop under floor joint cover assemblies.

## C. Floor-to-Wall Metal Plate Joints:

1. Provide one frame on floor side of joint only. Provide wall side frame where required by manufacturer's design.
2. Angle Cover Plates: Provide angle cover plates for joints to wall with countersunk flat-head exposed fasteners for securing to wall unless shown otherwise.
3. Space fasteners as recommended by manufacturer.
4. Match cover of adjacent floor to floor cover.

## E. Exterior Wall Joint Assemblies:

1. Variable movement with seal designed to prevent water infiltration.
2. Use vinyl seal strip as secondary seal behind primary seal.
3. Cover Plate Assemblies:
  - a. Surface mounted cover plate.
  - b. Concealed frame for fastening to wall on one side of joint.
  - c. Extend cover to lap each side of joint and to permit free movement on one side.
  - d. Provide concealed attachment of cover to frame for cover with cover in close contact with adjacent finish surfaces.
  - e. Use angle cover plate of intersection of walls.

4. Extruded thermoplastic rubber joint assemblies.
  - a. Aluminum frames both sides of joint.
    - 1) Designed to receive flexible rubber primary seal on exposed face after installation of frame.
    - 2) Designed to receive continuous secondary vinyl sheet seal.
    - 3) Anchor spaced at ends and not over 600 mm (24-inches).
  - b. Variable movement extruded rubber primary seal designed to remain in aluminum frame, throughout movement of joint.
    - 1) Flush mounted seal minimum 3 mm (0.125-inch) thick with dual movement grooves designed for plus or minus 50 percent, movement of joint width.
  - c. Provide factory heat welded transitions where directional changes occur to ensure a watertight system.
  - d. Provide pantographic wind load supports, maximum 2400 mm (8 feet) on center to support seal systems of 300 mm (12-inches) and wider.

F. Garage Floor Joint Cover Plate:

1. Steel plate not less than 9 mm (3/8-inch) with edges beveled, smooth finish, drilled for counterwork screw at ends and not over 600 mm (24-inches) o.c.
2. Angle edge frame with anchors at ends and not over 600 mm (24-inches) between end anchors.
3. Use stud bolt anchors not less than 200 mm (4-inches) long and 9 mm (3/8-inch) diameter welded to angle.
4. Angle size as shown.
5. Drill and top one angle for screws from cover plate.

G. Preformed Sealant Joint: Factory installed elastomeric sealant between extruded aluminum angle frame both sides.

1. Elastomeric Sealant: Two part polyurethane sealant with movement capability of +/- 25% of joint width per ASTM-C-920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Shore A hardness of 25+/-5.
  - a. Color:
2. Frame: Extruded Aluminum: anodized.
3. Anticipated movement: (+/- 2").

## 2.3 METAL FINISHES

A. General:

1. Apply finishes in factory after products are fabricated.

2. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces with protective covering before shipment.

B. Stainless Steel: NAAMM AMP 503, finish No. 2B.

C. Carbon Steel: NAAMM AMP 504, Galvanized 690.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

A. Manufacturer's representative shall make a thorough examination of surfaces receiving work of this section.

B. Before starting installation, notify prime contractor of defects which would affect satisfactory completion of work.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

A. Verify measurements and dimensions at job site and cooperate in coordination and scheduling of work with work of related trades.

B. Give particular attention to installation of items embedded in concrete and masonry so as not to delay job progress.

C. Provide templates to related trade for location of support and anchorage items.

#### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

A. Install in accordance with manufacturers installation instructions unless specified otherwise.

B. Provide anchorage devices and fasteners for securing expansion joint assemblies to in-place construction including threaded fasteners with drilled-in fasteners for masonry and concrete where anchoring members are not embedded in concrete. Provide metal fasteners of type and size to suit type of construction indicated and provide for secure attachment of expansion joint cover assemblies.

C. Perform cutting, drilling and fitting required for installation of expansion joint cover assemblies.

D. Install joint cover assemblies in true alignment and proper relationship to expansion joint opening and adjoining finished surfaces measured from established lines and levels.

E. Allow for thermal expansion and contraction of metal to avoid buckling.

F. Set floor covers at elevations flush with adjacent finished floor materials unless shown otherwise.

G. Material and method of grouting floor frames set in prepared recesses in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

H. Locate wall, ceiling and soffit covers in continuous contact with adjacent surfaces. Securely attach in place with required accessories.

- I. Locate anchors at interval recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 75 mm (3-inches) from each ends, and, not more than 600 mm (24-inches) on centers.
- J. Maintain continuity of expansion joint cover assemblies with end joints held to a minimum and metal members aligned mechanically using splice joints.
- K. Cut and fit ends to produce joints that will accommodate thermal expansion and contraction of metal to avoid buckling of frames or plates.
- L. Flush Metal Cover Plates:
  - 1. Secure flexible filler between frames so that it will compress and expand.
  - 2. Adhere flexible filler materials to frames with adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape as recommended by manufacturer.
- M. Waterstops:
  - 1. Install in conjunction with floor joints and where shown, run continuously to prevent water damage to finish spaces.
  - 2. Provide seal with frame to prevent water leakage.
  - 3. Provide outlet tubes from waterstops to drain to prevent damage to finish spaces.
- N. Fire Barriers:
  - 1. Install in compliance with tested assembly.
  - 2. Install in floors and in fire rated walls.
  - 3. Use fire barrier sealant or caulk supplied with system.
- O. Sealants:

Install to prevent water and air infiltration.
- P. Vertical Exterior Extruded Thermoplastic Rubber.
  - 1. Install side frames mounted on sealant or butyl caulk tape with appropriate anchors 600 mm (24 inches) on center complete with independent continuous PVC back seal.
  - 2. Install primary seals retained in extruded aluminum side frames.
- Q. Installation of Extruded Thermoplastic Rubber or Seals:
  - 1. For straight sections, provide preformed seals in continuous lengths.
  - 2. Vulcanize or heat-seal field splice joints to provide watertight joints using manufacturer's recommended procedures.
- R. Installation of Preformed Elastomeric Sealant Joint:
  - 1. Locate joint directly over joints in wall or floor substrates.

2. Full length shall be fastened to substrate using a construction adhesive.
3. Install flush or slightly below finish material.

**3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Take proper precautions to protect the expansion joint covers from damage after they are in place.
- B. Cover floor joints with plywood where wheel traffic occurs.

- - - E N D - - -



**SECTION 08 11 13  
HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies steel doors, steel frames and related components.
- B. Terms relating to steel doors and frames as defined in ANSI A123.1 and as specified.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Frames fabricated of structural steel: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- B. Aluminum frames entrance work: Section 08 41 13, ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS.
- D. Overhead doors including loading docks: Section 08 33 00, COILING DOORS AND GRILLES.
- F. Door Hardware: Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- G. Glazing: Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.

**1.3 TESTING**

An independent testing laboratory shall perform testing.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturers Literature and Data:
  - 1. Fire rated doors and frames, showing conformance with NFPA 80 and Underwriters Laboratory, Inc., or Intertek Testing Services or Factory Mutual fire rating requirements

**1.5 SHIPMENT**

- A. Prior to shipment label each door and frame to show location, size, door swing and other pertinent information.
- B. Fasten temporary steel spreaders across the bottom of each door frame.

**1.6 STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Store doors and frames at the site under cover.
- B. Protect from rust and damage during storage and erection until completion.

**1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):  
L-S-125B.....Screening, Insect, Nonmetallic
- C. Door and Hardware Institute (DHI):  
A115 Series.....Steel Door and Frame Preparation for Hardware,  
Series A115.1 through A115.17 (Dates Vary)
- D. Steel Door Institute (SDI):  
113-01.....Thermal Transmittance of Steel Door and Frame  
Assemblies  
128-1997.....Acoustical Performance for Steel Door and Frame  
Assemblies  
A250.8-03.....Standard Steel Doors and Frames
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):  
A167-99(R2004).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip  
A568/568-M-07.....Steel, Sheet, Carbon, and High-Strength, Low-  
alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled  
A1008-08.....Steel, sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural,  
High Strength Low Alloy and High Strength Low  
Alloy with Improved Formability  
B209/209M-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate  
B221/221M-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars,  
Rods, Wire, Profiles and Tubes  
D1621-04.....Compressive Properties of Rigid Cellular  
Plastics  
D3656-07.....Insect Screening and Louver Cloth Woven from  
Vinyl Coated Glass Yarns  
E90-04.....Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound  
Transmission Loss of Building Partitions
- F. The National Association Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):  
Metal Finishes Manual (1988 Edition)
- G. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):  
80-09.....Fire Doors and Fire Windows
- H. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

## Fire Resistance Directory

- I. Intertek Testing Services (ITS):  
Certifications Listings...Latest Edition
- J. Factory Mutual System (FM):  
Approval Guide

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304; finish, NAAMM Number 4.
- B. Sheet Steel: ASTM A1008, cold-rolled for panels (face sheets) of doors.
- C. Anchors, Fastenings and Accessories: Fastenings anchors, clips connecting members and sleeves from zinc coated steel.
- .
- E. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209/209M.
- F. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221/221M.
- G. Prime Paint: Paint that meets or exceeds the requirements of A250.8.

**2.2 FABRICATION GENERAL**

- A. GENERAL:
  - 1. Follow SDI A250.8 for fabrication of standard steel doors, except as specified otherwise. Doors to receive hardware specified in Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE. Tolerances as per SDI A250.8. Thickness, 44 mm (1-3/4 inches), unless otherwise shown.
  - 2. Close top edge of exterior doors flush and seal to prevent water intrusion.
  - 3. When vertical steel stiffeners are used for core construction, fill spaces between stiffeners with mineral fiber insulation.
- B. Standard Duty Doors: SDI A250.8, Level 1, Model 2 of size and design shown. Use for interior locations only. Do not use for stairwell doors, security doors and detention doors.
- C. Heavy Duty Doors: SDI A250.8, Level 2, Model 2 of size and design shown. Core construction, types b, c, e, or f, for exterior doors.

**2.3 METAL FRAMES**

- A. General:
  - 1. SDI A250.8, 1.3 mm (0.053 inch) thick sheet steel, types and styles as shown or scheduled.

2. Frames for exterior doors: Fabricate from 1.7 mm (0.067 inch) thick galvanized steel conforming to ASTM A525.
  6. Frames for doors specified to have automatic door operators; Security doors (Type 36); service window: minimum 1.7 mm (0.067 inch) thick.
  7. Knocked-down frames are not acceptable.
- B. Reinforcement and Covers:
1. SDI A250.8 for, minimum thickness of steel reinforcement welded to back of frames.
  2. Provide mortar guards securely fastened to back of hardware reinforcements except on lead-lined frames.
- C. Terminated Stops: SDI A250.8.
- D. Glazed Openings
- a. Integral stop on exterior, corridor, or secure side of door.
  - b. Design rabbet width and depth to receive glazing material or panel shown or specified.
- F. Frame Anchors:
1. Floor anchors:
    - a. Where floor fills occur, provide extension type floor anchors to compensate for depth of fill.
    - b. At bottom of jamb use 1.3 mm (0.053 inch) thick steel clip angles welded to jamb and drilled to receive two 6 mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts. Use 50 mm x 50 mm (2 inch by 2 inch) 9 mm by (3/8 inch) clip angle for lead lined frames, drilled for 9 mm (3/8 inch) floor bolts.
    - c. Where mullions occur, provide 2.3 mm (0.093 inch) thick steel channel anchors, drilled for two 6 mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts and frame anchor screws.
    - d. Where sill sections occur, provide continuous 1 mm (0.042 inch) thick steel rough bucks drilled for 6 mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts and frame anchor screws. Space floor bolts at 50 mm (24 inches) on center.
  2. Jamb anchors:
    - a. Locate anchors on jambs near top and bottom of each frame, and at intermediate points not over 600 mm (24 inches) apart, // except

- for fire rated frames space anchors as required by labeling authority //.
- b. Form jamb anchors of not less than 1 mm (0.042 inch) thick steel unless otherwise specified.
  - c. Anchors set in masonry: Use adjustable anchors designed for friction fit against the frame and for extension into the masonry not less than 250 mm (10 inches). Use one of following type:
    - 1) Wire loop type of 5 mm (3/16 inch) diameter wire.
    - 2) T-shape or strap and stirrup type of corrugated or perforated sheet steel.
  - d. Anchors for stud partitions: Either weld to frame or use lock-in snap-in type. Provide tabs for securing anchor to the sides of the studs.
  - e. Anchors for frames set in prepared openings:
    - 1) Steel pipe spacers with 6 mm (1/4 inch) inside diameter welded to plate reinforcing at jamb stops or hat shaped formed strap spacers, 50 mm (2 inches) wide, welded to jamb near stop.
    - 2) Drill jamb stop and strap spacers for 6 mm (1/4 inch) flat head bolts to pass thru frame and spacers.
    - 3) Two piece frames: Subframe or rough buck drilled for 6 mm (1/4 inch) bolts.
  - f. Anchors for observation windows and other continuous frames set in stud partitions.
    - 1) In addition to jamb anchors, weld clip anchors to sills and heads of continuous frames over 1200 mm (4 feet) long.
    - 2) Anchors spaced 600 mm (24 inches) on centers maximum.
  - g. Modify frame anchors to fit special frame and wall construction and provide special anchors where shown or required.

## **2.5 LOUVERS**

### **A. General:**

- 1. Sight proof type with stationary blades the full thickness of the door.
- 2. Design lightproof louvers to exclude passage of light but permit free ventilation.
- 3. Provide insect screen and wire guards at exterior doors, except where doors are located below completely enclosed areaways, the wire guard is not required.

**B. Fabrication:**

1. Steel louvers 0.8 mm (0.032 inch) thick for interior doors, and 1.3 mm (0.053 inch) inch thick for exterior doors.
2. Fabricate louvers as complete units. Install in prepared cutouts in doors.
3. Weld stationary blades to frames. Weld louvers into door openings.

**C. Screen frames:**

1. Frame of either extruded aluminum or tubular aluminum.
2. Fabricate frame to hold wire fabric in a channel with a retaining bar anchor and to mount on surface of door with screws.
3. Do not lap frame over louver opening.
4. Miter corners of frame members and join by concealed mechanical fastenings extending about 57 mm (2-1/4 inches) into ends of each member.
5. Drill frame and doors for screw attachment. Space screws 50 mm (2 inches) from end of each leg of frame and not over 300 mm (12 inches) on center between end screws.
6. Finish: Clear anodized finish, 0.4 mils thick.
7. Insect Screens: Fasten insect screens to interior side of doors with retaining bar against door and not exposed to view.
8. Wire Guards:
  - a. Wire fabric shall be wire guard screen as specified.
  - b. Fasten wire guard to exterior side of door with retaining bar against door and not exposed to view.

**2.6 SHOP PAINTING**

SDI A250.8.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Plumb, align and brace frames securely until permanent anchors are set.
1. Use triangular bracing near each corner on both sides of frames with temporary wood spreaders at midpoint.
  2. Use wood spreaders at bottom of frame if the shipping spreader is removed.
  3. Protect frame from accidental abuse.
  4. Where construction will permit concealment, leave the shipping spreaders in place after installation, otherwise remove the spreaders after the frames are set and anchored.

5. Remove wood spreaders and braces only after the walls are built and jamb anchors are secured.

B. Floor Anchors:

1. Anchor the bottom of door frames to floor with two 6 mm (1/4 inch) diameter expansion bolts. Use 9 mm (3/8 inch) bolts on lead lined frames.
2. Power actuated drive pins may be used to secure frame anchors to concrete floors.

C. Jamb Anchors:

1. Anchors in masonry walls: Embed anchors in mortar. Fill space between frame and masonry wall with grout or mortar as walls are built.
2. Coat frame back with a bituminous coating prior to lining of grout filling in masonry walls.
3. Secure anchors to sides of studs with two fasteners through anchor tabs. Use steel drill screws to steel studs.
4. Frames set in prepared openings of masonry or concrete: Expansion bolt to wall with 6 mm (1/4 inch) expansion bolts through spacers. Where subframes or rough bucks are used, 6 mm (1/4 inch) expansion bolts on 600 mm (24 inch) centers or power activated drive pins 600 mm (24 inches) on centers. Secure two piece frames to subframe or rough buck with machine screws on both faces.

**3.2 INSTALLATION OF DOORS AND APPLICATION OF HARDWARE**

Install doors and hardware as specified in Section 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES and Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08 33 00  
COILING DOORS AND GRILLES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies coiling doors and grilles of sizes shown, complete as specified.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Lock cylinders for cylindrical locks: Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- B. Field painting: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.
- C. Electric devices and wiring: DIVISION 26, ELECTRICAL.

**1.3 MANUFACTURER'S AND INSTALLER'S QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. Coiling doors and grilles shall be products of manufacturers regularly engaged in manufacturing items of type specified.
- B. Install items under direct supervision of manufacturer's representative or trained personnel.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Each type of door // and grille // showing details of construction, accessories and hardware, electrical and mechanical items supporting brackets for motors, location, and ratings of motors, and safety devices.
  - 2. Wiring diagrams for motors and controls, including wiring diagram for door and grille showing electrical interlock of motor with manually operated dead lock.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Brochures or catalog cuts, each type door or grille.
  - 2. Manufacturer's installation procedures and instructions.
  - 3. Maintenance instructions, parts lists.
- D. Certificates:
  - 1. Attesting doors, anchors and hardware will withstand the horizontal loads specified.

**1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.



- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):  
A36/A36M-08.....Structural Steel  
A167-99(R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip  
A653/A653M-10.....Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Zinc-Iron  
Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip  
Process  
B209/209M-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate  
B221/B221M-08.....Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire,  
Shapes, and Tubes
- C. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):  
ICS 1-00(R2008).....Industrial Control and Systems General  
Requirements  
ICS 2-00(R2005).....Industrial Control, and Systems, Controllers,  
Contactors, and Overload Relays  
ICS 6-93 (R2006).....Industrial Control and Systems Enclosures  
MG 1-10.....Motors and Generators  
ST 20-92 (R1997).....Dry-Type Transformers for General Applications
- D. Master Painters Institute (MPI):  
MPI #35.....Exterior Bituminous Coating  
MPI #76.....Quick Drying Alkyd Metal Primer
- E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):  
70-11.....National Electrical Code 1999 Edition  
80-10.....Fire Doors and Fire Windows
- F. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):  
AMP 500 Series.....Metal Finishes Manual
- G. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):  
2010.....Fire Resistance Directory

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIAL**

- A. Steel: A653 for forming operation. ASTM A36 for structural sections.  
B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302 or 304.  
C. Aluminum, Plate and Sheet: ASTM B209/B209M  
D. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221/B221M  
E. Alkyd Metal Primer: MPI No. 76.  
F. Bituminous Coating: MPI No. 35.

**2.2 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coiling doors and grilles shall be spring counter balanced, overhead coiling type, inside face mounted with guides at jambs set back a sufficient distance to provide a clear opening when door is in open position.
- B. Doors, hardware, and anchors shall be designed to withstand a horizontal or wind pressure of 958 Pa (20 psf) of door area without damage.
- C. All motor operators shall have manual emergency mechanical operators.
- E. Where doors in excess of 7.4 m<sup>2</sup> (80 sf) are indicated to be manually operated, provision shall be made in the design and construction that will permit future installation of electric-power operation.

**2.3 FABRICATION**

- A. Curtains:
  - 1. Form of interlocking slats of galvanized steel of shapes standard with the manufacturer, except that slats for exterior doors shall be flat type.
  - 2. Thickness of slats shall be as required to resist loads specified except not less than the following:
    - a. For doors less than 4500 mm (15 feet) wide: 0.75 mm (0.0299 inch).
    - b. For doors from 4530 mm (15 feet 1 inch) to 6300 mm (21 feet wide): 0.90 mm (0.0359 inch).
    - c. For doors wider than 6330 mm (21 feet 1 inch): 1.20 mm (0.0478 inch).
  - 3. Thickness of aluminum slats shall be as follows:
    - a. For doors less than 4500 mm (15 feet wide): 1 mm (0.040 inch).
    - b. For doors from 4530 mm (15 feet 1 inch) to 6300 mm (21 feet wide): 1.45 mm (0.057 inch).
    - c. For doors wider than 6330 mm (21 feet 1 inch): 1.65 mm (0.064 inch).
- B. Grilles:
  - 1. Form of stainless steel.
  - 2. Horizontal rods, 8 mm (5/16 inch) minimum diameter spaced not over 50 mm (two inches) on center with hinged vertical connecting links. Links shall be spaced not over 225 mm (nine inches) apart.
  - 3. Provide tubular bottom rail at bottom end of grille.

## C. Endlocks and Windlocks:

1. Manufacturer's stock design of galvanized malleable iron or galvanized steel or stamped cadmium steel for doors or grilles.
2. The ends of each slat for exterior doors and each alternate slat for grilles and interior doors shall have endlocks.
3. Doors shall have windlocks at ends of at least every sixth slat. Windlocks shall prevent curtain from leaving guide because of deflection from wind pressure or other forces.

## D. Bottom Bar:

1. Two angles of equal weight, one on each side, standard extruded aluminum members not less than 3 mm (0.125 inch) thick.
2. Bottom bar designed to receive weather-stripping and safety device, and be securely fastened to bottom of curtain or grille.

## E. Barrel and Spring Counterbalance:

1. Curtain shall coil on a barrel supported at end of opening on brackets and be balanced by helical springs.
2. Barrel fabricated of steel pipe or commercial welded steel tubing of proper diameter and thickness for the size of curtain, to limit deflection with curtain rolled up, not to exceed 1 in 400 (0.03 inch per foot) of span.
3. Close ends of barrel with cast iron plugs, machined to fit the opening.
4. Within the barrel, install an oil-tempered, helical, counterbalancing steel spring, capable of producing sufficient torque to assure easy operation of the door curtain from any position.
5. At least 80 percent of the door weight shall be counter balanced at any position.
6. Spring-tension shall be adjustable from outside of bracket without removing the hood or motor operator.

## F. Brackets:

1. Steel plate designed to form end closure and support for hood and the end of the barrel assembly.
2. End of barrel or shaft shall screw into bracket hubs fabricated of cast iron or steel.
3. Equip bracket hubs or barrel plugs with prelubricated ball bearings, shielded or sealed.

## G. Hoods:

1. Steel galvanized, 0.6 mm (0.0239 inch) thick Aluminum, not less than 1 mm (0.040 inch) thick.
2. Form hood to fit contour of end brackets.
3. Reinforce at top and bottom edges with rolled beads, rods or angles. Hoods more than 3600 mm (12 feet) in length shall have intermediate supporting brackets.
4. Fasten to brackets with screws or bolts and provide for attachment to wall with bolts.
5. Provide a weather baffle at the lintel or inside the hood of each exterior door to minimize seepage of air through the hood enclosure.

#### H. Guides:

1. Manufacturer's standard formed sections or angles of steel
  - a. Steel sections not less than 5 mm (3/16 inch) thick.
2. Form a channel pocket of sufficient depth to retain the curtain in place under the horizontal pressure specified, and prevent ends of curtain from slipping out of guide slots.
3. Top sections flared for smooth entry of curtain to vertical sections that will facilitate entry of curtain.
4. Provide stops to limit curtain travel above top of guides.
5. Provide guide of aluminum with replaceable wear strips to prevent metal to metal contact.
6. Mounting brackets shall provide closure between guides and jambs.

#### I. Weather-stripping:

1. Manually Operated Doors: Exterior doors shall have a compressible and replaceable rubber, neoprene, or vinyl weather seal attached to bottom bar.
2. Motor Operated Doors: Bottom bar safety device shall be a combination compressible seal and safety device as specified in paragraph, ELECTRIC MOTOR OPERATORS.
3. At exterior doors provide replaceable sweep type continuous vinyl or neoprene weather seals on guides and across head on exterior to seal against wind infiltration.

#### J. Locking:

1. Cylinder locks shall receive standard screw in cylinders furnished under Section, 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE.

2. For each manually operated exterior door or grille, provide manufacturer's standard cylinder dead lock type locking device on the inside at each door jamb, key operated from the exterior and interior

SPEC WRITER NOTE: Use key from interior to prevent unauthorized operation unless door or grille is only means of exit.

3. For motor operated doors and grilles provide manufacturer's standard cylinder dead lock type locking device on the inside, key operated from both sides, interlocked with motor to prevent motor from operating when locks are activated.

#### **2.4 ELECTRIC MOTOR OPERATORS**

- A. Provide operators complete with electric motor, machine cut reduction gears, steel chain and sprockets, magnetic brake, overload protection, brackets, push button controls, limit switches, magnetic reversing contactor, and other accessories necessary for proper operation including emergency manual operator.

- B. Design:

1. Design the operator so that the motor may be removed without disturbing the limit-switch timing and without affecting the emergency manual operators.
2. Make provision for emergency manual operation of door by chain-gear mechanism.
3. Arrange the emergency manual operating mechanism so that it may be immediately put into and out of operation from the floor with an electrical or mechanical device, which will disconnect the motor from the operating mechanism when the emergency manual operating mechanism is engaged, and its use shall not affect the timing of the limit switches, in case of electrical failure.
4. Provide interlock with motor to prevent motor from operating when manual locks are activated.

- C. Motors:

1. Motors shall conform to NEMA MG1, suitable for operation on current of the characteristics indicated, and shall operate at not more than 3600 rpm. Single-phase motors shall not have commutation or more than one starting contact. Motor enclosures shall be the drip proof type of NEMA TENV type.

2. Motors shall be high starting torque, reversible type, of sufficient horsepower and torque output to move the door in either direction from any position, and produce a door travel speed of not less than 0.66 foot or more than one foot per second, without exceeding the rated capacity.

D. Controls:

1. The control equipment shall conform to NEMA ICS 1 and 2.
2. Control enclosures shall be NEMA ICS 6, Type 12 or Type 4, except that contractor enclosures may be Type 1.
3. Remote control switches shall be at least 1500 mm (5 feet) above the floor line, and located so that the operator will have complete visibility of the door at all times.
4. Each door motor shall have an enclosed, across-the-line type, magnetic reversing contactor, thermal overload protection, solenoid operated brake, limit switches, and remote control switches at locations shown.
5. Use key activated switches on exterior requiring constant pressure to operate.
6. Use three-button type, push button switch on interior, unless noted to be key activated, with the buttons marked, OPEN, CLOSE, and STOP.
  - a. The OPEN and STOP buttons shall be of the type requiring only momentary pressure to operate. The CLOSE button shall be of the type requiring constant pressure to maintain the closing motion of the door. When the door is in motion, and the STOP button is pressed, the door shall stop instantly and remain in the stop position; from the stop position, the door may then be operated in either direction by the OPEN or Close buttons.
  - b. Push buttons shall be full-guarded to prevent accidental operation.
7. Provide limit switches to automatically stop the doors at their fully open and closed positions. Positions of the limit switches shall be readily adjustable.
8. Safety device:
  - a. The bottom bar of power-operated doors shall have a fail safe safety device that will immediately stop and reverse the door in its closing travel upon contact with an obstruction in the door opening, or upon failure of the device, or any component of the

device, or any component of the control system, and cause the door to return to its full open position. The door closing circuit shall be electrically locked out, and the door shall be operable manually until the failure or damage has been corrected.

- b. Safety device shall not be used as a limit switch.
  - c. Safety device connecting cable to motor shall be flexible "Type SO" cable and spring loaded automatic take up reel or equivalent device, as required for proper operation of the doors.
9. Transformer:
- a. Provide a control transformer in power circuits as necessary to reduce the voltage on the control circuits to 120 volts or less.
  - b. The transformer shall conform to NEMA ST20.
10. Electrical components shall conform to NFPA 70.

## **2.5 MANUAL OPERATORS**

### **A. Push-up Operation:**

- 1. Provide one lifting handle on each side of door and counterbalance in a manner to provide easy operation while raising or lowering the curtain by hand.
- 2. The maximum exertion or pull required for lift handle operation shall not exceed 1197 Pa (25 psf).

### **B. Hand Chain Operation:**

- 1. Galvanized, endless chain operating over a sprocket and extending to within 900 mm (3 feet) of floor.
- 2. Obtain reduction by use of suitable permanently lubricated gearing connected by roller chain and sprocket drive.
- 3. Calculate gear reduction to reduce pull required on hand chain, not to exceed 1676 Pa (35 psf).

### **C. Crank Operation:**

- 1. Locate crank approximately 854 mm (34 inches) above the floor.
- 2. Connect vertical shaft, gear box, and gears to curtain.
- 3. Calculate gear reduction to reduce pressure exerted on crank to not over 958 Pa (20 pounds).

## **2.7 FINISHES**

### **A. Steel:**

- 1. Clean surfaces of steel free from scale, rust, oil and grease, and then apply a light colored shop prime paint after fabrication.

2. Non-galvanized steel: Treat to assure maximum paint adherence, and apply corrosion inhibitive primer.
3. Galvanized steel: Apply a phosphate treatment and a corrosion inhibitive primer.

B. Stainless Steel:

2. No. 4 finish on all exposed surfaces.

C. Aluminum: Finish exposed metal surfaces as follows:

2. medium matte, with clear anodic coating, Class I Architectural, 0.7 mils thick.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install doors and grilles in accordance with approved shop drawings and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Locate anchors and inserts for guides, brackets, motors, switches, hardware, and other accessories accurately.
- C. Securely attach guides to adjoining construction with not less than 9 mm (3/8 inch) diameter bolts, near each end and spaced not over 600 mm (24 inches) apart.
- D. Locate control switches where shown.
- E. Install all electric devices and wiring as specified in DIVISION 26 ELECTRICAL and DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

#### **3.2 REPAIR**

- A. Repair prime painted zinc-coated surfaces and bare zinc-coated surfaces that are damaged by the application of galvanizing repair compound. Spot prime all damaged shop prime painted surfaces including repaired prime painted zinc-coated surfaces.
- B. Coiling Doors and grilles shall be lubricated, properly adjusted, and demonstrated to operate freely.

#### **3.3 PROTECTION**

- A. Isolate aluminum in contact with or fastened to dissimilar metals other than stainless steel, white bronze or other metals not compatible with aluminum by one of the following:
  1. Paint the dissimilar metal with a prime coat of zinc-Molybdate or other suitable primer, followed by two coats of aluminum paint.
  2. Place an approved caulking compound, or a non-absorptive tape, or gasket between the aluminum and the dissimilar metal.



- B. Paint aluminum in contact with or built into mortar, concrete, plaster or other masonry materials with a coat of bituminous paint.
- C. Paint aluminum in contact with wood or other absorptive materials, that may repeatedly become wet, with a coat of bituminous paint or two coats of aluminum paint.

#### **3.4 INSPECTION**

Upon completion, doors shall be weathertight and doors and grilles shall be free from warp, twist, or distortion.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08 41 13**  
**ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION:**

This section specifies aluminum entrance work including storefront construction, hung doors, , and other components to make a complete assembly.

**1.2 RELATED WORK:**

- A. Glass and Glazing: Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
- B. Hardware: Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- C. Automatic Door Operators: Section 08 71 13, AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS.
- D. Texture and color of finish: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings: (1/2 full scale) showing construction, anchorage, reinforcement, and installation details.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Doors, each type.
  - 2. Entrance and Storefront construction.
- D. Samples:
  - 1. Door corner section, 450 mm x 450 mm (18 x 18 inches), of each door type specified, showing vertical and top hinge edges, door closer reinforcement, internal reinforcement and insulation, of flush panel door. //
  - 2. Two samples of anodized aluminum of each color showing finish and maximum shade range.
  - 3. Two samples of organic finish of each color specified.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificates:
  - 1. Stating that aluminum has been given specified thickness of anodizing.
  - 2. Indicating manufacturer's qualifications specified.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- A. Approval by Contracting Officer is required of products of proposed manufacturer, or supplier, and will be based upon submission by Contractor certification.

- B. Certify manufacturer regularly and presently manufactures aluminum entrances and storefronts as one of their principal products.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:**

- A. Deliver aluminum entrance and storefront material to the site in packages or containers; labeled for identification with the manufacturer's name, brand and contents.
- B. Store aluminum entrance and storefront material in weather-tight and dry storage facility.
- C. Protect from damage from handling, weather and construction operations before, during and after installation.

**1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- B209-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
- B221-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars,  
Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
- E283-04.....Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows,  
Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified  
Pressure Differences Across the Specimen
- E331-00 (R2009).....Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain  
Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure  
Difference
- F468-10.....Nonferrous Bolts, Hex Cap Screws, and Studs for  
General Use
- F593-02 (R2008).....Stainless Steel Bolts, Hex Cap Screws, and  
Studs
- C. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
- AMP 500 Series.....Metal Finishes Manual
- D. American Architectural Manufacturer's Association (AAMA):
- 2604-10.....High Performance Organic Coatings on  
Architectural Aluminum Extrusions and Panels
- E. American Welding Society (AWS):
- D1.2-08.....Structural Welding Code Aluminum

**1.7 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. Shapes and thickness of framing members shall be sufficient to withstand a design wind load of not less than [1.4] kilopascals ([30] pounds per square foot) of supported area with a deflection of not more than 1/175 times the length of the member and a safety factor of not less than 1.65 (applied to overall load failure of the unit). Provide glazing beads, moldings, and trim of not less than 1.25 mm (0.050 inch) nominal thickness.
- B. Air Infiltration: When tested in accordance with ASTM E 283, air infiltration shall not exceed  $2.63 \times 10^{-5}$  cm per square meter (0.06 cubic feet per minute per square foot) of fixed area at a test pressure of 0.30 kPa (6.24 pounds per square foot) 80 kilometers (50 mile) per hour wind.
- C. Water Penetration: When tested in accordance with ASTM E 331, there shall be no water penetration at a pressure of 0.38 kPa (8 pounds per square foot) of fixed area.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MATERIALS:**

- A. Aluminum, ASTM B209 and B221:
  - 1. Alloy 6063 temper T5 for doors and door frames
  - 3. For color anodized finish, use aluminum alloy as required to produce specified color.
- C. Fasteners:
  - 1. Aluminum: ASTM F468, Alloy 2024.
  - 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM F593, Alloy Groups 1, 2 and 3.

**2.2 FABRICATION:**

- A. Fabricate doors, of extruded aluminum sections not less than 3 mm (0.125 inch) thick. Fabricate glazing beads of aluminum not less than 1.0 mm (0.050 inch) thick.
- B. Accurately form metal parts and accurately fit and rigidly assemble joints, except those joints designed to accommodate movement. Seal joints to prevent leakage of both air and water.
- C. Make welds in aluminum in accordance with the recommended practice AWA D1.2. Use electrodes and methods recommended by the manufacturers of the metals and alloys being welded. Make welds behind finished surfaces so as to cause no distortion or discoloration of the exposed side.

Clean welded joints of welding flux and dress exposed and contact surfaces.

- D. Make provisions in doors and frames to receive the specified hardware and accessories. Coordinate schedule and template for hardware specified under Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE. Where concealed closers or other mechanisms are required, provide the necessary space, cutouts, and reinforcement for secure fastening.
- E. Fit and assemble the work at the manufacturer's plant. Mark work that cannot be permanently plant-assembled to assure proper assembly in the field.

### **2.3 PROTECTION OF ALUMINUM:**

- A. Isolate aluminum from contact with dissimilar metals other than stainless steel, white bronze, or zinc by any of the following:
  - 1. Coat the dissimilar metal with two coats of heavy-bodied alkali resistant bituminous paint.
  - 2. Place caulking compound, or non-absorptive tape, or gasket between the aluminum and the dissimilar metal.
  - 3. Paint aluminum in contact with mortar, concrete and plaster, with a coat of aluminum paint primer.

### **2.4 FRAMES:**

- A. Fabricate doors and frames from extruded aluminum not less than 3 mm (0.125 inch) thick.
- B. Provide integral stops and glass rebates and applied snap-on type trim.
- C. Use concealed screws, bolts and other fasteners. Secure cover boxes to frames in back of all lock strike cutouts.
- D. Fabricate framework with thermal breaks in frames where insulating glass is scheduled and specified under Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.

### **2.5 STILE AND RAIL DOORS:**

- A. Nominal 45 mm (1-3/4 inch) thick, with stile and head rail 90 mm (3-1/2 inches) wide, and bottom rail 250 mm (10 inches) wide.
- B. Bevel single-acting doors 3 mm (1/8 inch) at lock, hinge and meeting stile edges. Provide clearances of 2 mm (1/16 inch) at hinge stiles, 3 mm (1/8 inch) at lock stiles and top rails, and 5 mm (3/16 inch) at floors and thresholds. Form glass rebates integrally with stiles and rails. Glazing beads may be formed integrally with stiles and rails or applied type secured with fasteners at 150 mm (six inches) on centers.

- C. Construct doors with a system of welded joints or interlocking dovetail joints between stiles and rails. Clamp door together through top and bottom rails with 9 mm (3/8 inch) primed steel rod extending into the stiles, and having a self-locking nut and washer at each end. Reinforce stiles and rails to prevent door distortion when tie rods are tightened. Provide a compensating spring-type washer under each nut to take up any stresses that may develop. Construct joints between rails and stiles to remain rigid and tight when door is operated.
- D. Weather-stripping: Provide removable, woven pile type (silicone-treated) weather-stripping attached to aluminum or vinyl holder. Make slots for applying weather-stripping integral with doors and door frame stops. Apply continuous weather-stripping to heads, jambs, bottom, and meeting stiles of doors and frames. Install weather-stripping so doors can swing freely and close positively.

## **2.7 REINFORCEMENT FOR BUILDERS HARDWARE:**

- A. Fabricate from stainless steel plates.
- B. Hinge and pivot reinforcing: 4.55 mm (0.1793 inch) thick.
- C. Reinforcing for lock face, flush bolts, concealed holders, concealed or surface mounted closers: 2.66 mm (0.1046 inch) thick.
- D. Reinforcing for all other surface mounted hardware: 1.5 mm (0.0598 inch) thick.

## **2.8 COLUMN COVERS AND TRIM**

- A. Fabricate column covers and trim shown from 1.5 mm (0.0625 inch) thick sheet aluminum of longest available lengths.
- B. Use concealed fasteners.
- C. Provide aluminum stiffener and other supporting members shown or as required to maintain the integrity of the components.

## **2.9 FINISH**

- A. In accordance with NAAMM AMP 500 series.
- B. Anodized Aluminum:
  - 1. Clear Finish: Chemically etched medium matte, with clear anodic coating, Class I Architectural, 7 mils thick.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION:**

- A. Allowable Installation Tolerances: Install work plumb and true, in alignment and in relation to lines and grades shown. Variation of 3 mm

(1/8 inch) in 2400 mm (eight feet), non-accumulative, is maximum permissible for plumb, level, warp, bow and alignment.

- B. Anchor aluminum frames to adjoining construction at heads, jambs and bottom and to steel supports, and bracing. Anchor frames with stainless steel or aluminum countersunk flathead, expansion bolts or machine screws, as applicable. Use aluminum clips for internal connections of adjoining frame sections.
- C. Where work is installed within masonry or concrete openings, place no parts other than built-in anchors and provision for operating devices located in the floor, until after the masonry or concrete work is completed.
- D. Install hardware specified under Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- E. Install hung door operators specified under Section 08 71 13, AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS.

### **3.2 ADJUSTING:**

After installation of entrance and storefront work is completed, adjust and lubricate operating mechanisms to insure proper performance.

### **3.3 PROTECTION, CLEANING AND REPAIRING:**

Remove all mastic smears and other unsightly marks, and repair any damaged or disfiguration of the work. Protect the installed work against damage or abuse.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08 44 13**  
**GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Section specifies glazed aluminum curtain wall system.
  - 1. Thermally isolated, pressure equalized on interior.
  - 2. Type: Stick system to include following:
    - a. Glass.
    - b. Integral reinforcing.
    - c. Closures, trim, subsills and flashings.
    - d. Column covers.
    - e. Fasteners, anchors, and related reinforcement.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Structural steel: Section 05 12 00, STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING.
- B. Miscellaneous metal members: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- D. Sheet metal flashing and trim: Section 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
  - a. Joint sealants: Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- E. Aluminum and glass hinged entry doors and storefront construction: Section 08 41 13, ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Approval is required of products or service of proposed manufacturer, suppliers and installers, and will be based upon submission by Contractor of certification that:
    - a. Manufacturers Qualifications: Manufacturer with five (5) years continuous documented experience in design, fabrication, and installation of glazed aluminum curtain wall systems of type and size required for that project.
    - b. Installer: Manufacturer approved in writing. Continuously installed glazed aluminum curtain walls systems for previous five (5) years.
    - c. Manufacturer shall provide technical field representation at project site, as a minimum, at start of project, during middle, towards end of project, and during field testing of field mockup panel.
    - d. Testing Laboratory: Contractor retained. Engage an AAMA accredited commercial testing laboratory to perform tests specified. Submit information regarding testing laboratory's facilities and



qualifications of technical personnel to perform testing specified in this section.

- e. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of glazed aluminum curtain wall system. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, one another, and adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, or in-service performance.

- 1) Do not modify intended aesthetic effects. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data for review.

- f. Qualification of Welders:

- 1) Welding shall be performed by certified welders qualified in accordance with AWS D1.2, using procedures, materials, and equipment of the type required for this work.

B. Mockup

- 1. Construct, at job site, full size typical wall unit which incorporates horizontal and vertical joints, framing, window units, panels, glazing, sealants, and other accessories as detailed and specified. Mock-up wall unit location, size and design shall be as indicated. Orient mockup to be facing full sun when constructed.

C. Pre-Installation Conference

- 1. Prior to starting installation of glazed curtain wall system schedule conference with Contracting Officer to ensure following:
      - a. Clear understanding of drawings and specifications.
      - b. Onsite inspection and acceptance of structural and pertinent structural details relating to curtain wall system.
      - c. Coordination of work of various trades involved in providing system. Conference shall be attended by Contractor; personnel directly responsible for installation of curtain wall system, flashing and sheet metal work, firestopping system and curtain wall manufacturer and their Technical Field Representatives.
- Conflicts shall be resolved and confirmed in writing.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. In accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.

- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Product Data:

1. Manufacturer's standard details and fabrication methods.
2. Data on finishing, components, and accessories.
3. Instructions: Submit descriptive literature, detail specifications, available performance test data and instructions for installation, and adjustments.
4. Recommendations for maintenance and cleaning of exterior surfaces.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Show elevations of glazed curtain wall system at 1:50 (1/4 inch) scale, metal gages, details of construction, methods of anchorage, glazing details, and details of installation.
2. Submit for curtain wall system, accessories, and mock-up. Tentative approval of drawings shall be received before fabrication of mock-up. Final approval of drawings shall be deferred pending approval of mock-up and accessories. Drawings shall indicate in detail all system parts including elevations, full size sections, framing, jointing, panels, types and thickness of metal anchorage details, flashing and coping details, field connections, weep and drainage system, finishes, sealing methods, glazing, glass sizes and details, firestopping insulation materials, and erection details.

//

4. Operation and Maintenance Manuals
  - a. Submit cleaning and maintenance instructions.

D. Samples:

1. Submit pairs of samples of each specified color and finish on 300 mm (12-inch) long section by width of each tubular, or extruded shape section or 300 mm by 300 mm (12-inch by 12-inch) wide sections of sheet shapes.
2. Submit corner section of framing members showing fasteners, panels, glazing methods, glazing materials, and weather-stripping. Submit one sample minimum 300 mm by 300 mm (12 inches by 12 inches). In lieu of submitting separate samples for corner section, intermediate section, and panel, one composite sample incorporating all components and features listed may be submitted.
3. Where normal color variations are anticipated, include 2 or more units in set indicating extreme limits of color variations.

E. Glass:

1. Specified in Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.

F. Quality Control Submittals:

1. Design Data:

- a. Submit structural and thermal calculations for complete wall assembly. Structural calculations and design shop drawings shall be signed and sealed by a structural engineer registered in state in which project is to be located.
2. Factory Test Reports:
  - a. Test Reports: Provide certified test reports, for each of following listed tests, from a qualified independent testing laboratory showing that glazed aluminum curtain wall system assembly has been tested in accordance with specified test procedures and complies with performance characteristics as indicated by manufacturer's testing procedures. Manufacturer shall submit appropriate testing numbers for specific tests indicated below.
    - 1) Deflection and structural tests.
    - 2) Water penetration tests.
    - 4) Delamination tests.
    - 7) Submit factory tests required except that where a curtain wall system or component of similar type, size, and design as specified for this project has been previously tested within last year, under conditions specified herein, resulting test reports may be submitted in lieu of listed testing.
- G. Manufacturer's Certificates:
  1. Submit Certificates of Compliance, with specification requirements, for the following:
    - a. Metal extrusions.
    - b. Metal accessories.
    - c. Stating that aluminum has been given specified thickness of anodizing or organic coating finish.
    - d. Indicating manufacturer's and installer's meet qualifications as specified.
    - e. Submit list of equivalent size installations, for both manufacturer and installer, which have had satisfactory and efficient operation.
- H. Manufacturer's Field Reports:
  1. Submit field reports of manufacturer's field representative observations of curtain wall installation indicating observations made during inspection at beginning of project, during middle of installation and at conclusion of project. Indicate results of field testing of mockup field panel, and any directions given Contractor for corrective action.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Refer to AAMA CW 10 for care and handling of architectural aluminum from shop to site.
- B. Prior to packaging for shipment from factory, mark wall components to correspond with shop and erection drawings and their placement location and erection.
- C. Prior to shipment from factory, place knocked-down lineal members in cardboard containers and cover finished surfaces of members with protective covering of adhesive paper, waterproof tape, or strippable plastic. Do not cover metal surfaces that will be in contact with sealants after installation.
- D. Inspect materials delivered to site for damage; unload and store with ventilation, free from heavy dust, not subject to combustion products or sources of water, and shall permit easy access for inspection and handling. Sealing and caulking compounds, including handling, shall be in accordance with requirements of Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

**1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

Field Measurements: Where glazed aluminum curtain wall systems are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying Work.

**1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referred to in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
  - MCWM-1-89.....Metal Curtain Wall Manual
  - CW 10-04.....Care and Handling of Architectural Aluminum from Shop to Site
  - CW 11-85.....Design Windloads for Buildings and Boundary Layer Wind Tunnel Testing
  - CW 13-85.....Structural Sealant Glazing Systems (A Design Guide)
  - CWG 1-89.....Installation of Aluminum Curtain Walls
  - TIR A1-04.....Sound Control for Fenestration Products
  - TIR A8-08.....Structural Performance of Composite Thermal Barrier Framing Systems
  - TIR A9-91.....Metal Curtain Wall Fasteners

- TIR A11-04.....Maximum Allowable Deflection of Framing Systems  
for Building Cladding Components of Design Wind  
Loads
- 101/I.S.2/A440-08.....Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights
- 501-05.....Methods of Test for Exterior Walls
- 503-08.....Field Testing of Metal Storefronts, Curtain  
walls and Sloped Glazing Systems
- 2605-98.....High Performance Organic Coatings on  
Architectural Extrusions and Panels
- 1503-09.....Thermal Transmission and Condensation Resistance  
of Windows, Doors and Glazed Wall Sections
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
- Z97.1-09.....Glazing Materials Used in Buildings, Safety  
Performance Specifications and Methods of Test
- D. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE):
- ASCE 7-10.....Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other  
Structures
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A36/A36M-08.....Structural Steel
- A123-09.....Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and  
Steel Products
- A193-10.....Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting  
Materials for High Temperature Service
- A307-10.....Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile  
Strength
- B209-10.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate
- B211-03.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Bar, Rod, Wire
- B221/B221M-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,  
Wire, Shapes and Tubes
- B316/B316M-10.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Rivet and Cold-  
Heading, Wire, and Rods
- C578-10.....Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
- C612-10.....Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation
- C920-11.....Elastomeric Joint Sealants
- C794-10.....Standard Test Method for Adhesion-In-Peel of  
Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- C1363-05.....Thermal Performance of Building Materials and  
Envelope Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box  
Apparatus

- D1037-06.....Evaluating the Properties of Wood-Base Fibers  
and Particle Panel Materials
- E84-10.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building  
Materials
- E90-09.....Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound  
Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and  
Elements
- E283-04.....Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior  
Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors under  
Specified Pressure Difference Across this  
Specification
- E330-02 (R2010).....Structural Performance of Exterior Windows,  
Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air  
Pressure Difference
- E331-00 (R2009).....Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain  
Walls, and Doors By Uniform Static Air Pressure  
Difference
- E413-10.....Classification for Rating Sound Insulation
- E783-02 (R2010).....Test Method for Field Measurement of Air Leakage  
Through Installed Exterior Windows and Doors.
- E1105-00 (R2008).....Field Determination of Water Penetration of  
Installed Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and  
Doors By Uniform or Cyclic Static Air Pressure  
Differences
- F. American Welding Society, Inc. (AWS):
- D1.2-08.....Structural Welding Code-Aluminum
- G. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC):
- 16 CFR 1201.....Architectural Glazing Standards and Related  
Material
- H. Federal Specifications (FS):
- TT-P-645B-90.....Primer, Paint, Zinc-Molybdate, Alkyd Type
- I. Glass Association of North America (GANA):
- 2010 Edition.....GANA Glazing Manual
- 2008 Edition.....GANA Sealant Manual
- 2009 Edition.....GANA Laminated Glazing Reference Manual
- 2008 Edition.....Tempered Glass Engineering Standard Manual
- J. Military Specifications (MIL):
- MIL-C-18480.....(Rev. B) Coating Compound, Bituminous Solvent,  
Coal Tar Base

K. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):

500 Series (2006).....Metal Finishes Manual.

L. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC)

Paint 25-97 (2004).....Red Iron Oxide Raw Linseed Oil and Alkyd Primer  
(Without Lead and Chromate Pigments)

## **1.8 WARRANTY**

A. Submit manufacturer's written warranty for materials, installation and weathertightness, and subject to terms of "Warranty of Construction", FAR clause 52.246-21, except that warranty period shall be extended to five (5) years from date of final acceptance of project by Government.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

A. Design Requirements:

1. Curtain Wall System: Tubular aluminum sections; related flashings, anchorage and attachment devices.
2. System Assembly: Site assembled.
3. No curtain wall framing member shall deflect, in a direction normal to plane of wall, more than 1/175 of its clear span or 20 mm (3/4 inch), whichever is less, when designed in accordance with requirements of TIR A11 and tested in accordance with ASTM E330, except that when a surface will be affected, deflection shall not exceed 1/360 of span. No framing member shall have a permanent deformation in excess of 0.2 percent of its clear span when tested in accordance with ASTM E330 for a minimum test period of 10 seconds at 1.5 times design wind pressures indicated as part of structural drawing wind load requirements. No glass breakage, damage to fasteners, hardware or accessories shall be permitted due to deformation stated above:
  - a. Provide system complete with framing, mullions, trim, fasteners, anchors, accessories, concealed auxiliary members, and attachment devices for securing wall to structure as specified or indicated. Unless noted otherwise, comply with MCWM-1.
  - b. Curtain wall system components and integral door units shall be furnished by one manufacturer or fabricator; however, all components need not be products of same manufacturer.
  - c. Fully coordinate system accessories directly incorporated, and adjacent to contiguous related work and insure materials compatibility, deflection limitations, thermal movements, and clearances and tolerances as indicated or specified.

- d. Provide system with adequate allowances for expansion and contraction of components and fastenings to prevent buckling damage, joint seal failure, glass breakage, undue stress on fastenings or other detrimental effects. For design purposes, base provisions for thermal movement on assumed ambient temperature range of from -18 degrees C to 49 degrees C (0 degrees F to 120 degrees F).
  - e. Provide wall system to accommodate tolerances in building frame and other contiguous work as indicated or specified.
- B. Manufacturer's Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of curtain walls that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent. //
- C. Performance Requirements:
- 1. System shall meet or exceed all performance requirements specified.
  - 2. Curtain wall components shall have been tested in accordance with requirements below and shall meet performance requirements specified:
  - 3. System Design: Design and size components to withstand dead loads and live loads caused by positive and negative wind loads acting normal to plane of wall as calculated in accordance with ASCE 7-Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.
  - 4. Seismic Loads: Design and size components to withstand seismic loads and sway displacement as calculated in accordance with Local Building code.
  - 5. Water Penetration:
    - a. No water penetration shall occur when wall is tested in accordance with ASTM E331 at a differential static test pressure of 20 percent of inward acting design wind pressure as indicated on structural drawings, but not less than 479 Pa (10 psf).
    - b. Make provision in wall construction for adequate drainage to outside of water leakage or condensation that occurs within outer face of wall. Leave drainage and weep openings in members and wall open during test.
  - 6. Air Infiltration: Test glazed aluminum curtain wall system according to AAMA 503, which requires testing according to ASTM E783
    - a. Static-Air-Differential: 75 Pa (1.57 lbf/sq. ft.) minimum.
    - b. Air Leakage: 0.03 L/s per sq. m (0.06 cfm/sq ft) of surface maximum.



## 7. Deflections Test: ASTM E330, Procedure B:

- a. No member shall deflect in a direction parallel to plane of wall, when carrying its full design load, more than an amount which will reduce edge cover or glass bite below 75 percent of design dimension. No member after deflection under full design load, shall have a clearance between itself and top of panel, glass, sash, or other part immediately below it less than 3 mm (1/8 inch); clearance between member and an operable window or door shall be minimum 1.5 mm (1/16 inch).

## 8. Delamination Test:

- a. Adhesively bonded metal-faced panels shall show no evidence of delamination, warpage or other deterioration or damage when subjected to the six "Accelerated Aging Cycles" specified in ASTM D1037.

**2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Extruded Aluminum Framing Members: ASTM B221M; 6063-T5 extruded aluminum for non-structural components or 6063-T6 extruded aluminum for structural members; temper and alloy as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Sheet Aluminum: ASTM B209M; 6065-T5 temper and alloy as recommended by manufacturer.
  1. Formed flashing and closures: Minimum 1.58 mm (0.062 inch) thick aluminum, in finish as selected.
  2. Extruded sill members: Minimum 1.58 mm (0.062 inch) thick aluminum, in finish as selected.
- C. Steel Sections: ASTM A36M.
- D. Primer: TS TT-P-645; red, for shop application and field touch-up.
- E. Fasteners:
  1. For Exterior Cap Retainers: ASTM A193 B8 300 series, stainless steel screws.
  2. For Framework Connections: ASTM B211M 2024-T4 aluminum, ASTM A193 B8 300 series, stainless steel, and ASTM B316 aluminum rivets, as required by connection.
  3. For Anchoring Glazed Aluminum Curtain Wall to Support Structure: ASTM A307 zinc plated steel fasteners.
- F. Shims: Metal or plastic.
- G. Joint Sealants and Accessories:
  1. In accordance with requirements specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
  2. Structural Flush Glazed Joints: High performance silicone sealant applied in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3. Non-structural Flush Glazed Joints and Weather Seal Joints: Silicone sealants applied in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
  4. Structural silicone sealant performance requirements: ASTM C920.
    - a. Hardness: Type A, 30 durometer.
    - b. Ultimate Tensile Strength: 1172 kPa (170 psi).
    - c. Tensile at 150% Elongation: 55 kPa (80 psi).
    - d. Joint Movement Capability after 14 Day Cure: +/- 50%.
    - e. Peel Strength aluminum, after 21 Day Cure: 599 g/mm (34 pounds per inch).
  5. Structural silicone shall not be used to support dead weight of vertical glass or panels.
  6. Comply with recommendations of sealant manufacturer for specific sealant selections.
  7. Provide only sealants that have been tested per ASTM C794 to exhibit adequate adhesion to samples of glass and metal equivalent to those required for project.
  8. Exposed metal to metal joints: Silicone sealant selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
- H. Glazing Materials:
1. As specified under Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
  2. Glazing Gaskets:
    - a. Exterior: Continuous EPDM gaskets at each glass and spandrel panel.
    - b. Interior: Continuous, closed cell PVC foam sealant tape, sealed at corners.
  3. Glass Sizes and Clearances:
    - a. Accommodate up to 25 mm (1 inch) glazing.
    - b. Sizes indicated are nominal. Verify actual sizes required by measuring frames. Coordinate dimensions for glass and glass holding members to meet applicable minimum clearances as recommended by glass manufacturer. Do not nip glass to remove flares or to reduce oversized dimensions. All cutting shall occur in factory.
  4. Glass Setting Materials:
    - a. Provide head bead and drive wedge required for glass installation to suit curtain wall system in accordance with manufacture's recommendations.
    - b. If used in psychiatric facilities, the glass shall be retained in the framing system in such a manner that it can withstand lateral

forces in excess of force required to break the glass. Plastic clips for holding glass are not permitted. //

I. Louvers:

1. As specified under Section 08 90 00, LOUVERS AND VENTS.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Curtain wall components shall be of materials and thickness indicated or specified. Details indicated are representative of required design and profiles. Maintain sightlines indicated on drawings. Unless specifically indicated or specified otherwise, methods of fabrication and assembly shall be at discretion of curtain wall manufacturer. Perform fitting and assembling of components in shop to maximum extent practicable. Anchorage devices shall permit adjustment in three directions. There shall be no exposed fasteners.
- B. Joints: Joints exceeding +1.5 mm (+1/16") shall be mechanically fastened.
- C. Ventilation and Drainage: Direct water leakage to exterior by means of concealed drainage system and weeps. Flashings and other materials used internally shall be nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nonbleeding.
- D. Protection and Treatment of Metals:
  1. Remove from metal surfaces lubricants used in fabrication and clean off other extraneous material before leaving shop.
  2. Provide protection against galvanic action wherever dissimilar metals are in contact, except in case of aluminum in permanent contact with galvanized steel, zinc, stainless steel, or relatively small areas of white bronze. Paint contact surfaces with one coat bituminous paint conforming to MIL-C-18480 or apply appropriate caulking material or nonabsorptive, noncorrosive, and nonstaining tape or gasket between contact surfaces.
- E. Metal sills and Closures: Fabricate accessories, spandrel panels, trim closures of sizes and shapes indicated from similar materials and finish as specified for wall system.
- F. Concealed Interior Mullion Reinforcing: ASTM A36M steel shapes as required for strength and mullion size limitations, hot dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123.

## 2.4 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protection for aluminum against galvanic action, wherever dissimilar materials are in contact, by painting contact surfaces of dissimilar material with a heavy coat of bituminous paint (complete

coverage), or by separating contact surfaces with a preformed neoprene tape having pressure sensitive adhesive coating on one side.

## **2.5 METAL FINISHES**

A. In accordance with NAAMM AMP500 series.

B. Anodized Aluminum:

1. AA-C22A41 Chemically etched medium matte, with clear anodic coating, Class 1 Architectural, 0.7-mil thick.

D. Shop and Touch-Up Primer for Steel Components: SSPC Paint 25 red oxide.

E. Touch-Up Primer for galvanized Steel Surfaces: SSPC Paint 20 zinc rich.

F. Concealed Steel Items: Galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123.

G. Apply one coat of bituminous paint to concealed aluminum surfaces in contact with cementitious or dissimilar materials.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

A. Prior to installation of glazed curtain wall system, arrange for representative(s) of manufacturer to examine structure and substrate to determine that they are properly prepared, and ready to receive glazed curtain wall work included herein.

B. Verifying Conditions and Adjacent Surfaces: After establishment of lines and grades and prior to system installation examine supporting structural elements. Verify governing dimensions, including floor elevations, floor to floor heights, minimum clearances between curtain wall and structural frames, and other permissible dimensional tolerances in building frame.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

A. Take field dimensions and examine condition of substrates, supports, and other conditions under which work of this section is to be performed to verify that work may properly commence. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Contact between aluminum and dissimilar metals shall receive a protective coating of asphaltic paint for prevention of electrolytic action and corrosion.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

A. Installation and erection of glazed curtain wall system and all components shall be in accordance with written directions of curtain wall manufacturer. Match profiles, sizes, and spacing indicated on approved shop drawings.

B. Bench Marks and Reference Points: Establish and permanently mark bench marks for elevations and building line offsets for alignment at

convenient points on each floor level. Should any error or discrepancy be discovered in location of marks, stop erection work in that area until discrepancies have been corrected.

- C. Ensure that drainage system operates properly in accord with AAMA 501 procedures.
- D. Do not proceed with structural silicone work when metal temperature is below 0 degrees C (32 degrees F).
- E. Isolate between aluminum and dissimilar metals with protective coating or plastic strip to prevent electrolytic corrosion.
- F. Install glazed aluminum curtain wall system so as to maintain a virtually flat face cap, with no visible bowing.
- G. Install entire system so that fasteners are not visible.
- H. Tolerances:
  - 1. Maximum variation from plane or location shown on approved shop drawings: 3 mm per 3600 mm (1/8 inch per 12 feet) of length up to not more than 13 mm (1/2 inch) in any total length.
  - 2. Maximum offset from true alignment between two identical members abutting end to end in line: 0.8 mm (1/32 inch).
  - 3. Sealant Space Between Curtain Wall Mullion and Adjacent Construction: Maximum of 19 mm (3/4 inch) and minimum of 6 mm (1/4 inch).

J. Joint Sealants:

- 1. Joint Sealants: Shall be in accordance with requirements of Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- 2. Surfaces to be primed and sealed shall be clean, dry to touch, free from frost, moisture, grease, oil, wax, lacquer, paint, or other foreign matter. Enclose joints on three sides. Clean out grooves to proper depth. Joint dimensions shall conform to approved detail drawings with a tolerance of plus 3 mm (1/8 inch). Do not apply compound unless ambient temperature is between 5 and 35 degrees C (40 and 90 degrees F). Clean out loose particles and mortar just before sealing. Remove protective coatings or coverings from surfaces in contact with sealants before applying sealants or tapes. Solvents used to remove coatings shall be of type that leave no residue on metals.
- 3. Match approved sample. Force compound into grooves with sufficient pressure to fill grooves solidly. Sealing compound shall be uniformly smooth and free of wrinkles and, unless indicated otherwise, shall be tooled and left sufficiently convex to result in a flush joint when dry. Do not trim edges of sealing material after joints are tooled. Mix only amount of multi-component sealant which can be installed

within four hours, but at no time shall this amount exceed 19 liters (5 gallons).

4. Apply primer to masonry, concrete, wood, and other surfaces as recommended by sealant manufacturer. Do not apply primer to surfaces which will be exposed after caulking is completed.
5. Tightly pack backing in bottom of joints which are over 13 mm (1/2 inch) in depth with specified backing material to depth indicated or specified. Roll backing material of hose or rod stock into joints to prevent lengthwise stretching.
6. Install bond preventive material at back or bottom of joint cavities in which no backstop material is required, covering full width and length of joint cavities.
7. Remove compound smears from surfaces of materials adjacent to sealed joints as work progresses. Use masking tape on each side of joint where texture of adjacent material will be difficult to clean. Remove masking tape immediately after filling joint. Scrape off fresh compound from adjacent surfaces immediately and rub clean with approved solvent. Upon completion of caulking and sealing, remove remaining smears, stains, and other soiling, and leave work in clean neat condition.

K. Glass:

1. Refer to Section 08 80 00, GLAZING, and drawing for glass types. Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations as modified herein.
2. Before installing glass, inspect sash and frames to receive glass for defects such as dimensional variations, glass clearances, open joints, or other conditions that will prevent satisfactory glass installation. Do not proceed with installation until defects have been corrected.
3. Clean sealing surfaces at perimeter of glass and sealing surfaces of rebates and stop beads before applying glazing compound, sealing compound, glazing tape, or gaskets. Use only approved solvents and cleaning agents recommended by compound or gasket manufacturer. All sashes shall be designed for outside glazing. Provide continuous snap in glazing beads to suit glass as specified.
4. Insulating and tempered glass, and glass of other types that exceed 100 united inches in size: Provide void space at head and jamb to allow glass to expand or move without exuding sealant. Perimeter frames and ventilator sections shall have glazing rebates providing

an unobstructed glazing surface 19 mm (3/4 inch) in height. Glazing rebate surfaces must be sloped to shed water.

5. Provide adequate means to weep incidental water and condensation away from sealed edges of insulated glass units and out of wall system. Weeping of lock-strip gaskets should be in accordance with recommendation of glass manufacturer.

L. Metal Copings:

1. Refer to Section 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL for requirements of metal copings when they are not a part of glazed curtain wall system work.
2. Coordinate curtain wall installation with metal coping detail on contract drawings. Provide watertight seal to meet criteria set forth in this section regarding air and water penetration.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust doors to provide a tight fit at contact points and operate easily.
- B. Adjust weather-stripping to make even contact with surfaces.
- C. Adjust operating hardware and moving parts.

### **3.5 CLEANING**

- A. Install curtain wall frame and associated metal to avoid soiling or smudging finish.
- B. Clean metal surfaces promptly after installation, exercising care to avoid damage to coatings.
- C. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt, and other substances.
- D. Follow recommendations of manufacturer in selection of cleaning agents. Do not use cleaning agents containing ammonia or other compounds that might damage finished metal surfaces.
- E. Replace cracked, broken, and defective glass with new glass at no additional cost to Government. Just prior to final acceptance of curtain wall system clean glass surfaces on both sides, remove labels, paint spots, compounds, and other defacements, and clean metal fixed panels. Remove and replace components that cannot be cleaned successfully.

### **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Engage an AAMA accredited commercial qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field quality-control tests specified, and to prepare test reports: Submit information regarding testing laboratory's facilities and qualifications of technical personnel to Contracting Officer for approval.

- B. Conduct field check test for water leakage on designated wall areas after erection to comply with MCWM-1. Conduct test on two wall areas, two bays wide by two stories high where directed. Conduct test and take necessary remedial action as directed by Contracting Officer.
- C. Test Specimen:
1. Test specimen shall include curtain wall assembly and construction. Test chamber shall be affixed to exterior side of test specimen and test shall be conducted using positive static air pressure.
  2. Test specimens shall be selected by Contracting Officer after curtain wall system has been installed in accordance with contract drawings and specification.
- D. Sealant Adhesion Tests: Test installed sealant, in presence of sealant manufacturer's field representative, in a minimum of two areas and as follows:
1. Test structural silicone sealant according to field adhesion test method described in AAMA CW 13, "Structural Sealant Glazing Systems (A Design Guide)."
  2. Test weatherseal sealant as recommended in writing by sealant manufacturer.
- E. Air Infiltration: Test glazed aluminum curtain wall system according to AAMA 503, which requires testing according to ASTM E783.
1. Field air leakage testing is not required for continuous curtain wall systems.
  2. Static-Air-Pressure Differential: 75 Pa (1.57 lbf/sq. ft.) minimum.
  3. Air Leakage: 0.03 L/s per sq. m (0.06 cfm/sq. ft.) of surface maximum.
- F. Water Penetration: Test glazed aluminum curtain wall system for compliance with requirements according to AAMA 503, which requires testing according to ASTM E1105.
1. Uniform Static-Air-Pressure Difference: 20 percent of positive design wind load, but not less than 479 Pa (10 psf). No uncontrolled water shall be present.
- G. Retesting:
1. Should system fail field test, system may be modified or repaired, and retested.
  2. Should system fail second field test, system may be additionally modified or repaired, and retested.
  3. All modifications and repairs made to tested areas shall be recorded, and same modifications and repairs made to all system and adjacent construction on project.



4. Should second test fail, Contracting Officer may require testing of additional areas of the curtain wall.

H. Rejection:

1. Failure of any of specimens to meet test requirements of third test shall be cause for rejection of wall system and adjacent construction on project.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, protect windows, and other exposed surfaces from disfiguration, contamination, contact with harmful materials, and from other construction hazards that will interfere with their operation, or damage their appearance or finish. Protection methods shall be in accordance with recommendations of product manufacturers or of respective trade association. Remove paper or tape factory applied protection immediately after installation. Clean surfaces of mortar, plaster, paint, smears of sealants, and other foreign matter to present neat appearance and prevent fouling of operation. In addition, wash with a stiff fiber brush, soap and water, and thoroughly rinse. Where surfaces become stained or discolored, clean or restore finish in accordance with recommendations of product manufacturer or respective trade association.

- - - END - - -

**SECTION 08 71 00  
DOOR HARDWARE****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Door hardware and related items necessary for complete installation and operation of doors.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Caulking: Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.
- B. Application of Hardware: Section 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES ,Section 08 41 13, ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS, Section 08 33 00, COILING DOORS AND GRILLES.
- C. Finishes: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- D. Painting: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.
- E. Electrical: Division 26, ELECTRICAL.

**1.3 GENERAL**

- A. All hardware shall comply with UFAS, (Uniform Federal Accessible Standards) unless specified otherwise.
- B. Provide rated door hardware assemblies where required by most current version of the International Building Code (IBC).
- C. Hardware for Labeled Fire Doors and Exit Doors: Conform to requirements of NFPA 80 for labeled fire doors and to NFPA 101 for exit doors, as well as to other requirements specified. Provide hardware listed by UL, except where heavier materials, large size, or better grades are specified herein under paragraph HARDWARE SETS. In lieu of UL labeling and listing, test reports from a nationally recognized testing agency may be submitted showing that hardware has been tested in accordance with UL test methods and that it conforms to NFPA requirements.
- D. Hardware for application on metal and wood doors and frames shall be made to standard templates. Furnish templates to the fabricator of these items in sufficient time so as not to delay the construction.
- E. The following items shall be of the same manufacturer, if possible, except as otherwise specified:
  - 1. Mortise locksets.
  - 2. Hinges for hollow metal and wood doors.
  - 3. Surface applied overhead door closers.
  - 4. Exit devices.
  - 5. Floor closers.

**1.4 WARRANTY**

A. Automatic door operators shall be subject to the terms of FAR Clause 52.24-21, except that the Warranty period shall be two years in lieu of one year for all items except as noted below:

1. Locks, latchsets, and panic hardware: 5 years.
2. Door closers and continuous hinges: 10 years.

**1.5 MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

A. In accordance with Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS Article titled "INSTRUCTIONS", furnish maintenance manuals and instructions on all door hardware.

**1.6 SUBMITTALS**

A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES. Submit 6 copies of the schedule per Section 01 33 23 plus 2 copies to the VAMC Locksmith (VISN Locksmith if the VAMC does not have a locksmith).

B. Hardware Schedule: Prepare and submit hardware schedule in the following form:

Hardware Item	Quantity	Size	Reference Publication Type No.	Finish	Mfr. Name and Catalog No.	Key Control Symbols	UL Mark (if fire rated and listed)	ANSI/BHMA Finish Designation

C. Samples and Manufacturers' Literature:

1. Samples: All hardware items (proposed for the project) that have not been previously approved by Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association shall be submitted for approval. Tag and mark all items with manufacturer's name, catalog number and project number.
2. Samples are not required for hardware listed in the specifications by manufacturer's catalog number, if the contractor proposes to use the manufacturer's product specified.

D. Certificate of Compliance and Test Reports: Submit certificates that hardware conforms to the requirements specified herein. Certificates shall be accompanied by copies of reports as referenced. The testing shall have been conducted either in the manufacturer's plant and

certified by an independent testing laboratory or conducted in an independent laboratory, within four years of submittal of reports for approval.

#### **1.7 DELIVERY AND MARKING**

- A. Deliver items of hardware to job site in their original containers, complete with necessary appurtenances including screws, keys, and instructions. Tag one of each different item of hardware and deliver to Resident Engineer for reference purposes. Tag shall identify items by Project Specification number and manufacturer's catalog number. These items shall remain on file in Resident Engineer's office until all other similar items have been installed in project, at which time the Resident Engineer will deliver items on file to Contractor for installation in predetermined locations on the project.

#### **1.8 PREINSTALLATION MEETING**

- A. Convene a preinstallation meeting not less than 30 days before start of installation of door hardware. Require attendance of parties directly affecting work of this section, including Contractor and Installer, Architect, Project Engineer and VA Locksmith, Hardware Consultant, and Hardware Manufacturer's Representative. Review the following:
  - 1. Inspection of door hardware.
  - 2. Job and surface readiness.
  - 3. Coordination with other work.
  - 4. Protection of hardware surfaces.
  - 5. Substrate surface protection.
  - 6. Installation.
  - 7. Adjusting.
  - 8. Repair.
  - 9. Field quality control.
  - 10. Cleaning.

#### **1.9 INSTRUCTIONS**

- A. Hardware Set Symbols on Drawings: Except for protective plates, door stops, mates, thresholds and the like specified herein, hardware requirements for each door are indicated on drawings by symbols. Symbols for hardware sets consist of letters (e.g., "HW") followed by a number. Each number designates a set of hardware items applicable to a door type.

B. Manufacturers' Catalog Number References: Where manufacturers' products are specified herein, products of other manufacturers which are considered equivalent to those specified may be used. Manufacturers whose products are specified are identified by abbreviations as follows:

Adams-Rite	Adams Rite Mfg. Co.	Pomona, CA
Best	Best Access Systems	Indianapolis, IN
Don-Jo	Don-Jo Manufacturing	Sterling, MA
G.E. Security	GE Security, Inc.	Bradentown, FL
Markar	Markar Architectural Products	Pomona, CA
Pemko	Pemko Manufacturing Co.	Ventura, CA
Rixson	Rixson	Franklin Park, IL
Rockwood	Rockwood Manufacturing Co.	Rockwood, PA
Securitron	Securitron Magnalock Corp.	Sparks, NV
Southern Folger	Southern Folger Detention Equipment Co.	San Antonio, TX
Stanley	The Stanley Works	New Britain, CT
Tice	Tice Industries	Portland, OR
Trimco	Triangle Brass Mfg. Co.	Los Angeles, CA
Zero	Zero Weather Stripping Co.	New York, NY

C. Keying: A new Great Grandmaster key shall be established for this project. The key system shall be small format (Best size and profile) removable core type as previously described. The key blanks shall be protected by a utility patent with a minimum seven years remaining on the patent from the start of construction, and protected by contract-controlled distribution. The manufacturer shall furnish code pattern listings in both paper and electronic formats so keys may be reproduced by code.; provide electronic format in file type required by project's key control software. The manufacturer shall design the new key system with the capacity to rekey the existing system and also provide for 25 percent expansion capability beyond this requirement. Submit a keying chart for approval showing proposed keying layout and listing expansion capacity.

1. Keying information will be furnished to the Contractor by the Resident Engineer.

2. Supply information regarding key control of cylinder locks to manufacturers of equipment having cylinder type locks. Notify Resident Engineer immediately when and to whom keys or keying information is supplied. Return all such keys to the Resident Engineer.

#### 1.10 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only. In text, hardware items are referred to by series, types, etc., listed in such specifications and standards, except as otherwise specified.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - F883-04.....Padlocks
  - E2180-07.....Standard Test Method for Determining the  
Activity of Incorporated Antimicrobial Agent(s)  
In Polymeric or Hydrophobic Materials
- C. American National Standards Institute/Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (ANSI/BHMA):
  - A156.1-06.....Butts and Hinges
  - A156.2-03.....Bored and Pre-assembled Locks and Latches
  - A156.3-08.....Exit Devices, Coordinators, and Auto Flush  
Bolts
  - A156.4-08.....Door Controls (Closers)
  - A156.5-01.....Auxiliary Locks and Associated Products
  - A156.6-05.....Architectural Door Trim
  - A156.8-05.....Door Controls-Overhead Stops and Holders
  - A156.12-05 .....Interconnected Locks and Latches
  - A156.13-05.....Mortise Locks and Latches Series 1000
  - A156.14-07 .....Sliding and Folding Door Hardware
  - A156.15-06.....Release Devices-Closer Holder, Electromagnetic  
and Electromechanical
  - A156.16-08.....Auxiliary Hardware
  - A156.17-04 .....Self-Closing Hinges and Pivots
  - A156.18-06.....Materials and Finishes
  - A156.20-06 .....Strap and Tee Hinges, and Hasps
  - A156.21-09.....Thresholds
  - A156.22-05.....Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems

A156.23-04.....Electromagnetic Locks  
A156.24-03.....Delayed Egress Locking Systems  
A156.25-07 .....Electrified Locking Devices  
A156.26-06.....Continuous Hinges  
A156.28-07 .....Master Keying Systems  
A156.29-07 .....Exit Locks and Alarms  
A156.30-03 .....High Security Cylinders  
A156.31-07 .....Electric Strikes and Frame Mounted Actuators  
A250.8-03.....Standard Steel Doors and Frames

D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

80-10.....Fire Doors and Fire Windows  
101-09.....Life Safety Code

E. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

Building Materials Directory (2008)

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 BUTT HINGES**

A. ANSI A156.1. Provide only three-knuckle hinges, except five-knuckle where the required hinge type is not available in a three-knuckle version (e.g., some types of swing-clear hinges). The following types of butt hinges shall be used for the types of doors listed, except where otherwise specified:

1. Exterior Doors: Type A2112/A5112 for doors 900 mm (3 feet) wide or less and Type A2111/A5111 for doors over 900 mm (3 feet) wide. Hinges for exterior outswing doors shall have non-removable pins. Hinges for exterior fire-rated doors shall be of stainless steel material.
2. Interior Doors: Type A8112/A5112 for doors 900 mm (3 feet) wide or less and Type A8111/A5111 for doors over 900 mm (3 feet) wide. Hinges for doors exposed to high humidity areas (shower rooms, toilet rooms, kitchens, janitor rooms, etc. shall be of stainless steel material.

B. Provide quantity and size of hinges per door leaf as follows:

1. Doors up to 1210 mm (4 feet) high: 2 hinges.
2. Doors 1210 mm (4 feet) to 2260 mm (7 feet 5 inches) high: 3 hinges minimum.
3. Doors greater than 2260 mm (7 feet 5 inches) high: 4 hinges.

4. Doors up to 900 mm (3 feet) wide, standard weight: 114 mm x 114 mm (4-1/2 inches x 4-1/2 inches) hinges.
  5. Doors over 900 mm (3 feet) to 1065 mm (3 feet 6 inches) wide, standard weight: 127 mm x 114 mm (5 inches x 4-1/2 inches).
  6. Doors over 1065 mm (3 feet 6 inches) to 1210 mm (4 feet), heavy weight: 127 mm x 114 mm (5 inches x 4-1/2 inches).
  7. Provide heavy-weight hinges where specified.
  8. At doors weighing 330 kg (150 lbs.) or more, furnish 127 mm (5 inch) high hinges.
- C. See Articles "MISCELLANEOUS HARDWARE" and "HARDWARE SETS" for pivots and hinges other than butts specified above and continuous hinges specified below.

## **2.2 CONTINUOUS HINGES**

- A. ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1-600.
1. Listed under Category N in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."
- B. General: Minimum 0.120-inch- (3.0-mm-) thick, hinge leaves with minimum overall width of 4 inches (102 mm); fabricated to full height of door and frame and to template screw locations; with components finished after milling and drilling are complete
- C. Continuous, Barrel-Type Hinges: Hinge with knuckles formed around a Teflon-coated 6.35mm (0.25-inch) minimum diameter pin that extends entire length of hinge.
1. Base Metal for Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel.
  2. Base Metal for Interior Hinges: Stainless steel.
  3. Where required to clear adjacent casing, trim, and wall conditions and allow full door swing, provide wide throw hinges of minimum width required.
  4. Provide with manufacturer's cut-outs for separate mortised power transfers and/or mortised automatic door bottoms where they occur.
  5. Where thru-wire power transfers are integral to the hinge, provide hinge with easily removable portion to allow easy access to wiring connections.
  6. Where models are specified that provide an integral wrap-around edge guard for the hinge edge of the door, provide manufacturer's adjustable threaded stud and machine screw mechanism to allow the door to be adjusted within the wrap-around edge guard.



**2.3 DOOR CLOSING DEVICES**

A. Closing devices shall be products of one manufacturer.

**2.4 OVERHEAD CLOSERS**

A. Conform to ANSI A156.4, Grade 1.

B. Closers shall conform to the following:

1. The closer shall have minimum 50 percent adjustable closing force over minimum value for that closer and have adjustable hydraulic back check effective between 60 degrees and 85 degrees of door opening.
2. Where specified, closer shall have hold-open feature.
3. Size Requirements: Provide multi-size closers, sizes 1 through 6, except where multi-size closer is not available for the required application.
4. Material of closer body shall be forged or cast.
5. Arm and brackets for closers shall be steel, malleable iron or high strength ductile cast iron.
6. Where closers are exposed to the exterior or are mounted in rooms that experience high humidity, provide closer body and arm assembly of stainless steel material.
7. Closers shall have full size metal cover; plastic covers will not be accepted.
8. Closers shall have adjustable hydraulic back-check, separate valves for closing and latching speed, adjustable back-check positioning valve, and adjustable delayed action valve.
9. Provide closers with any accessories required for the mounting application, including (but not limited to) drop plates, special soffit plates, spacers for heavy-duty parallel arm fifth screws, bull-nose or other regular arm brackets, longer or shorter arm assemblies, and special factory templating. Provide special arms, drop plates, and templating as needed to allow mounting at doors with overhead stops and/or holders.
10. Closer arms or backcheck valve shall not be used to stop the door from overswing, except in applications where a separate wall, floor, or overhead stop cannot be used.
11. Provide parallel arm closers with heavy duty rigid arm.

12. Where closers are to be installed on the push side of the door, provide parallel arm type except where conditions require use of top jamb arm.
13. Provide all surface closers with the same body attachment screw pattern for ease of replacement and maintenance.
14. All closers shall have a 1 ½" (38mm) minimum piston diameter.

## 2.6 DOOR STOPS

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.16.
- B. Provide door stops wherever an opened door or any item of hardware thereon would strike a wall, column, equipment or other parts of building construction. For concrete, masonry or quarry tile construction, use lead expansion shields for mounting door stops.
- C. Where cylindrical locks with turn pieces or pushbuttons occur, equip wall bumpers Type L02251 (rubber pads having concave face) to receive turn piece or button.
- D. Provide floor stops (Type L02141 or L02161 in office areas; Type L02121 x 3 screws into floor elsewhere. Wall bumpers, where used, must be installed to impact the trim or the door within the leading half of its width. Floor stops, where used, must be installed within 4-inches of the wall face and impact the door within the leading half of its width.
- E. Where drywall partitions occur, use floor stops, Type L02141 or L02161 in office areas, Type L02121 elsewhere.
- F. Provide stop Type L02011, as applicable for exterior doors. At outswing doors where stop can be installed in concrete, provide stop mated to concrete anchor set in 76mm (3-inch) core-drilled hole and filled with quick-setting cement.
- G. Omit stops where floor mounted door holders are required and where automatic operated doors occur.
- H. Provide appropriate roller bumper for each set of doors (except where closet doors occur) where two doors would interfere with each other in swinging.
- I. Provide appropriate door mounted stop on doors in individual toilets where floor or wall mounted stops cannot be used.
- J. Provide overhead surface applied stop Type C02541, ANSI A156.8 on patient toilet doors in bedrooms where toilet door could come in contact with the bedroom door.

- K. Provide door stops on doors where combination closer magnetic holders are specified, except where wall stops cannot be used or where floor stops cannot be installed within 4-inches of the wall.
- L. Where the specified wall or floor stop cannot be used, provide concealed overhead stops (surface-mounted where concealed cannot be used).

## **2.7 OVERHEAD DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS**

- A. Conform to ANSI Standard A156.8. Overhead holders shall be of sizes recommended by holder manufacturer for each width of door. Set overhead holders for 110 degree opening, unless limited by building construction or equipment. Provide Grade 1 overhead concealed slide type: stop-only at rated doors and security doors, hold-open type with exposed hold-open on/off control at all other doors requiring overhead door stops.

## **2.8 LOCKS AND LATCHES**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.2. Locks and latches for doors 45 mm (1-3/4 inch) thick or over shall have beveled fronts. Lock cylinders shall have not less than six pins. Cylinders for all locksets shall be removable core type. Cylinder shall be removable by special key or tool. Construct all cores so that they will be interchangeable into the core housings of all mortise locks, rim locks, cylindrical locks, and any other type lock included in the Great Grand Master Key System. Disassembly of lever or lockset shall not be required to remove core from lockset. All locksets or latches on double doors with fire label shall have latch bolt with 19 mm (3/4 inch) throw, unless shorter throw allowed by the door manufacturer's fire label. Provide temporary keying device or construction core of allow opening and closing during construction and prior to the installation of final cores.
- B. In addition to above requirements, locks and latches shall comply with following requirements:
  - 1. Mortise Lock and Latch Sets: Conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.13. Mortise locksets shall be series 1000, minimum Grade 2. All locksets and latchsets, except on designated doors in Psychiatric (Mental Health) areas, shall have lever handles fabricated from cast stainless steel. Provide sectional (lever x rose) lever design matching [\_\_\_\_\_]. No substitute lever material shall be accepted. All locks and latchsets shall be furnished with 122.55 mm (4-7/8-inch) curved lip strike and wrought box. At outswing pairs with

overlapping astragals, provide flat lip strip with 21mm (7/8-inch) lip-to-center dimension. Lock function F02 shall be furnished with emergency tools/keys for emergency entrance. All lock cases installed on lead lined doors shall be lead lined before applying final hardware finish. Furnish armored fronts for all mortise locks. Where mortise locks are installed in high-humidity locations or where exposed to the exterior on both sides of the opening, provide non-ferrous mortise lock case.

2. Cylindrical Lock and Latch Sets: levers shall meet ADA (Americans with Disabilities Act) requirements. Cylindrical locksets shall be series 4000 Grade I. All locks and latchsets shall be furnished with 122.55 mm (4-7/8-inch) curved lip strike and wrought box. At outswing pairs with overlapping astragals, provide flat lip strip with 21mm (7/8-inch) lip-to-center dimension. Provide lever design to match design selected by Architect or to match existing lever design. Where two turn pieces are specified for lock F76, turn piece on inside knob shall lock and unlock inside knob, and turn piece on outside knob shall unlock outside knob when inside knob is in the locked position. (This function is intended to allow emergency entry into these rooms without an emergency key or any special tool.)
3. Auxiliary locks shall be as specified under hardware sets and conform to ANSI A156.5.
4. Locks on designated doors in Psychiatric (Mental Health) areas shall be paddle type with arrow projection covers and be UL Listed. Provide these locks with paddle in the down position on both sides of the door. Locks shall be fabricated of wrought stainless steel.
5. Privacy locks in non-mental-health patient rooms shall have an inside thumbturn for privacy and an outside thumbturn for emergency entrance. Single occupancy patient privacy doors shall typically swing out; where such doors cannot swing out, provide center-pivoted doors with rescue hardware (see HW-2B).

## **2.9 ELECTRIC STRIKES**

- A. ANSI/ BHMA A156.31 Grade 1.
- B. General: Use fail-secure electric strikes at fire-rated doors.

**2.10 KEYS**

- A. Stamp all keys with change number and key set symbol. Furnish keys in quantities as follows:

<b>Locks/Keys</b>	<b>Quantity</b>
Cylinder locks	2 keys each
Cylinder lock change key blanks	100 each different key way
Master-keyed sets	6 keys each
Grand Master sets	6 keys each
Great Grand Master set	5 keys
Control key	2 keys

- B. Psychiatric keys shall be cut so that first two bittings closest to the key shoulder are shallow to provide greater strength at point of greatest torque.

**2.11 KEY CABINET**

- A. ANSI Standard A156.5. Provide key cabinet made of cold rolled, 1.2 mm (0.0478 inch) thick furniture steel electro-welded. Doors shall have "no sag" continuous brass-pin piano type hinge and be equipped with chrome plated locking door handles, hook cam and mechanical pushbutton door lock. Key Cabinet and Key Control System shall accommodate all keys for this project plus 25 percent. Provide minimum number of multiple cabinets where a single cabinet of largest size will not accommodate the required number of keys.
- B. Key tags shall consist of two sets: Permanent self-locking and loan key snaphook type with tag colors as follows: Red fiber marker of the permanent self-locking type approximately 32 mm (1-1/4 inch) in diameter engraved with the legend "FILE KEY MUST NOT BE LOANED." Also furnish for each hook a white cloverleaf key marker with snap-hooks engraved with the legend "LOAN KEY."
- C. The manufacturer of the lock cylinders and locks shall attach a key tag to keys of each lock cylinder and shall mark thereon the respective item number and key change number. Provide each group of keys in a key gathering envelope (supplied by Key Cabinet Manufacturer) in which the lock manufacturer shall include the following information: Item number, key change number and door number. The contractor shall furnish the Key Cabinet Manufacturer the hardware and keying schedules and change keys.

- D. The Key Cabinet Manufacturer shall set up a three-way cross index system, including master keys, listing the keys alphabetically, the hooks numerically and the key changes numerically on different colored index cards. Index cards shall be typewritten and inserted in a durable binder. Attach the keys to the two sets of numbered tags supplied with the cabinet. (The permanent tag and the loan key tag). Instruct the owner in proper use of the system. Install cabinet as directed by the Resident Engineer.

## **2.12 ARMOR PLATES, KICK PLATES, MOP PLATES AND DOOR EDGING**

- A. Conform to ANSI Standard A156.6.
- B. Provide protective plates and door edging as specified below:
1. Kick plates, mop plates and armor plates of metal, Type J100 series.
  2. Provide kick plates and mop plates where specified. Kick plates shall be 254 mm (10 inches) or 305 mm (12 inches) high. Mop plates shall be 152 mm (6 inches) high. Both kick and mop plates shall be minimum 1.27 mm (0.050 inches) thick. Provide kick and mop plates beveled on all 4 edges (B4E). On push side of doors where jamb stop extends to floor, make kick plates 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) less than width of door, except pairs of metal doors which shall have plates 25 mm (1 inch) less than width of each door. Extend all other kick and mop plates to within 6 mm (1/4 inch) of each edge of doors. Kick and mop plates shall butt astragals. For jamb stop requirements, see specification sections pertaining to door frames.
  3. Kick plates and/or mop plates are not required on following door sides:
    - a. Armor plate side of doors;
    - b. Exterior side of exterior doors;
    - c. Closet side of closet doors;
    - d. Both sides of aluminum entrance doors.
  4. Armor plates for doors are listed under Article "Hardware Sets". Armor plates shall be thickness as noted in the hardware set, 875 mm (35 inches) high and 38 mm (1-1/2 inches) less than width of doors, except on pairs of metal doors. Provide armor plates beveled on all 4 edges (B4E). Plates on pairs of metal doors shall be 25 mm (1 inch) less than width of each door. Where top of intermediate rail of door is less than 875 mm (35 inches) from door bottom, extend armor plates to within 13 mm (1/2 inch) of top of intermediate rail.

On doors equipped with panic devices, extend armor plates to within 13 mm (1/2 inch) of panic bolt push bar.

5. Where louver or grille occurs in lower portion of doors, substitute stretcher plate and kick plate in place of armor plate. Size of stretcher plate and kick plate shall be 254 mm (10 inches) high.
6. Provide stainless steel edge guards where so specified at wood doors. Provide mortised type instead of surface type except where door construction and/or ratings will not allow. Provide edge guards of bevel and thickness to match wood door. Provide edge guards with factory cut-outs for door hardware that must be installed through or extend through the edge guard. Provide full-height edge guards except where door rating does not allow; in such cases, provide edge guards to height of bottom of typical lockset armor front. Forward edge guards to wood door manufacturer for factory installation on doors.

## **2.13 EXIT DEVICES**

- A. Conform to ANSI Standard A156.3. Exit devices shall be Grade 1; type and function are specified in hardware sets. Provide flush with finished floor strikes for vertical rod exit devices in interior of building. Trim shall have cast satin stainless steel lever handles of design similar to locksets, unless otherwise specified. Provide key cylinders for keyed operating trim and, where specified, cylinder dogging.
- B. Surface vertical rod panics shall only be provided less bottom rod; provide fire pins as required by exit device and door fire labels. Do not provide surface vertical rod panics at exterior doors.
- C. Concealed vertical rod panics shall be provided less bottom rod at interior doors, unless lockable or otherwise specified; provide fire pins as required by exit device and door fire labels. Where concealed vertical rod panics are specified at exterior doors, provide with both top and bottom rods.
- D. Where removable mullions are specified at pairs with rim panic devices, provide mullion with key-removable feature.
- E. At non-rated openings with panic hardware, provide panic hardware with key cylinder dogging feature.

- F. Exit devices for fire doors shall comply with Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., requirements for Fire Exit Hardware. Submit proof of compliance.

**2.14 FLUSH BOLTS (LEVER EXTENSION)**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.16. Flush bolts shall be Type L24081 unless otherwise specified. Furnish proper dustproof strikes conforming to ANSI A156.16, for flush bolts required on lower part of doors.
- B. Lever extension manual flush bolts shall only be used at non-fire-rated pairs for rooms only accessed by maintenance personnel.
- C. Face plates for cylindrical strikes shall be rectangular and not less than 25 mm by 63 mm (1 inch by 2-1/2 inches).
- D. Friction-fit cylindrical dustproof strikes with circular face plate may be used only where metal thresholds occur.
- E. Provide extension rods for top bolt where door height exceeds 2184 mm (7 feet 2 inches).

**2.15 FLUSH BOLTS (AUTOMATIC)**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.3. Dimension of flush bolts shall conform to ANSI A115. Bolts shall conform to Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., requirements for fire door hardware. Flush bolts shall automatically latch and unlatch. Furnish dustproof strikes conforming to ANSI A156.16 for bottom flushbolt. Face plates for dustproof strike shall be rectangular and not less than 38 mm by 90 mm (1-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches).
- B. At interior doors, provide auto flush bolts less bottom bolt, unless otherwise specified, except at wood pairs with fire-rating greater than 20 minutes; provide fire pins as required by auto flush bolt and door fire labels.

**2.16 DOOR PULLS**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.6. Pull plate 90 mm by 350 mm (3-1/2 inches by 14 inches), unless otherwise specified. Cut plates of door pulls for cylinders, or turn pieces where required.

**2.17 PUSH PLATES**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.6. Metal, Type J302, 200 mm (8 inches) wide by 350 mm (14 inches) high. Provide metal Type J300 plates 100 mm (4 inches wide by 350 mm (14 inches) high) where push plates are specified for doors with stiles less than 200 mm (8 inches) wide. Cut plates for cylinders, and turn pieces where required.



**2.18 COMBINATION PUSH AND PULL PLATES**

- A. Conform to ANSI 156.6. Type J303, stainless steel 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick, 80 mm (3-1/3 inches) wide by 800 mm (16 inches) high), top and bottom edges shall be rounded. Secure plates to wood doors with 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) long No. 12 wood screws. Cut plates for turn pieces, and cylinders where required. Pull shall be mounted down.

**2.19 COORDINATORS**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.16. Coordinators, when specified for fire doors, shall comply with Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., requirements for fire door hardware. Coordinator may be omitted on exterior pairs of doors where either door will close independently regardless of the position of the other door. Coordinator may be omitted on interior pairs of non-labeled open where open back strike is used. Open back strike shall not be used on labeled doors. Paint coordinators to match door frames, unless coordinators are plated. Provide bar type coordinators, except where gravity coordinators are required at acoustic pairs. For bar type coordinators, provide filler bars for full width and, as required, brackets for push-side surface mounted closers, overhead stops, and vertical rod panic strikes.

**2.20 THRESHOLDS**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.21, mill finish extruded aluminum, except as otherwise specified. In existing construction, thresholds shall be installed in a bed of sealant with ¼-20 stainless steel machine screws and expansion shields. In new construction, embed aluminum anchors coated with epoxy in concrete to secure thresholds. Furnish thresholds for the full width of the openings.
- B. For thresholds at elevators entrances see other sections of specifications.
- C. At exterior doors and any interior doors exposed to moisture, provide threshold with non-slip abrasive finish.
- D. Provide with miter returns where threshold extends more than 12 mm (0.5 inch) from frame face.

**2.21 AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOM SEAL AND RUBBER GASKET FOR LIGHT PROOF OR SOUND CONTROL DOORS**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.22. Provide mortise or under-door type, except where not practical. For mortise automatic door bottoms, provide type specific for door construction (wood or metal).

**2.22 WEATHERSTRIPS (FOR EXTERIOR DOORS)**

- A. Conform to ANSI A156.22. Air leakage shall not to exceed 0.50 CFM per foot of crack length ( $0.000774\text{m}^3/\text{s/m}$ ).

**2.23 MISCELLANEOUS HARDWARE**

- A. Access Doors (including Sheet Metal, Screen and Woven Wire Mesh Types): Except for fire-rated doors and doors to Temperature Control Cabinets, equip each single or double metal access door with Lock Type E76213, conforming to ANSI A156.5. Key locks as directed. Ship lock prepaid to the door manufacturer. Hinges shall be provided by door manufacturer.
- B. Cylinders for Various Partitions and Doors: Key cylinders same as entrance doors of area in which partitions and door occur.
- C. Mutes: Conform to ANSI A156.16. Provide door mutes or door silencers Type L03011 or L03021, depending on frame material, of white or light gray color, on each steel or wood door frame, except at fire-rated frames, lead-lined frames and frames for sound-resistant, lightproof and electromagnetically shielded doors. Furnish 3 mutes for single doors and 2 mutes for each pair of doors, except double-acting doors. Provide 4 mutes or silencers for frames for each Dutch type door. Provide 2 mutes for each edge of sliding door which would contact door frame.

**2.24 FINISHES**

- A. Exposed surfaces of hardware shall have ANSI A156.18, finishes as specified below. Finishes on all hinges, pivots, closers, thresholds, etc., shall be as specified below under "Miscellaneous Finishes." For field painting (final coat) of ferrous hardware, see Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.
- B. 626 or 630: All surfaces on exterior and interior of buildings, except where other finishes are specified.
- C. Miscellaneous Finishes:
1. Hinges --exterior doors: 626 or 630.
  2. Hinges --interior doors: 652 or 630.
  3. Pivots: Match door trim.
  4. Door Closers: Factory applied paint finish. Dull or Satin Aluminum color.
  5. Thresholds: Mill finish aluminum.
  6. Cover plates for floor hinges and pivots: 630.
  7. Other primed steel hardware: 600.

**2.25 BASE METALS**

- A. Apply specified U.S. Standard finishes on different base metals as following:

Finish	Base Metal
652	Steel
626	Brass or bronze
630	Stainless steel

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 HARDWARE HEIGHTS**

- A. For new buildings locate hardware on doors at heights specified below, with all hand-operated hardware centered within 864 mm (34 inches) to 1200 mm (48 inches), unless otherwise noted:
- B. Hardware Heights from Finished Floor:
1. Exit devices centerline of strike (where applicable) 1024 mm (40-5/16 inches).
  2. Locksets and latch sets centerline of strike 1024 mm (40-5/16 inches).
  3. Deadlocks centerline of strike 1219 mm (48 inches).
  4. Centerline of door pulls to be 1016 mm (40 inches).
  5. Push plates and push-pull shall be 1270 mm (50 inches) to top of plate.
  6. Push-pull latch to be 1024 mm (40-5/16 inches) to centerline of strike.
  7. Locate other hardware at standard commercial heights. Locate push and pull plates to prevent conflict with other hardware.

**3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Closer devices, including those with hold-open features, shall be equipped and mounted to provide maximum door opening permitted by building construction or equipment. Closers shall be mounted on side of door inside rooms, inside stairs, and away from corridors. At exterior doors, closers shall be mounted on interior side. Where closers are mounted on doors they shall be mounted with sex nuts and bolts; foot shall be fastened to frame with machine screws.

## B. Hinge Size Requirements:

Door Thickness	Door Width	Hinge Height
45 mm (1-3/4 inch)	900 mm (3 feet) and less	113 mm (4-1/2 inches)
45 mm (1-3/4 inch)	Over 900 mm (3 feet) but not more than 1200 mm (4 feet)	125 mm (5 inches)
35 mm (1-3/8 inch) (hollow core wood doors)	Not over 1200 mm (4 feet)	113 mm (4-1/2 inches)

C. Hinge leaves shall be sufficiently wide to allow doors to swing clear of door frame trim and surrounding conditions.

D. Where new hinges are specified for new doors in existing frames or existing doors in new frames, sizes of new hinges shall match sizes of existing hinges; or, contractor may reuse existing hinges provided hinges are restored to satisfactory operating condition as approved by Resident Engineer. Existing hinges shall not be reused on door openings having new doors and new frames. Coordinate preparation for hinge cut-outs and screw-hole locations on doors and frames.

## E. Hinges Required Per Door:

Doors 1500 mm (5 ft) or less in height	2 butts
Doors over 1500 mm (5 ft) high and not over 2280 mm (7 ft 6 in) high	3 butts
Doors over 2280 mm (7 feet 6 inches) high	4 butts
Dutch type doors	4 butts
Doors with spring hinges 1370 mm (4 feet 6 inches) high or less	2 butts
Doors with spring hinges over 1370 mm (4 feet 6 inches)	3 butts

F. Fastenings: Suitable size and type and shall harmonize with hardware as to material and finish. Provide machine screws and lead expansion shields to secure hardware to concrete, ceramic or quarry floor tile, or solid masonry. Fiber or rawl plugs and adhesives are not permitted. All fastenings exposed to weather shall be of nonferrous metal.

G. After locks have been installed; show in presence of Resident Engineer that keys operate their respective locks in accordance with keying requirements. (All keys, Master Key level and above shall be sent Registered Mail to the Medical Center Director along with the bitting

list. Also a copy of the invoice shall be sent to the Resident Engineer for his records.) Installation of locks which do not meet specified keying requirements shall be considered sufficient justification for rejection and replacement of all locks installed on project.

### **3.3 FINAL INSPECTION**

- A. Installer to provide letter to VA Resident/Project Engineer that upon completion, installer has visited the Project and has accomplished the following:
1. Re-adjust hardware.
  2. Evaluate maintenance procedures and recommend changes or additions, and instruct VA personnel.
  3. Identify items that have deteriorated or failed.
  4. Submit written report identifying problems.

### **3.4 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Demonstrate efficacy of mechanical hardware and electrical, and electronic hardware systems, including adjustment and maintenance procedures, to satisfaction of Resident/Project Engineer and VA Locksmith.

### **3.5 HARDWARE SETS**

- A. Following sets of hardware correspond to hardware symbols shown on drawings. Only those hardware sets that are shown on drawings will be required. Disregard hardware sets listed in specifications but not shown on drawings.

#### **ELECTRIC HARDWARE ABBREVIATIONS LEGEND:**

ADO = Automatic Door Operator

EMCH = Electro-Mechanical Closer-Holder

MHO = Magnetic Hold-Open (wall- or floor-mounted)

HW-5DEach Door to Have:NON-RATED

	Hinges	QUANTITY & TYPE AS REQUIRED
1	Storeroom Lock	F07
1	Kick Plate	J102 (@ STORAGE, EVM, & HAC ROOMS ONLY)
1	Floor Stop (@ Inswing Doors)	L02121 x 3 FASTENERS
1	Wall Stop (@ Outswing Doors)	L52101 CONVEX
3	Silencers	L03011

HW-5GEach Door to Have:NON-RATED

	Hinges	QUANTITY & TYPE AS REQUIRED
1	Storeroom Lock	F07
1	Kick Plate	J102
1	Floor Stop	L02121 x 3 FASTENERS
1	Threshold	J32300 x 57 MM WIDTH (2-1/4 INCHES)
1	Auto Door Bottom	R0Y346 - HEAVY DUTY
2	Sets Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154

HW-11Each Pair to Have:RATED/NR

Hinges	QUANTITY & TYPE AS REQUIRED
1 Set Auto Flush Bolts	TYPE 25 LESS BOTTOM BOLT
1 Storeroom Lock	F07
1 Coordinator	TYPE 21A
1 Overlapping Astragal with Self-Adhesive Seal	R5Y634 x R0E154 x THRU-BOLTS
2 Closers	C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
2 Kick Plates	J102 (@ STORAGE ROOMS ONLY)
2 Floor Stops	L02121 x 3 FASTENERS
1 Set Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154

HW-12HEach [ADO] Pair to Have:NON-RATED

2 Continuous Transfer Hinge	A51031B x INTEGRAL HINGE GUARD CHANNEL X ADJUSTA-SCREWS x 8-THRUWIRE TRANSFER X IN-HINGE ACCESS PANEL
1 Elec. Exit Device	TYPE 7 or 8 F01 (E04)
1 Elec. Exit Device	TYPE 7 or 8 F08 LEVER (E04)
1 Key Cylinder	TYPE AS REQUIRED
1 Power Supply	BY EXIT DEVICE MFR. FOR E04 FUNCTION
1 Set Meeting Stile Astragals	R3E834
2 Kick Plates	J102
2 Edge Guard (@ Wood Doors)	J208M / J211 (VERIFY), CUT: HARDWARE
2 Floor Stops	L02121 x 3 FASTENERS
2 Door Bottom	R0Y434 x NYLON BRUSH INSERT
2 Sets Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154

POWER TRANSFERS **SHARED BY ELECTRIC PANIC AND** RE-ACTIVATION SENSOR WIRING

(RE-ACTIVATION SENSORS PROVIDED BY SECTION 08 71 13).

AUTO DOOR OPERATORS AND CONTROLS BY SECTION 08 71 13.

HW-12JEach Pair to Have:RATED

Hinges	QUANTITY & TYPE AS REQUIRED
1 Exit Device	TYPE 7 or 8 F01
1 Exit Device	TYPE 7 or 8 F13 LEVER
1 Key Cylinder	TYPE AS REQUIRED
1 Set Meeting Stile Astragals	R3E834
2 Closers	C02011/C02021 (PT4D, PT4F, PT4H)
2 Floor Stops	L02121 x 3 FASTENERS
2 Door Bottom	R0Y434 x NYLON BRUSH INSERT
2 Sets Self-Adhesive Seals	R0E154

HW-E5Each Roll-up Door to Have:NON-RATED

1 Padlock or 2 Cylinders	TYPE AS REQUIRED
--------------------------	------------------

BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY SECTION 08 33 00, COILING DOORS AND GRILLES

- - - E N D - - -



**SECTION 08 71 13.11**  
**LOW ENERGY POWER ASSIST DOOR OPERATORS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies low energy power assisted automatic operation of swing doors. The door operator system shall be complete including operator, controls, door arm and operator enclosure (header and cover).

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Sealants; Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- D. Aluminum frames entrance work; Section 08 41 13, ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS.
- E. Door hardware; Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- F. Glass and glazing of doors and frames; Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
- G. Finish Color, Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- I. Electric general wiring, connections and equipment requirements; Division 26, ELECTRICAL.

**1.3 MANUFACTURER'S QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. Power assisted door operators, controls and other equipment shall be products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in manufacturing such equipment for a minimum of three years.
- B. One manufacturer of automatic door equipment shall be used throughout the building.

**1.4 WARRANTY**

Power assisted door operators, controls and other related equipment shall be subject to the terms of the "Warranty of Construction", FAR clause 52.246-21, except that the warranty period shall be two years in lieu of one year.

**1.5 MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

In accordance with Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS Article titled "INSTRUCTIONS," furnish three copies of maintenance manuals and instructions on automatic door operators.

**1.6 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's literature and data describing operators, power units, controls, door hardware and safety devices.
- C. Shop Drawings:

Showing location of controls and safety devices in relationship to each automatically operated door. This includes templates, wiring diagrams, fabrication details, anchorage and other information to providers of related work to coordinate the proper installation of the door operators.

#### **1.7 DESIGN CRITERIA**

- A. Power assisted automatic door equipment shall accommodate normal traffic as well as the weight of the doors.
- B. Equipment: UL approved and comply with applicable codes. Motors shall be rated minimum one-quarter horsepower and shall be single phase and 115 volts.
- C. Electrical Wiring; Provide wiring so that only a single power supply is required. Equipment and wiring shall be as specified in Division 26, ELECTRICAL.

#### **1.8 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):  
ICC/ANSI A117.1-03.....Guideline for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities-Providing Accessibility and Usability for Physically Handicapped People
- B. Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association, Inc. (BHMA):  
156.19-07.....Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 OPERATORS**

- A. Automatic door operators shall be for commercial doors and shall be electromechanical and surface mounted above the door to the header or transom bar. The opening force shall be generated by a permanent magnet DC motor driving a combination spiral bevel/spur gear reducer and transmitted to the door through an arm linkage. Opening speed shall be adjustable and feature dual backcheck control allowing adjustment of backcheck speed and position. Closing shall be by spring force generated by a metal compression spring. The spring shall reduce manual opening force to not more than 67 N (15 lbf). The minimum diameter of

spring wire shall be .007mm (172 in.). Under the specified design load of the door, the spring shall be capable of performing 2,000,000 cycles before fracture. Adjustable closing speed and fixed latch speed shall control the door in the closing cycle. The doors shall be operated manually at any time without damage to the operator or components.

- B. All operators shall have checking mechanism providing cushioning action at last part of door travel, in both opening and closing cycle.

Operators shall recycle doors instantaneously to full open position from any point in closing cycle when control switch is reactivated.

- C. Operator shall be swinging type enclosed in housing. Operator shall open door by energizing motor and shall stop by electrically reducing voltage and stalling motor against mechanical stop. Door shall close by means of spring energy, and close force shall be controlled by gear system and motor being used as dynamic break without power. System shall operate as manual door control in event of power failure. Opening and closing speeds shall be adjustable:

1. Swing Operator Housing: Housing shall be 140 mm (5-1/2 inches) wide by 150 mm (6 inches) high aluminum extrusions with enclosed end caps for application to 100 mm (4 inch) and larger frame systems. All structural sections shall have a minimum thickness of 3.7 mm (0.146 inch) and be fabricated of 6063-T5 aluminum alloy.
2. Swing Power Operator: Completely assembled and sealed unit which shall include helical gear drive transmission, mechanical spring and bearings, all located in cast aluminum case and filled with special lubricant for extreme temperature conditions. A "DC" shunt-wound permanent magnet motor with sealed ball bearings shall be attached to transmission system. Complete unit shall be rubber mounted with provisions for easy maintenance and replacement, without removing door from pivots or frame.
3. Connecting hardware for swing overhead concealed type power operator shall have drive arm attached to door with a pin linkage rotating in a self-lubricating bearing and adjustable slide block, traveling in an interconnected track and top pivot assembly. Top track and pivot assembly shall be fabricated of steel. Door shall not pivot on shaft of operator.
4. Electrical Control: Operator shall have a self contained electrical control unit, including necessary transformers, relays, rectifiers,

and other electronic components for proper operation and switching of power operator. Relays shall be plug-in type for individual replacement and all connecting harnesses shall have interlocking plugs. Control shall also include time delay for normal cycle. Swing door control shall include safe-swing circuit with optional switching which automatically limits power and slows door when approached from the doors swing area.

5. On pairs of doors, operators shall allow either door to be opened manually without the other door opening.

## **2.2 MICROPROCESSOR CONTROLS**

- A. The system shall include a multi-function microprocessor control providing adjustable hold open time (1 - 30 sec.), LED indications for actual position unknown, system status, open obstruction shutdown, activation signal, safety mat/sensor signal, Stop-and-Hold signal, and mode selector switches providing a means for easy field selection of the following functions: push-to-operate, latch assist and stack pressure. Control shall be capable of receiving activation signals from any device with normally open dry contact output.
  1. With push-to-operate function enabled, the control shall provide a means of initiating a self-start activation circuit by slightly pushing the door open at any point in the door swing.
  2. Latch Assist shall provide a two second impulse in the close direction to overcome restrictions with locking devices of pressure differentials, allowing the unit to operate in standard time delay mode, and permitting the door to close from the full open position after the hold time is satisfied. All activation modes shall provide fully adjustable opening speed.
- B. The door shall be held open by low voltage applied to the continuous duty motor. The control shall include an adjustable safety circuit that monitors door operation and shuts the motor off if an open obstruction is sensed. The control shall include a recycle feature the reopens the door if an obstruction is sensed at any point during its closing cycle. The control shall include a standard three position toggle switch with functions for ON, OFF, and HOLD OPEN.

## **2.3 ENCLOSURE**

Operator shall be completely self-contained within an extruded aluminum housing (alloy 6063-T6) to conceal operator mechanism and mounting

brackets and with removable access cover with an overall maximum size of 140 mm (5-1/2 inches) wide by 150 mm (6 inches) deep. Header color shall be integral color anodized/painted to match adjacent storefront/frame finish.

## **2.4 ACTIVATION DEVICES**

- A. Automatic: Opening cycle shall be activated by pressing switches with international symbol of accessibility and "PRESS TO OPERATE DOOR" engraved on the faceplate. Switches shall be installed in a standard 2-gang electrical wall box and placed in a location in compliance with ANSI A117.1. Switches may be wall mounted or mounted on a free standing post or guard rail.
- B. Manual: Push-to-operate; manually pushing the door shall activate the automatic opening cycle. Door shall automatically close after timer delay expires.
- C. Opening and closing force, measured 25 mm (1 inch) out from the lock stile of the door, shall not exceed 67 N (15 lbf) to stop the door when operating in either direction or cycle.
- D. Opening Time: Doors shall be field adjusted so that opening time to back check or 80 degrees, whichever occurs first, shall be 3 seconds or longer as required in Table 1. Backcheck shall not occur before 60 degrees opening.  
Total opening time to fully open shall be as in Table II.
- E. Closing Time:  
Doors shall be field adjusted to close from 90 degrees to 10 degrees in 3 seconds or longer as required in Table 1.
  - 1. Doors shall be field adjusted to close from 10 degrees to fully close position in not less than 1.5 seconds.
  - 2. Doors shall be field adjusted to remain fully open for not less than 5 seconds.
  - 3. Table 1 provides speed settings for various widths and weights of doors for obtaining results complying with this paragraph.
- F. Cycle Tests:
  - 1. Low Energy Power Operated, Low Energy Power Open and Power Assist Operators shall be cycle tested for 300,000 cycles.
  - 2. Use the widest and heaviest door specified as a test specimen.  
Narrower or lighter doors of the same configurations shall then be considered to meet the cycle test requirements.

**Table 1**

Minimum Opening Time to Backcheck or 80 degrees, which ever occurs first and the Minimum Closing Time from 90 degrees to Latch Check or 10 degrees.

"D" Door Leaf Width- mm (inches)	"W" Door Weight in kg (pounds) Matrix Values are in seconds				
	(100) 45.4	(56.7) 125	(68.0) 150	(79.4) 175	(90.7) 200
(762) 30	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.5
(914) 36	3.0	3.5	3.5	4.0	4.0
(1067) 42	3.5	4.0	4.0	4.5	4.5

Doors of other weights and widths can be calculated using the formula;

$T = DvW/133$  in US units       $T = DvW/2260$  in SI (metric) units

Where: T= Time, seconds

D= Door width, mm (inches)

W= Door weight, kg (lbs)

The values for "T" time have been rounded up to the nearest half second.

These values are based on a kinetic energy of (1.25 lbf-ft).

**Table II**

Total Opening Time to Full Open Position

Backcheck at 60 degrees	Backcheck at 70 degrees	Backcheck at 80 degrees
Table 1 plus 2 seconds	Table 1 plus 1.5 seconds	Table 1 plus 1 second

Note: To determine maximum times from close to full open, the operator shall be adjusted as shown in the chart. Backcheck occurring at a point between positions in Table II shall use the lowest setting. For example, if the backcheck occurs at 75 degrees, the full open shall be the time shown in Table 1 plus 1.5 seconds.

## **2.5 POWER UNITS**

Provide separate self-contained electric circuits for automatic operators located on each floor of the building. Interruption or failure of power circuits for operators located on one floor of the building shall not interfere with continuous performance of automatic

operated doors located on other floors. Capacity and size of power circuits shall be in accordance with automatic operator manufacturer's specifications.

## **2.6 SAFETY DEVICES**

- A. Time delay switches shall be adjustable between 5 to 60 seconds and shall control closing cycle of doors.
- B. Decals with sign "In" or "Do Not Enter" shall be installed on both faces of each door where shown and shall conform to the requirements of ANSI/BHMA A156.19.
- C. Each swing door shall have installed a motion sensor to detect any person standing in the door swing path and prevent the door from opening.
- D. Motion sensors shall consist of detection modules, factory prepared to be attached to each side of the lock/strike stile, an armored flex link power cable and bracket assembly, factory prepared for attachment to the pivot stile; a logic board and a position encoder which shall mount to the operator. The detection modules shall contain transmitting and receiving diodes and sense multidimensional zones for detection of people and/or objects in the door area. Detection modules shall be high impact, shock resistant zinc castings with tinted lenses. The swing door sensor system shall provide complete operate and safety zone coverage. These zones shall be fully adjusted to meet specific jobsite conditions (sidewalls, adjacent panels, etc.) The system shall not be affected by ultrasonic, ambient light or radios frequencies within the vicinity of the swing door.
- E. Each swing door shall have installed a re-activation sensor mounted on the push-side door face near the top detect any person standing in the door swing path and prevent the door from closing. Wiring for the re-activation sensor between the door and frame shall be concealed in a power transfer device, hinge or pivot provided under Section 08 71 00; wire chase in door provided under door section.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of equipment with other related work. Manual controls and power disconnect switches shall be recessed or semi-flush mounted in partitions. Secure operator components to adjacent

construction with suitable fastenings. Conceal conduits, piping, and electric equipment in finish work.

- B. Install power units in locations shown. Where units are to be mounted on walls, provide metal supports or shelves for the units. All equipment, including time delay switches, shall be accessible for maintenance and adjustment.
- C. Operators shall be adjusted and must function properly for the type of traffic (pedestrians) expected to pass through doors. Each door leaf of pairs of doors shall open and close in synchronization. On pairs of doors, operators shall allow either door to be opened manually without the other door opening.
- D. Install controls at positions shown and make them convenient for particular traffic expected to pass through openings. Maximum height of push plate wall switches from finished floors shall be 40 inches unless otherwise approved by the Resident Engineer.

---- END ----



**SECTION 08 71 13  
AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies equipment, controls and accessories for automatic operation of swing and sliding doors.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Aluminum frames entrance work; Section 08 41 13, ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS.
- B. Door hardware; Section 08 71 00, DOOR HARDWARE.
- C. Section 28 13 00, ACCESS CONTROL.
- D. Glass and glazing of doors and frames; Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
- E. Electric general wiring, connections and equipment requirements; Division 26, ELECTRICAL.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Automatic door operators, controls and other equipment shall be products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in manufacturing such equipment for a minimum of three years.
- B. One type of automatic door equipment shall be used throughout the building.
- C. Equipment installer shall have specialized experience and shall be approved by the manufacturer.

**1.4 WARRANTY**

- A. Automatic door operators shall be subject to the terms of the "Warranty of Construction" Article of Section 00 72 00, GENERAL CONDITIONS, except that the Warranty period shall be two years in lieu of one year.

**1.5 MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. In accordance with Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS Article titled "INSTRUCTIONS", furnish maintenance manuals and instructions on automatic door operators.

**1.6 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's literature and data describing operators, power units, controls, door hardware and safety devices.

## C. Shop Drawings:

1. Showing location of controls and safety devices in relationship to each automatically operated door.
2. Showing layout, profiles, product components, including anchorage, accessories, as applicable.
3. Submit templates, wiring diagrams, fabrication details and other information to coordinate the proper installation of the automatic door operators.

## D. Submit in writing to Resident Engineer that items listed in Article 1.3 are in compliance.

**1.7 DESIGN CRITERIA**

- A. As a minimum automatic door equipment shall comply with the requirements of BHMA 156.10. Except as otherwise noted on drawings, provide operators which will move the doors from the fully closed to fully opened position in five seconds maximum time interval, when speed adjustment is at maximum setting.
- B. Equipment: Conforming to UL 325. Provide key operated power disconnect wall switch for each door installation.
- C. Electrical Wiring, Connections and Equipment: Provide all motor, starter, controls, associated devices, and interconnecting wiring required for the installation. Equipment and wiring shall be as specified in Division 26, ELECTRICAL.

**1.8 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association, Inc. (BHMA):  
A156.10-05.....Power Operated Pedestrian Doors (BHMA 1601)
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):  
101-09.....Life Safety Code
- D. Underwriters Laboratory (UL):  
325-10.....Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window  
Operators and Systems

**1.9 DELIVERY AND STORAGE**

- A. Delivery shall be in factory's original, unopened, undamaged container with identification labels attached.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SWING DOOR OPERATORS**

- A. General: Swing door operators shall be of institutional type, door panel size 600 mm to 1250 mm (2'-0" to 5'-0") width, weight not to exceed 300 kg (600 pounds), electric operated for overhead mounting within the header or transom. Furnish metal mounting supports, brackets and other accessories necessary for the installation of operators at the head of the door frames. The motor on automatic door operator shall be provided with an interlock so that the motor will not operate when doors are electrically locked from opening.
- B. Operators shall have checking mechanism providing cushioning action at last part of door travel, in both opening and closing cycle. Operators shall be capable of recycling doors instantaneously to full open position from any point in the closing cycle when control switch is activated. Operators shall, when automatic power is interrupted or shut-off, permit doors to easily open manually without damage to automatic operator system.
- C. Operator, enclosed in housing, shall open door by energizing motor and shall stop by electrically reducing voltage and stalling motor against mechanical stop. Door shall close by means of spring energy, and close force shall be controlled by gear system and motor being used as dynamic break without power, or controlled by hydraulic closer in electro-hydraulic operators. System shall operate as manual door control in event of power failure. Opening and closing speeds shall be adjustable:
1. Operator Housing: Housing shall be a minimum of 112 mm (4-1/2 inches) wide by 140 mm (5.5 inches) high aluminum extrusions with enclosed end caps for application to 100 mm (4 inches) and larger frame systems. All structural sections shall have a minimum thickness of 3.2 mm (0.125 inch) and be fabricated of a minimum of 6063-T5 aluminum alloy.
  2. Power Operator: Completely assembled and sealed unit which shall include gear drive transmission, mechanical spring and bearings, all located in aluminum case and filled with special lubricant for

extreme temperature conditions. Complete unit shall be rubber mounted with provisions for easy maintenance and replacement, without removing door from pivots or frame.

3. Connecting hardware shall have drive arm attached to door with a pin linkage rotating in a self-lubricating bearing. Door shall not pivot on shaft of operator.
4. Electrical Control: Operator shall have a self contained electrical control unit, including necessary transformers, relays, rectifiers, and other electronic components for proper operation and switching of power operator. All connecting harnesses shall have interlocking plugs.

## **2.2 MICROPROCESSOR CONTROLS**

- A. The system shall include a multi-function microprocessor control providing adjustable hold open time (1-30 seconds), LED indications for sensor input signals and operator status and power assist close options. Control shall be capable of receiving activation signals from any device with normally open dry contact output. All activation modes shall provide fully adjustable opening speed:
- B. The door shall be held open by low voltage applied to the continuous duty motor. The control shall include an adjustable safety circuit that monitors door operation and stops the opening direction of the door if an obstruction is sensed. The motor shall include a recycle feature that reopens the door if an obstruction is sensed at any point during the closing cycle. The control shall include a standard three position key switch with functions for ON, OFF, and HOLD OPEN, mounted on operator enclosure, door frame, or wall, as indicated in the architectural drawings.

## **2.4 POWER UNITS**

Each power unit shall be self-contained, electric operated and independent of the door operator. Capacity and size of power circuits shall be in accordance with automatic door operator manufacturer's specifications and Division 26 - ELECTRICAL.

## **2.5 DOOR CONTROLS**

- A. Opening and closing actions of doors shall be actuated by controls and safety devices specified, and conform to ANSI 156.10. Controls shall cause doors to open instantly when control device is actuated; hold

doors in open positions; then, cause doors to close, unless safety device or reactivated control interrupts operation.

B. Manual Controls:

1. Push Plate Wall Switch: Recess type, stainless steel push plate minimum 100 mm by 100 mm (four-inch by four-inch), with 13 mm (1/2-inch) high letters "To Operate Door--Push" engraved on face of plate.

C. Motion Detector: The motion detector may be surface mounted or concealed, to provide a signal to actuate the door operator, and monitor the immediate zone, to detect intrusion by persons, carts or similar objects. The zone which the detector monitors shall be 1500 mm (five feet) deep and 1500 mm (five feet) across, plus or minus 150 mm (six inches) on all dimensions. The maximum response time shall be no less than 25 milliseconds. Unit shall be designed to operate on 24 volts AC. The control shall not be affected by cleaning material, solvents, dust, dirt and outdoor weather conditions.

## **2.6 SAFETY DEVICES**

- A. General: Area over which doors swing or slide shall be a safety section and anyone standing in path of door's movement shall be protected by a safety device.
- B. At sliding doors, provide two photoelectric beams mounted at heights of 600 mm (24 inches) and 1200 mm (48 inches) in the door frame on sliding doors. Provide overhead safety presence sensors at door head on each side of the opening. Beams shall parallel door openings to prevent doors from closing when anyone is in the center of the door or doors. When beams are activated, doors shall recycle to full open position. Actuation shall include a motion detector mounted on each side of the door for detection of traffic in each direction.
- C. Each swing door shall have installed on the pull side a presence sensor to detect any person standing in the door swing path and prevent the door from opening.
- D. Time delay switches shall be adjustable between 3 to 60 seconds and shall control closing cycle of doors.
- E. Decals with sign "In" or "Do Not Enter" shall be installed on both faces of each door where shown.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of equipment with other related work. Manual controls and power disconnect switches shall be recessed or semi-flush mounted in partitions. Secure operator components to adjacent construction with suitable fastenings. Conceal conduits, piping, and electric equipment, in finish work.
- B. Install power units in locations shown. Where units are to be mounted on walls, provide metal supports or shelves for the units. All equipment, including time delay switches, shall be accessible for maintenance and adjustment.
- C. Operators shall be adjusted and must function properly for the type of traffic (pedestrians, carts, stretchers and wheelchairs) expected to pass through doors. Each door leaf of pairs of doors shall open and close in synchronization. On pairs of doors, operators shall allow either door to be opened manually without the other door opening.
- D. Install controls at positions shown and make them convenient for particular traffic expected to pass through openings. Maximum height of push plate wall switches from finished floors shall be 40 inches unless otherwise approved by the Resident Engineer.

**3.2 INSTRUCTIONS**

- A. Following the installation and final adjustments of the door operators, the installer shall fully instruct VA personnel for 2 hours on the operating, servicing and safety requirements for the swing and sliding automatic door operators.
- B. Coordinate instruction to VA personnel with VA Resident Engineer.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08 80 00  
GLAZING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies glass, plastic, related glazing materials and accessories. Glazing products specified apply to factory or field glazed items.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Factory glazed by manufacturer in following units:
9. Section 08 44 13, GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS.

**1.3 LABELS**

- A. Temporary labels:
1. Provide temporary label on each light of glass identifying manufacturer or brand and glass type, quality and nominal thickness.
  2. Label in accordance with NFRC (National Fenestration Rating Council) label requirements.
  3. Temporary labels shall remain intact until glass is approved by Resident Engineer.
- B. Permanent labels:
1. Locate in corner for each pane.
  2. Label in accordance with ANSI Z97.1 and SGCC (Safety Glass Certification Council) label requirements.
    - a. Tempered glass.
    - b. Laminated glass or have certificate for panes without permanent label.
    - c. Organic coated glass.

**1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- B. Glass Thickness:
1. Select thickness of exterior glass to withstand dead loads and wind loads acting normal to plane of glass at design pressures calculated in accordance with applicable code.
  2. Test in accordance with ASTM E 1300.
  3. Thicknesses listed are minimum. Coordinate thicknesses with framing system manufacturers.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. In accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Certificates:
  - 1. Certificates stating that wire glass, meets requirements for safety glazing material as specified in ANSI Z97.1.
  - 2. Certificate on shading coefficient.
  - 3. Certificate on "R" value when value is specified.
  - 4. Certificate test reports confirming compliance's with specified bullet resistive rating.
  - 5. Certificate that blast resistant glass meets the requirements of UFC4-010-01.
- C. Warranty: Submit written guaranty, conforming to General Condition requirements, and to "Warranty of Construction" Article in this Section.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Glass, each kind required.
  - 2. Insulating glass units.
  - 3. Transparent (one-way vision glass) mirrors.
  - 4. Elastic compound for metal sash glazing.
  - 5. Putty, for wood sash glazing.
  - 6. Glazing cushion.
  - 7. Sealing compound.
  - 8. Bullet resistive material.
  - 9. Plastic glazing material, each type required.
- E. Samples:
  - 1. Size: 150 mm by 150 mm (6 inches by 6 inches).
  - 2. Tinted glass.
  - 3. Reflective glass.
  - 4. Transparent (one-way vision glass) mirrors.
- F. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Test Report: Submit glazing sealant manufacturer's test report indicating glazing sealants were tested for adhesion to glass and glazing channel substrates and for compatibility with glass and other glazing materials.

#### **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery: Schedule delivery to coincide with glazing schedules so minimum handling of crates is required. Do not open crates except as required for inspection for shipping damage.



- B. Storage: Store cases according to printed instructions on case, in areas least subject to traffic or falling objects. Keep storage area clean and dry.
- C. Handling: Unpack cases following printed instructions on case. Stack individual windows on edge leaned slightly against upright supports with separators between each.
- D. Protect laminated security glazing units against face and edge damage during entire sequence of fabrication, handling, and delivery to installation location. Provide protective covering on exposed faces of glazing plastics, and mark inside as "INTERIOR FACE" or "PROTECTED FACE":
  - 1. Treat security glazing as fragile merchandise, and packaged and shipped in export wood cases with width end in upright position and blocked together in a mass. Storage and handling shall comply with Manufacturer's directions and as required to prevent edge damage or other damage to glazing resulting from effects of moisture, condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, other environmental conditions, and contact with chemical solvents.
  - 2. Protect sealed-air-space insulating glazing units from exposure to abnormal pressure changes, as could result from substantial changes in altitude during delivery by air freight. Provide temporary breather tubes which do not nullify applicable warranties on hermetic seals.
  - 3. Temporary protections: The glass front and polycarbonate back of glazing shall be temporarily protected with compatible, peelable, heat-resistant film which will be peeled for inspections and re-applied and finally removed after doors and windows are installed at destination. Since many adhesives will attack polycarbonate, the film used on exposed polycarbonate surfaces shall be approved and applied by manufacturer.
  - 4. Edge protection: To cushion and protect glass clad, polycarbonate, and Noviflex edges from contamination or foreign matter, the four edges shall be sealed the depth of glazing with continuous standard-thickness Santoprene tape. Alternatively, continuous channel shaped extrusion of Santoprene shall be used, with flanges extending into face sides of glazing.

5. Protect "Constant Temperature" units including every unit where glass sheet is directly laminated to or directly sealed with metal-tube type spacer bar to polycarbonate sheet, from exposures to ambient temperatures outside the range of 16 to 24 C, during the fabricating, handling, shipping, storing, installation, and subsequent protection of glazing.

#### **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

Field Measurements: Field measure openings before ordering tempered glass products. Be responsible for proper fit of field measured products.

#### **1.8 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty: Conform to terms of "Warranty of Construction", FAR clause 52.246-21, except extend warranty period for the following:
  1. Bullet resistive plastic material to remain visibly clear without discoloration for 10 years.
  2. Insulating glass units to remain sealed for 10 years.
  3. Laminated glass units to remain laminated for 5 years.
  4. Polycarbonate to remain clear and ultraviolet light stabilized for 5 years.
  5. Insulating plastic to not have more than 6 percent decrease in light transmission and be ultraviolet light stabilized for 10 years.

#### **1.9 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):  
Z97.1-04.....Safety Glazing Material Used in Building -  
Safety Performance Specifications and Methods  
of Test.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):  
C1363-05.....Thermal Performance of Building Assemblies, by  
Means of A Hot Box Apparatus  
C542-05.....Lock-Strip Gaskets.  
C716-06.....Installing Lock-Strip Gaskets and Infill  
Glazing Materials.  
C794-06.....Adhesion-in-Peel of Elastomeric Joint Sealants.

- C864-05.....Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets,  
Setting Blocks, and Spacers.
- C920-08.....Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- C964-07.....Standard Guide for Lock-Strip Gasket Glazing.
- C1036-06.....Flat Glass.
- C1048-04.....Heat-Treated Flat Glass-Kind HS, Kind FT Coated  
and Uncoated Glass.
- C1172-09.....Laminated Architectural Flat Glass.
- C1376-10.....Pyrolytic and Vacuum Deposition Coatings on  
Flat Glass.
- D635-06.....Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of  
Burning of Self-Supporting Plastic in a  
Horizontal Position.
- D4802-02.....Poly (Methyl Methacrylate) Acrylic Plastic  
Sheet.
- E84-09.....Surface Burning Characteristics of Building  
Materials.
- E1300-09.....Determining Load Resistance of Glass in  
Buildings.
- E2190-08.....Insulating Glass Unit
- D. Commercial Item Description (CID):
- A-A-59502.....Plastic Sheet, Polycarbonate
- E. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR):
- 16 CFR 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials;  
1977, with 1984 Revision.
- F. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
- 80-08.....Fire Doors and Windows.
- G. National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC)
- H. Safety Glazing Certification Council (SGCC) 2009:  
Certified Products Directory (Issued Semi-Annually).
- I. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
- 752-06.....Bullet-Resisting Equipment.
- J. Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC):
- 4-010-01-2007.....DOD Minimum Antiterrorism Standards for  
Buildings
- K. Glass Association of North America (GANA):  
Glazing Manual (Latest Edition)

Sealant Manual (2008)

- L. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE):  
ASCE 7-10.....Wind Load Provisions

## **PART 2 - PRODUCT**

### **2.1 GLASS**

- A. Use thickness stated unless specified otherwise in assemblies.
- B. Clear Glass:
1. ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3 .
  2. Thickness, 6 mm (1/4 inch).
3. Coordinate color/tint/coating to accommodate required security monitoring.
- C. Tinted Heat reflective and low emissivity coated glass:
1. ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 2, Quality q3.
  2. Color: From manufacturer's selection
  3. Thickness, 6 mm (1/4 inch).

### **2.2 HEAT-TREATED GLASS**

- A. Clear Heat Strengthened Glass:
1. ASTM C1048, Kind HS, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.
  2. Thickness, (1/4 inch).
- B. Tinted Heat Strengthened Glass:
1. ASTM C1048, Kind HS, Condition A, Type I, Class 2, Quality q3.
  2. Color: From manufacturer's selection.
  3. Thickness, 6 mm (1/4 inch).
- C. Clear Tempered Glass:
1. ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.
  2. Thickness, 6 mm (1/4 inch).
- D. Tinted Tempered Glass.
1. ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 2, Quality q3.
  2. Color: From manufacturer's selection.
  3. Thickness, 6 mm (1/4 inch).
- .

**2.13 GLAZING ACCESSORIES**

- A. As required to supplement the accessories provided with the items to be glazed and to provide a complete installation. Ferrous metal accessories exposed in the finished work shall have a finish that will not corrode or stain while in service.
- B. Setting Blocks: ASTM C864:
  - 1. Channel shape; having 6 mm (1/4 inch) internal depth.
  - 2. Shore a hardness of 80 to 90 Durometer.
  - 3. Block lengths: 50 mm (two inches) except 100 to 150 mm (four to six inches) for insulating glass.
  - 4. Block width: Approximately 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) less than the full width of the rabbet.
  - 5. Block thickness: Minimum 4.8 mm (3/16 inch). Thickness sized for rabbet depth as required.
- C. Spacers: ASTM C864:
  - 1. Channel shape having a 6 mm (1/4 inch) internal depth.
  - 2. Flanges not less 2.4 mm (3/32 inch) thick and web 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick.
  - 3. Lengths: One to 25 to 76 mm (one to three inches).
  - 4. Shore a hardness of 40 to 50 Durometer.
- D. Sealing Tapes:
  - 1. Semi-solid polymeric based material exhibiting pressure-sensitive adhesion and withstanding exposure to sunlight, moisture, heat, cold, and aging.
  - 2. Shape, size and degree of softness and strength suitable for use in glazing application to prevent water infiltration.
- E. Spring Steel Spacer: Galvanized steel wire or strip designed to position glazing in channel or rabbeted sash with stops.
- F. Glazing Clips: Galvanized steel spring wire designed to hold glass in position in rabbeted sash without stops.
- G. Glazing Points (Sprigs): Pure zinc stock, thin, flat, triangular or diamond shaped pieces, 6 mm (1/4 inch) minimum size.
- H. Glazing Gaskets: ASTM C864:
  - 1. Firm dense wedge shape for locking in sash.

2. Soft, closed cell with locking key for sash key.
  3. Flanges may terminate above the glazing-beads or terminate flush with top of beads.
- I. Lock-Strip Glazing Gaskets: ASTM C542, shape, size, and mounting as indicated.
- J. Glazing Sealants: ASTM C920, silicone neutral cure:
1. Type S.
  2. Class 25
  3. Grade NS.
  4. Shore A hardness of 25 to 30 Durometer.
- K. Structural Sealant: ASTM C920, silicone acetoxycure:
1. Type S.
  2. Class 25.
  3. Grade NS.
  4. Shore a hardness of 25 to 30 Durometer.
- L. Neoprene, EPDM, or Vinyl Glazing Gasket: ASTM C864.
1. Channel shape; flanges may terminate above the glazing channel or flush with the top of the channel.
  2. Designed for dry glazing.
- M. Color:
1. Color of glazing compounds, gaskets, and sealants used for aluminum color frames shall match color of the finished aluminum and be nonstaining.
  2. Color of other glazing compounds, gaskets, and sealants which will be exposed in the finished work and unpainted shall be black, gray, or neutral color.
- N. Smoke Removal Unit Targets: Adhesive targets affixed to glass to identify glass units intended for removal for smoke control. Comply with requirements of local Fire Department.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification of Conditions:
1. Examine openings for glass and glazing units; determine they are proper size; plumb; square; and level before installation is started.

2. Verify that glazing openings conform with details, dimensions and tolerances indicated on manufacturer's approved shop drawings.
- B. Advise Contractor of conditions which may adversely affect glass and glazing unit installation, prior to commencement of installation: Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Verify that wash down of adjacent masonry is completed prior to erection of glass and glazing units to prevent damage to glass and glazing units by cleaning materials.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. For sealant glazing, prepare glazing surfaces in accordance with GANA-02 Sealant Manual.
- B. Determine glazing unit size and edge clearances by measuring the actual unit to receive the glazing.
- C. Shop fabricate and cut glass with smooth, straight edges of full size required by openings to provide GANA recommended edge clearances.
- D. Verify that components used are compatible.
- E. Clean and dry glazing surfaces.
- F. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION - GENERAL**

- A. Install in accordance with GANA-01 Glazing Manual and GANA-02 Sealant Manual unless specified otherwise.
- B. Glaze in accordance with recommendations of glazing and framing manufacturers, and as required to meet the Performance Test Requirements specified in other applicable sections of specifications.
- C. Set glazing without bending, twisting, or forcing of units.
- D. Do not allow glass to rest on or contact any framing member.
- E. Glaze doors and operable sash, in a securely fixed or closed and locked position, until sealant, glazing compound, or putty has thoroughly set.
- G. Tempered Glass: Install with roller distortions in horizontal position unless otherwise directed.

### **3.7 INSTALLATION - EXTERIOR BUTT GLAZED METHOD (SEALANT ONLY)**

- A. Temporarily brace glass in position for duration of glazing process. Mask edges of glass at adjoining glass edges and between glass edges and framing members.

- B. Temporarily secure a small diameter non-adhering foamed rod on back side of joint.
- C. Apply sealant to open side of joint in continuous operation; thoroughly fill the joint without displacing the foam rod. Tool the sealant surface smooth to concave profile.
- D. Permit sealant to cure then remove foam backer rod. Apply sealant to opposite side, tool smooth to concave profile.
- E. Remove masking tape.

### **3.11 REPLACEMENT AND CLEANING**

- A. Clean new glass surfaces removing temporary labels, paint spots, and defacement after approval by Resident Engineer.
- B. Replace cracked, broken, and imperfect glass, or glass which has been installed improperly.
- C. Leave glass, putty, and other setting material in clean, whole, and acceptable condition.

### **3.12 PROTECTION**

Protect finished surfaces from damage during erection, and after completion of work. Strippable plastic coatings on colored anodized finish are not acceptable.

### **3.13 GLAZING SCHEDULE**

- B. Tempered Glass:
  - 1. Install in full and half glazed doors unless indicated otherwise.
  - 2. Install in storefront, windows, and door sidelights adjacent to doors.
  - 3. Use clear tempered glass on interior side lights and doors, and on exterior doors and sidelights unless otherwise indicated or specified.and clear tempered glass on storefront and sidelights.//
  - 8. Use tinted tempered glass in exterior pane and clear tempered glass in interior pane unless specified otherwise of insulating glass units adjacent to door.
  - 9. Use clear tempered glass in exterior and interior panes unless specified otherwise at insulating glass units adjacent to door.
- F. Insulating Glass:
  - 1. Install SEU clear tempered glass in curtain walls& adjacent to entrances or walks.



2. Install SEU clear glass in windows, // interior pane of dual glazed windows, // storefronts, // curtain walls, // not adjacent to entrances or walks.
3. Install SEU tinted tempered and clear tempered glass in curtain walls & adjacent to entrances or walks.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 08 90 00  
LOUVERS AND VENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies fixed wall louvers.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Shop Drawings:  
Each type, showing material, finish, size of members, operating devices, method of assembly, and installation and anchorage details.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:  
Each type of louver and vent.

**1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. The Master Painters Institute (MPI):  
Approved Product List - September 2011
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):  
A167-99(R2009).....Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium - Nickel  
Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip  
A1008/A1008M-10.....Steel, Sheet, Carbon, Cold Rolled, Structural,  
and High Strength Low-Alloy with Improved  
Formability  
B209/B209M-03(R2007)....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy, Sheet and Plate  
B221-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,  
Wire, Shapes, and Tubes  
B221M-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,  
Wire Shapes, and Tubes
- D. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):  
AMP 500-06.....Metal Finishes Manual
- E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):  
90A-09.....Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating  
Systems
- F. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):  
2605-11.....High Performance Organic Coatings on  
Architectural Extrusions and Panels
- G. Air Movement and Control Association, Inc. (AMCA):

500-L-07.....Testing Louvers

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Aluminum, Extruded: ASTM B221/B221M.
- B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167, Type 302B.
- C. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1008/A1008M.
- D. Aluminum, Plate and Sheet: ASTM B209/B209M.
- E. Fasteners: Fasteners for securing louvers and wall vents to adjoining construction, except as otherwise specified or shown, shall be toggle or expansion bolts, of size and type as required for each specific type of installation and service condition.
  - 1. Where type, size, or spacing of fasteners is not shown or specified, submit shop drawings showing proposed fasteners, and method of installation.
  - 2. Fasteners for louvers, louver frames, and wire guards shall be of stainless steel or aluminum.
- F. Inorganic Zinc Primer: MPI No. 19.

**2.2 EXTERIOR WALL LOUVERS**

- A. General:
  - 1. Provide fixed type louvers of size and design shown.
  - 2. Heads, sills and jamb sections shall have formed caulking slots or be designed to retain caulking. Head sections shall have exterior drip lip, and sill sections an integral water stop.
  - 3. Furnish louvers with sill extension or separate sill as shown.
  - 4. Frame shall be mechanically fastened or welded construction with welds dressed smooth and flush.
- B. Performance Characteristics:
  - 1. Weather louvers shall have a minimum of 50 percent free area.
  - 2. Louvers shall bear AMCA certified rating seals for air performance and water penetration ratings.
- C. Aluminum Louvers:
  - 1. General: Frames, blades, sills); 2 mm (0.081-inch) thick extruded aluminum. Blades shall be drainable type and have reinforcing bosses.
  - 2. Louvers, fixed: Make frame sizes 13 mm (1/2-inch) smaller than openings. Single louvers frames shall not exceed 1700 mm (66 inches) wide. When openings exceed 1700 mm (66 inches), provide twin louvers separated by mullion members.

**2.3 CLOSURE ANGLES AND CLOSURE PLATES**

- A. Fabricate from 2 mm (0.074-inch) thick stainless steel or aluminum.

- B. Provide continuous closure angles and closure plates on inside head, jambs and sill of exterior wall louvers.
- C. Secure angles and plates to louver frames with screws, and to masonry or concrete with fasteners as specified.

#### **2.4 WIRE GUARDS**

- A. Provide wire guards on outside of all exterior louvers, except on exhaust air louvers.
- B. Fabricate frames from 2 mm (0.081-inch) thick extruded or sheet aluminum designed to retain wire mesh.
- C. Wire mesh shall be woven from not less than 1.6 mm (0.063-inch) diameter aluminum wire in 13 mm (1/2-inch) square mesh.
- D. Miter corners and join by concealed corner clips or locks extending about 57 mm (2-1/4 inches) into rails and stiles. Equip wire guards over four feet in height with a mid-rail constructed as specified for frame components.
- E. Fasten frames to outside of louvers with aluminum or stainless steel devices designed to allow removal and replacement without damage to the wire guard or the louver.

#### **2.5 WALL VENTS**

- A. Fabricate exterior wall vents from either 4.7 mm (0.187-inch) thick aluminum plate of 6 mm (1/4-inch) thick cast iron, perforated in diamond lattice pattern, with not over 19 mm (3/4-inch) openings.
- B. Vents shall have aluminum screen frame with aluminum alloy insect screening mounted on back of vent by means of 19 mm x 5 mm (3/4-inch by 3/16-inch) top and bottom bars screwed to grille.
- C. Vent Frames In Masonry: Fabricate of 45 mm x 30 mm x 5 mm (1-3/4 inch by 1-1/4 inch by 3/16-inch) steel angles bolted with 6 mm (1/4-inch) diameter expansion bolts at jambs.

#### **2.6 FINISH**

- A. In accordance with NAAMM Metal Finishes Manual: AMP 500-505
- B. Aluminum Louvers Wire Guards:
  - 1. Anodized finish chemically etched medium matte, with clear anodic coating, Class I Architectural, 0.7 mils thick.
- C. Aluminum Wall Vents Sand blasted satin finish.

#### **2.7 PROTECTION**

- A. Provide protection for aluminum against galvanic action wherever dissimilar materials are in contact, by painting the contact surfaces of the dissimilar material with a heavy coat of bituminous paint (complete coverage), or by separating the contact surfaces with a performed

synthetic rubber tape having pressure sensitive adhesive coating on one side.

- B. Isolate the aluminum from plaster, concrete and masonry by coating aluminum with zinc-chromate primer.
- C. Protect finished surfaces from damage during fabrication, erection, and after completion of the work.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Set work accurately, in alignment and where shown. Items shall be plumb, level, free of rack and twist, and set parallel or perpendicular as required to line and plane of surface.
- B. Furnish setting drawings and instructions for installation of anchors and for the positioning of items having anchors to be built into masonry construction. Provide temporary bracing for such items until masonry is set.
- C. Provide anchoring devices and fasteners as shown and as necessary for securing louvers to building construction as specified. Power actuated drive pins may be used, except for removal items and where members would be deformed or substrate damaged by their use.
- D. Generally, set wall louvers in masonry walls during progress of the work. If wall louvers are not delivered to job in time for installation in prepared openings, make provision for later installation. Set in cast-in-place concrete in prepared openings.

#### **3.2 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING**

- A. After installation, all exposed prefinished and plated items and all items fabricated from stainless steel and aluminum shall be cleaned as recommended by the manufacturer and protected from damage until completion of the project.
- B. All movable parts, including hardware, shall be cleaned and adjusted to operate as designed without binding or deformation of the members, so as to be centered in the opening of frame, and where applicable, to have all contact surfaces fit tight and even without forcing or warping the components

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 09 06 00  
SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES**

**PART I - GENERAL**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section contains a coordinated system in which requirements for materials specified in other sections shown are identified by abbreviated material names and finish codes in the room finish schedule or shown for other locations.

**1.2 MANUFACTURERS**

Manufacturer's trade names and numbers used herein are only to identify colors, finishes, textures and patterns. Products of other manufacturer's equivalent to colors, finishes, textures and patterns of manufacturers listed that meet requirements of technical specifications will be acceptable upon approval in writing by contracting officer for finish requirements.

**1.3 SUBMITALS**

Submit in accordance with SECTION 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES—provide quadruplicate samples for color approval of materials and finishes specified in this section.

**1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.

B. MASTER PAINTING INSTITUTE: (MPI)

2001.....Architectural Painting Specification Manual

**PART 2- PRODUCTS**

**2.3 DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

## B. SECTION 03 45 00, PRECAST ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE

Finish Color	Texture	Finish	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Standard Grey utilizing buff	--	Light Sandblast	--	Buff/Tan

**2.4 DIVISION 04 - MASONRY****2.5 DIVISION 05 - METALS**

## A. SECTION 05 12 00, STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

Component	Finish	Color
Structural Steel Framing	Painted	To be selected by Architect.

## C. SECTION 05 31 00, STEEL DECKING, SECTION 05 36 00, COMPOSITE METAL DECKING

Finish	Color
Galvanized	N/A

## F. SECTION 05 51 00, METAL STAIRS

Component	Finish	Color
Guard Rails	Galvanize	To be selected by Architect
Handrails	Galvanize	To be selected by Architect
Stringers	Painted	To be selected by Architect
Risers	Painted	To be selected by Architect
Underside	Painted	To be selected by Architect

## 2.6 DIVISION 06 WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

## 2.7 DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

## E. SECTION 07 40 00, ROOFING AND SIDING PANELS

Type	Shape	Ext. Finish	Int. Finish	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Metal Panel	To be selected by architect	Fluoropolymer Enamel	Fluoropolymer Enamel	Centria IW-10A	To be selected by Architect
Metal Screen	To be selected by architect	Stainless Steel	Stainless Steel	Centria MR3-36 Pattern - Open Area 40%	Stainless Steel



## H. SETION 07 53 23, ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-MONOMER ROOFING

Color	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
White	Firestone (Basis of Design)	-

--	--	--

## N. SECTION 07 60 00, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL

Item	Material	Finish
Copings		Match Curtainwall color
	Aluminum	
Hanging Gutters and Downspouts		To be selected by Architect
	Aluminum	

## Q. SECTION 07 71 00 / 07 72 00, ROOF SPECIALITIES AND ACCESSORIES

Item	Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Manufacturer/Color Name/Number.

Copings	Extruded Aluminum	Kynar	-	To be selected by Architect.

**2.8 DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS**

## A. SECTION 08 11 13, HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

Paint both sides of door and frames same color including ferrous metal louvers, and hardware attached to door	
Component	Color of Paint Type and Gloss
Door	To be selected by Architect
Frame	To be selected by Architect

## E. SECTION 08 33 00, COILING DOORS AND GRILLES

Location	Item	Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Manufacturer Color Name/No.
Storage 103	Door	Steel	To be selected by Architect	Overhead Door Co. (Basis of Design)	To be selected by Architect
Vehicular Entrances	Grille	Steel	To be selected by Architect	Overhead Door Co. (Basis of Design)	To be selected by Architect

## J. SECTION 08 41 13, ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Manufacturer Color Name/No.
Aluminum	Clear Anodized	Kawneer	To be selected by Architect
Glass	Solarban 60	PPG	To be selected by Architect.

## U. SECTION 08 71 00, BUILDERS HARDWARE

Item	Material	Finish
ADA Exterior Pushplate Post	Manufacture: LCN (Basis of Design)	Anodized Aluminum

## V. SECTION 08 80 00, GLAZING

Glazing Type	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Curtainwall	PPG (Basis of Design)	Solarban 60 (color to be selected by Architect)
Aluminum Doors	PPG (Basis of Design)	Color to be selected by Architect

## W. SECTION 08 44 13, GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

Component	Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Frame	Aluminum	Anodized	Kawneer 1600 Series (Basis of Design)	To be selected by Architect
Glazing	-		PPG (Basis of	To be selected by

			Design)	Architect
--	--	--	---------	-----------

**2.9 DIVISION 09 - FINISHES**

## G. SECTION 09 54 23, LINEAR METAL CEILINGS (LMC)

Finish Code	Strip Material	Strip Face Size	Manufacturer	Mfg Name/No.
-	Aluminum	24"x24"x 1-1/2" 8" Cell size	Armstrong	MetalWorks Open Cell System

## T. SECTION 09 91 00, PAINT AND COATINGS

## 1. MPI Gloss and Sheen Standards

		Gloss @60	Sheen @85
Gloss Level 1	a traditional matte finish-flat	max 5 units, and	max 10 units
Gloss Level 2	a high side sheen flat-"a velvet-like" finish	max 10 units, and	10-35 units
Gloss Level 3	a traditional "egg-shell like" finish	10-25 units, and	10-35 units
Gloss Level 4	a "satin-like" finish	20-35 units, and	min. 35 units
Gloss Level 5	a traditional semi-gloss	35-70 units	
Gloss Level 6	a traditional gloss	70-85 units	
Gloss level 7	a high gloss	more than 85 units	

2. Paint code	Gloss	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
---------------	-------	--------------	---------------------

P1 - CMU Block	5	Pittsburgh Paints	Color to be selected by Architect
P2 - Structural Steel	3	Pittsburgh Paints	Color to be selected by Architect
P3 - Underside of Stair tower/Elevator Lobby Roof	2	Pittsburgh Paints	Color to be selected by Architect
P4 - Standpipes	6	Pittsburgh Paints	Color to be selected by Architect
P5 - Bollards	6	Pittsburgh Paints	Color to be selected by Architect

## E. SECTION 08 90 00, LOUVERS AND WALL VENTS

Item	Material	Finish	Manufacturer	Mfg. Color Name/No.
Louver	Aluminum	Anodized	Airolite	To be selected by Architect

## F. SECTION 14 21 00, ELECTRIC TRACTION ELEVATORS

Elevator	Component	Material	Finish	Color
Passenger Elevator No. A&B Basis of Design - Otis Gen 2 4,000 lb 200fpm	Hoistway Entrance	Stainless Steel	Brushed	To be selected by Architect
	Hoistway Doors	Stainless Steel	Brushed	To be selected by Architect
	Corridor Position Indicator and Call Buttons	Stainless Steel	Brushed	To be selected by Architect
	Car Canopy	Steel		To be selected by Architect

	Car Wainscot	Stainless Steel	Brushed	To be selected by Architect
	Panels Above Wainscot	Stainless Steel	Brushed	To be selected by Architect
	Car Floor	Checker Plate		To be selected by Architect
	Car Operating Panel	Stainless Steel	Brushed	To be selected by Architect

--- E N D---

**SECTION 09 22 16**  
**NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section specifies steel studs wall systems, , ceiling or soffit suspended or furred framing, wall furring, fasteners, and accessories for the screw attachment of gypsum board, plaster bases or other building boards.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Load bearing framing: Section 05 40 00, COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING.
- B. Support for wall mounted items: Section 05 50 00, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- D. Ceiling suspension systems for acoustical tile or panels and lay in gypsum board panels: Section 09 51 00, ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

**1.3 TERMINOLOGY**

- A. Description of terms shall be in accordance with ASTM C754, ASTM C11, ASTM C841 and as specified.
- B. Underside of Structure Overhead: In spaces where steel trusses or bar joists are shown, the underside of structure overhead shall be the underside of the floor or roof construction supported by beams, trusses, or bar joists. In interstitial spaces with walk-on floors the underside of the walk-on floor is the underside of structure overhead.
- C. Thickness of steel specified is the minimum bare (uncoated) steel thickness.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
  - 1. Studs, runners and accessories.
  - 2. Hanger inserts.
  - 3. Channels (Rolled steel).
  - 4. Furring channels.
  - 5. Screws, clips and other fasteners.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Typical ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Typical metal stud and furring construction system including details around openings and corner details.
  - 3. Typical shaft wall assembly
  - 4. Typical fire rated assembly and column fireproofing showing details of construction same as that used in fire rating test.

D. Test Results: Fire rating test designation, each fire rating required for each assembly.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, IDENTIFICATION, HANDLING AND STORAGE**

In accordance with the requirements of ASTM C754.

#### **1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.

B. American Society For Testing And Materials (ASTM)

A123-09.....Zinc (Hot-dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

A653/A653M-09.....Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

A641-09.....Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire

C11-10.....Terminology Relating to Gypsum and Related Building Materials and Systems

C635-07.....Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension System for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings

C636-06.....Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels

C645-09.....Non-Structural Steel Framing Members

C754-09.....Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products

C841-03 (R2008).....Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring

C954-07.....Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness

C1002-07.....Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs

E580-09.....Application of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Requiring Moderate Seismic Restraint.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**



**2.1 PROTECTIVE COATING**

Galvanize steel studs, runners (track), rigid (hat section) furring channels, "Z" shaped furring channels, and resilient furring channels, with coating designation of G-60 minimum, per ASTM 123.

**2.2 STEEL STUDS AND RUNNERS (TRACK)**

- A. ASTM C645, modified for thickness specified and sizes as shown.
  - 1. Use ASTM A525 steel, 0.8 mm (0.0329-inch) thick bare metal (33 mil).
  - 2. Runners same thickness as studs.
- B. Provide not less than two cutouts in web of each stud, approximately 300 mm (12 inches) from each end, and intermediate cutouts on approximately 600 mm (24-inch) centers.
- C. Doubled studs for openings and studs for supporting concrete backer-board.
- D. Studs 3600 mm (12 feet) or less in length shall be in one piece.
- E. Shaft Wall Framing:
  - 1. Conform to rated wall construction.
  - 2. C-H Studs.
  - 3. E Studs.
  - 4. J Runners.
  - 5. Steel Jamb-Strut.

**2.3 FURRING CHANNELS**

- A. Rigid furring channels (hat shape): ASTM C645.
- B. Resilient furring channels:
  - 1. Not less than 0.45 mm (0.0179-inch) thick bare metal.
  - 2. Semi-hat shape, only one flange for anchorage with channel web leg slotted on anchorage side, channel web leg on other side stiffens fastener surface but shall not contact anchorage surface other channel leg is attached to.
- C. "Z" Furring Channels:
  - 1. Not less than 0.45 mm (0.0179-inch)-thick bare metal, with 32 mm (1-1/4 inch) and 19 mm (3/4-inch) flanges.
  - 2. Web furring depth to suit thickness of insulation with slotted perforations.
- D. Rolled Steel Channels: ASTM C754, cold rolled; or, ASTM C841, cold rolled.

**2.4 FASTENERS, CLIPS, AND OTHER METAL ACCESSORIES**

- A. ASTM C754, except as otherwise specified.
- B. For fire rated construction: Type and size same as used in fire rating test.

- C. Fasteners for steel studs thicker than 0.84 mm (0.033-inch) thick. Use ASTM C954 steel drill screws of size and type recommended by the manufacturer of the material being fastened.
- D. Clips: ASTM C841 (paragraph 6.11), manufacturer's standard items. Clips used in lieu of tie wire shall have holding power equivalent to that provided by the tie wire for the specific application.
- E. Concrete ceiling hanger inserts (anchorage for hanger wire and hanger straps): Steel, zinc-coated (galvanized), manufacturers standard items, designed to support twice the hanger loads imposed and the type of hanger used.
- F. Tie Wire and Hanger Wire:
  - 1. ASTM A641, soft temper, Class 1 coating.
  - 2. Gage (diameter) as specified in ASTM C754 or ASTM C841.
- G. Attachments for Wall Furring:
  - 1. Manufacturers standard items fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
  - 2. For concrete or masonry walls: Metal slots with adjustable inserts or adjustable wall furring brackets. Spacers may be fabricated from 1 mm (0.0396-inch) thick galvanized steel with corrugated edges.
- H. Power Actuated Fasteners: Type and size as recommended by the manufacturer of the material being fastened.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.2 INSTALLING STUDS**

- A. Install studs in accordance with ASTM C754, except as otherwise shown or specified.
- B. Space studs not more than 610 mm (24 inches) on center.
- C. Cut studs 6 mm to 9 mm (1/4 to 3/8-inch) less than floor to underside of structure overhead when extended to underside of structure overhead.
- D. Where studs are shown to terminate above suspended ceilings, provide bracing as shown or extend studs to underside of structure overhead.
- .
- H. Fastening Studs:
  - 1. Fasten studs located adjacent to partition intersections, corners and studs at jambs of openings to flange of runner tracks with two screws through each end of each stud and flange of runner.
  - 2. Do not fasten studs to top runner track when studs extend to underside of structure overhead.
- K. Form control joint, with double studs spaced 13 mm (1/2-inch) apart.

**3.4 INSTALLING SUPPORTS REQUIRED BY OTHER TRADES**

- A. Provide for attachment and support of electrical outlets, plumbing, laboratory or heating fixtures, recessed type plumbing fixture accessories, access panel frames, wall bumpers, wood seats, toilet stall partitions, dressing booth partitions, urinal screens, chalkboards, tackboards, wall-hung casework, handrail brackets, recessed fire extinguisher cabinets and other items like auto door buttons and auto door operators supported by stud construction.
- B. Provide additional studs where required. Install metal backing plates, or special metal shapes as required, securely fastened to metal studs.

**3.6 INSTALLING FURRED AND SUSPENDED CEILINGS OR SOFFITS**

- A. Install furred and suspended ceilings or soffits in accordance with ASTM C754 or ASTM C841 except as otherwise specified or shown for screw attached gypsum board ceilings and for plaster ceilings or soffits.
  - 1. Space framing at 400 mm (16-inch) centers for metal lath anchorage.
  - 2. Space framing at 600 mm (24-inch) centers for gypsum board anchorage.
- B. New exposed concrete slabs:
  - 1. Use metal inserts required for attachment and support of hangers or hanger wires with tied wire loops for embedding in concrete.
  - 2. Furnish for installation under Division 3, CONCRETE.
  - 3. Suspended ceilings under concrete rib construction shall have runner channels at right angles to ribs and be supported from ribs with hangers at ends and at 1200 mm (48-inch) maximum intervals along channels. Stagger hangers at alternate channels.
- C. Concrete slabs on steel decking composite construction:
  - 1. Use pull down tabs when available.
  - 2. Use power activated fasteners when direct attachment to structural framing can not be accomplished.
- D. Where bar joists or beams are more than 1200 mm (48 inches) apart, provide intermediate hangers so that spacing between supports does not exceed 1200 mm (48 inches). Use clips, bolts, or wire ties for direct attachment to steel framing.
- F. Steel decking without concrete topping:
  - 1. Do not fasten to steel decking 0.76 mm (0.0299-inch) or thinner.
  - 2. Toggle bolt to decking 0.9 mm (0.0359-inch) or thicker only where anchorage to steel framing is not possible.
- G. Installing suspended ceiling system for gypsum board (ASTM C635 Option):
  - 1. Install only for ceilings to receive screw attached gypsum board.
  - 2. Install in accordance with ASTM C636.
    - a. Install main runners spaced 1200 mm (48 inches) on center.

- b. Install 1200 mm (four foot) tees not over 600 mm (24 inches) on center; locate for edge support of gypsum board.
- c. Install wall track channel at perimeter.

H. Installing Ceiling Bracing System:

- 1. Construct bracing of 38 mm (1-1/2 inch) channels for lengths up to 2400 mm (8 feet) and 50 mm (2 inch) channels for lengths over 2400 mm (8 feet) with ends bent to form surfaces for anchorage to carrying channels and over head construction. Lap channels not less than 600 mm (2 feet) at midpoint back to back. Screw or bolt lap together with two fasteners.
- 2. Install bracing at an approximate 45 degree angle to carrying channels and structure overhead; secure as specified to structure overhead with two fasteners and to carrying channels with two fasteners or wire ties.

**3.7 TOLERANCES**

- A. Fastening surface for application of subsequent materials shall not vary more than 3 mm (1/8-inch) from the layout line.
- B. Plumb and align vertical members within 3 mm (1/8-inch.)
- C. Level or align ceilings within 3 mm (1/8-inch.)

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 09 54 23**  
**LINEAR METAL CEILINGS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION****A. Section Includes:**

1. Suspended metal grid ceiling system including trim.
2. Decorative, linear, formed metal ceiling panels, mechanically mounted on a ceiling suspension system.
3. Accessories:
  - a. Closures, trim, edge molding and all other items required to provide complete installation.

**B. Unit size, texture, finish, and color as specified.****C. Location and extent of acoustical treatment as shown.****1.2 RELATED WORK****A. Finish Color: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.****B. Acoustical Ceilings: Section 09 51 00, ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS.****C. Interior Lighting: Section 26 51 00, INTERIOR LIGHTING.****1.3 QUALITY CONTROL****A. Qualifications:**

1. Approval required of products or service of proposed manufacturer, suppliers and installers, and shall be based upon submission by Contractor of certification that:
  - a. Manufacturer regularly and presently, manufactures and installs linear metal ceiling systems and related accessories as one of its principal products and has a record of successful in-service performance.
  - b. Accessories required for linear metal ceiling systems shall be manufacturer's standard or other systems compatible with linear metal ceiling system manufacturer's material. Items shall be of materials and construction which shall provide desired functional service.

**2. Installer: Approved in writing by manufacturer.****B. Coordination of Work: Coordinate layout and installation of linear metal ceiling units and suspension system components with other work supported by, or penetrating through, ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system components (if any), and partition system (if any):**

1. Sprinkler heads and light fixtures: Shall typically penetrate center of a panel width.
2. HVAC Air Outlets and Inlets: Shall be planned to occur within center of panel systems or provide for equal distance on each side parallel to length of panels

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Product Data:
  1. Manufacturer's standard details and fabrication methods.
  2. Data on finishing, hardware, components, and accessories.
  3. Recommendations for maintenance and cleaning of finish surfaces.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  1. Submit complete composite fabrication, and installation shop drawings including associated components.
  2. Identify panel sections, baffles, edge trim, lighting trim, air diffuser sections and trim, sprinkler head locations and trim, other component parts, not included in manufacturer's product data, by name and material and showing design, construction, installation, and anchorage.
  3. Layout and installation details, including relation to adjacent work such as walls and bulkheads.
  4. Composite reflected ceiling plans, at 1:50 (1/4 inch) scale, showing location of all accessories, mechanical and electrical components.\_  
Indicate following:
    - a. Joint pattern.
    - b. Ceiling suspension members.
    - c. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
    - d. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, air outlets and inlets, speakers, sprinkler heads, and access panels. Special moldings at walls, column penetrations, and other junctures with adjoining construction.
  5. Detail sections of typical composite members, at wall surfaces, mechanical diffusers and grilles, sprinkler heads, and light fixtures.
  6. Provisions for expansion and contraction.
  7. Anchors and reinforcements.
- D. Samples:

1. Submit pairs of samples of each specified color and finish on 300 mm (12 inch) long sections of extrusions or formed shapes for following:
  - a. Linear metal panel.
  - b. Each exposed molding and trim sections.
  - c. Suspension system members.
  - d. Filler strips.
  - e. Insulation.
  - f. End cap.
2. Where normal color variations are anticipated, include 2 units in set indicating extreme limits of color variations.
3. Integrally Colored Anodized or Prefinished Aluminum:
  - a. Sheet not less than 200 mm by 250 mm (eight inches by ten inches).

E. Certificates:

1. Stating that linear metal ceiling system material has been given specified thickness of anodizing or organic coating finish.
2. Indicating manufacturer's and installer's meet qualifications as specified.
3. Submit list of equivalent size installations which have had satisfactory operation.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Materials: Deliver to site in manufacturer's original unopened containers with brand name and type clearly marked.
- B. Materials: Carefully handle and store in dry, watertight enclosures.
- C. Immediately before installation, linear metal ceiling units shall be stored for not less than 48 hours at same temperature and relative humidity as space where they will be installed to assure temperature and moisture conditions in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

**1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referred to in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):  
2605-11.....High Performance Organic Coatings on  
Architectural Extrusions and Panels.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

A641/641M-09.....Zinc-coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire.  
A653/A653M-10.....Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by Hot-Dip Process.  
B209/B209M-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.  
C635-07.....Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panel Ceilings.  
C636-08.....Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels.  
E90-09.....Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions.  
E580-10.....Application of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Requiring Seismic Restraint.

D. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):  
Metal Finishes Manual (2006)

#### **1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS**

Uniform temperature of not less than 16 °C, (60 °F) nor more than 27 °C, (80 °F) and a relative humidity of not more than 70 percent shall be maintained for a period of 48 hours before, during, and for 48 hours after installation of linear metal ceiling units. After above period, room temperature shall not fall below 13 °C (55 °F).

#### **1.8 SCHEDULING**

Interior finish work such as plastering, gypsum board finishing, painting, concrete and terrazzo work shall be complete and dry before installation. Mechanical, electrical, and other work above ceiling line shall be completed and heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems shall be installed and operating in order to maintain temperature and humidity requirements.

#### **1.9 WARRANTY**

Submit written warranty, in accordance with FAR clause 52.246-21, Warranty of Construction requirements except that warranty period shall be extended to two (2) years.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MATERIALS**

A. Linear Metal Ceiling System, General:



1. Sheet Metal Characteristics: Form metal panels from sheet metal free from surface blemishes where exposed to view in finished unit. Do not use materials whose exposed surfaces exhibit pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, or other imperfections.
2. Fabrication: Die-form linear metal panels into units standard with manufacturer and finished as specified herein.
- B. Accessories: Stabilizer bars, clips, splices as required for suspended grid system.
- C. Linear Metal Panels:
  1. General: Formed to snap on and be securely retained on carriers without separate fasteners.
  2. Aluminum Panels: ASTM B209/B209m, roll-formed sheet, alloy 3005-H26, complying with following requirements:
    - a. Minimum Nominal Thickness: .0625 inch
- D. Suspension Systems, General:
  1. Standard for Metal Suspension Systems: Provide manufacturer's standard types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with ASTM C635 requirements.
  2. Anchors: Type as recommended by manufacturer. Size for five times design load indicated in ASTM C635, Table 1, Direct Hung, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Wire for Carriers, Hangers, and Ties: ASTM A641/A641m, Class 1, zinc coating, soft temper.
  1. Gage: Minimum 12 gage. Shall support a minimum of 1330 N, (300 pounds ultimate vertical load without failure of supporting material or attachment.
- F. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated, or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- G. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated, or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- H. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 22 mm (7/8 inch) wide, formed with 0.82 mm (0.0365 inch) galvanized steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653m, Coating Designation G90, with bolted connections and 7.6 mm (5/16 inch) diameter bolts.
- I. Edge Moldings and Trim: Manufacturer's standard molding for edges and penetrations of ceiling.
- J. Carriers: Comply with ASTM A653/A653m, cold-rolled, electro-galvanized, 0.375 mm (0.0209 inch) (25 gage) minimum nominal thickness steel.

**K. Miscellaneous Components and Materials:**

1. Access Doors: Refer to Section 08 31 13, ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES for requirements. Access doors, required for use in linear metal ceiling system, shall match adjacent ceiling panel units and shall be designed and equipped with suitable framing and fastenings for removal and replacement without damage. Provide locking device for this type access door as used in general access doors.

- L. Access Identification: Refer to Section 09 91 00, PAINTING for requirements of identification markers for use, with various mechanical systems above ceiling, under this section.

**2.2 FINISHES**

- A. Comply with NAAMM "Metal Finishes Manual".
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by application of strippable, temporary protective covering before shipment.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent ceiling units not acceptable. Noticeable variations in same piece not acceptable.
- D. Aluminum Finishes:
1. Lacquered Mill Finish: AA-M10C10R1X.
    - a. Organic Coating: Manufacturer's standard, clear, organic coating.
  2. Class II, Clear, Satin-Anodized Finish: AA-M32C12A212. Anodic Coating: protective and decorative, clear film; coating thickness: .0052 mm (0.2 mil minimum).
  3. Class II, Clear, Mirror-Anodized Finish: AA-M21C12A212. Anodic Coating: protective and decorative, clear film; coating thickness: .0052 mm (0.2 mil minimum).
  4. High-Performance, Organic Coating: Comply with AAMA 605.
  5. Color and Gloss: Refer to Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSPECTION**

- A. Ceiling Areas: Conform with details, dimensions and tolerances shown on approved linear metal ceiling system composite reflected ceiling plan shop drawings.
- B. Conditions which may adversely affect linear metal ceiling system installation shall be brought to Contractors attention, for repair, prior to commencement of linear metal ceiling system installation. Do

not start ceiling installation until affected area has been repaired to Installer's satisfaction.

- C. Where linear metal ceiling system is installed adjacent to masonry, washdown of adjacent masonry shall be completed prior to erection of ceiling system to prevent damage to material finish by cleaning materials.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of linear metal panel units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using units less than half wide at borders.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Standard for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems: Comply with ASTM C636 as applicable to linear metal panel ceiling suspension system.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb, free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or ceiling suspension system. Splay hangers where required to avoid obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, counter splaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 3. Secure hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for structure to which hangers are attached as well as for type of hanger involved, and in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail because of age, corrosion, and elevated temperatures.
  - 4. Space hangers not more than 1200 mm (48 inches) on center along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise shown.
- C. Install edge moldings at edge of each linear metal ceiling area and at locations where edge of units would otherwise be exposed after

completion of Work. Level moldings with ceiling suspension system to level tolerance of 3 mm (1/8 inch) in 3600 mm (12 feet).

1. Masonry and Concrete: Fasten with machine screws into lead-shield-type anchors drilled into construction.
2. Hollow Masonry or Stud Construction: Fasten with toggle bolts or similar self-expanding screw anchors.

D. Ceiling Access Doors:

1. Ceiling access doors shall be located directly under items which require access.

E. Scribe and cut metal panel units for accurate fit at borders and at interruptions and penetrations by other work through ceilings. Stiffen edges of cut units as required to eliminate evidence of buckling or variations in flatness exceeding referenced standards for stretcher-leveled metal sheet.

F. Align joints in adjacent courses to form uniform, straight joints parallel to room axis in both directions, unless otherwise-shown.

G. Install panels with butt joints using internal concealed panel splices and in joint configurations shown in reflected ceiling plan.

H. Install acoustical insulation blankets at right angle to panels so that they do not hang unsupported.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

Following installation, dirty or discolored surfaces of linear metal ceiling units shall be cleaned, in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations, and left free from defects. Units that are damaged or improperly installed shall be removed and new units provided as directed.

### **3.5 PROTECTION**

Protect linear metal ceiling systems from damage until final inspection and acceptance.

- - - END - - -

**SECTION 09 91 00**  
**PAINTING****PART 1-GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Section specifies field painting.
- B. Section specifies prime coats which may be applied in shop under other sections.
- C. Painting includes shellacs, stains, varnishes, coatings specified, and striping or markers and identity markings.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Shop prime painting of steel and ferrous metals: Division 05 - METALS, Division 08 - OPENINGS, , Division 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT, Division 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION, Division 22 - PLUMBING, Division 23 - HEATING, VENTILATION AND AIR-CONDITIONING, Division 26 - ELECTRICAL, Division 27 - COMMUNICATIONS, and Division 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY sections.
- C. Type of Finish, Color, and Gloss Level of Finish Coat: Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- F. Asphalt and concrete pavement marking: Section 32 17 23, PAVEMENT MARKINGS.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:  
Before work is started, or sample panels are prepared, submit manufacturer's literature, the current Master Painters Institute (MPI) "Approved Product List" indicating brand label, product name and product code as of the date of contract award, will be used to determine compliance with the submittal requirements of this specification. The Contractor may choose to use subsequent MPI "Approved Product List", however, only one list may be used for the entire contract and each coating system is to be from a single manufacturer. All coats on a particular substrate must be from a single manufacturer. No variation from the MPI "Approved Product List" where applicable is acceptable.
- C. Sample Panels:
  - 1. After painters' materials have been approved and before work is started submit sample panels showing each type of finish and color specified.
  - 2. Panels to show color: Composition board, 100 by 250 by 3 mm (4 inch by 10 inch by 1/8 inch).
  - 4. Attach labels to panel stating the following:

- a. Federal Specification Number or manufacturers name and product number of paints used.
- b. Specification code number specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
- c. Product type and color.
- d. Name of project.
- 5. Strips showing not less than 50 mm (2 inch) wide strips of undercoats and 100 mm (4 inch) wide strip of finish coat.
- D. Sample of identity markers if used.
- E. Manufacturers' Certificates indicating compliance with specified requirements:
  - 1. Manufacturer's paint substituted for Federal Specification paints meets or exceeds performance of paint specified.
  - 2. High temperature aluminum paint.
  - 3. Epoxy coating.
  - 4. Intumescent clear coating or fire retardant paint.
  - 5. Plastic floor coating.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE**

- A. Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's sealed container marked to show following:
  - 1. Name of manufacturer.
  - 2. Product type.
  - 3. Batch number.
  - 4. Instructions for use.
  - 5. Safety precautions.
- B. In addition to manufacturer's label, provide a label legibly printed as following:
  - 1. Federal Specification Number, where applicable, and name of material.
  - 2. Surface upon which material is to be applied.
  - 3. If paint or other coating, state coat types; prime, body or finish.
- C. Maintain space for storage, and handling of painting materials and equipment in a neat and orderly condition to prevent spontaneous combustion from occurring or igniting adjacent items.
- D. Store materials at site at least 24 hours before using, at a temperature between 18 and 30 degrees C (65 and 85 degrees F).

#### **1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.
- B. American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH):

- ACGIH TLV-BKLT-2008.....Threshold Limit Values (TLV) for Chemical  
Substances and Physical Agents and Biological  
Exposure Indices (BEIs)
- ACGIH TLV-DOC-2008.....Documentation of Threshold Limit Values and  
Biological Exposure Indices, (Seventh Edition)
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
- A13.1-07.....Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- D260-86.....Boiled Linseed Oil
- E. Commercial Item Description (CID):
- A-A-1555.....Water Paint, Powder (Cementitious, White and  
Colors) (WPC) (cancelled)
- A-A-3120.....Paint, For Swimming Pools (RF) (cancelled)
- F. Federal Specifications (Fed Spec):
- TT-P-1411A.....Paint, Copolymer-Resin, Cementitious (For  
Waterproofing Concrete and Masonry Walls) (CEP)
- G. Master Painters Institute (MPI):
- No. 1-07.....Aluminum Paint (AP)
- No. 4-07.....Interior/ Exterior Latex Block Filler
- No. 5-07.....Exterior Alkyd Wood Primer
- No. 7-07.....Exterior Oil Wood Primer
- No. 8-07.....Exterior Alkyd, Flat MPI Gloss Level 1 (EO)
- No. 9-07.....Exterior Alkyd Enamel MPI Gloss Level 6 (EO)
- No. 10-07.....Exterior Latex, Flat (AE)
- No. 11-07.....Exterior Latex, Semi-Gloss (AE)
- No. 18-07.....Organic Zinc Rich Primer
- No. 22-07.....Aluminum Paint, High Heat (up to 590° - 1100F)  
(HR)
- No. 26-07.....Cementitious Galvanized Metal Primer
- No. 27-07.....Exterior / Interior Alkyd Floor Enamel, Gloss (FE)
- No. 31-07.....Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Clear Gloss (PV)
- No. 36-07.....Knot Sealer
- No. 43-07.....Interior Satin Latex, MPI Gloss Level 4
- No. 44-07.....Interior Low Sheen Latex, MPI Gloss Level 2
- No. 45-07.....Interior Primer Sealer
- No. 46-07.....Interior Enamel Undercoat
- No. 47-07.....Interior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (AK)
- No. 48-07.....Interior Alkyd, Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 6 (AK)
- No. 49-07.....Interior Alkyd, Flat, MPI Gloss Level 1 (AK)
- No. 50-07.....Interior Latex Primer Sealer
- No. 51-07.....Interior Alkyd, Eggshell, MPI Gloss Level 3

No. 52-07.....Interior Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3 (LE)  
No. 53-07.....Interior Latex, Flat, MPI Gloss Level 1 (LE)  
No. 54-07.....Interior Latex, Semi-Gloss, MPI Gloss Level 5 (LE)  
No. 59-07.....Interior/Exterior Alkyd Porch & Floor Enamel, Low  
Gloss (FE)  
No. 60-07.....Interior/Exterior Latex Porch & Floor Paint, Low  
Gloss  
No. 66-07.....Interior Alkyd Fire Retardant, Clear Top-Coat (ULC  
Approved) (FC)  
No. 67-07.....Interior Latex Fire Retardant, Top-Coat (ULC  
Approved) (FR)  
No. 68-07.....Interior/ Exterior Latex Porch & Floor Paint,  
Gloss  
No. 71-07.....Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Clear, Flat (PV)  
No. 74-07.....Interior Alkyd Varnish, Semi-Gloss  
No. 77-07.....Epoxy Cold Cured, Gloss (EC)  
No. 79-07.....Marine Alkyd Metal Primer  
No. 90-07.....Interior Wood Stain, Semi-Transparent (WS)  
No. 91-07.....Wood Filler Paste  
No. 94-07.....Exterior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (EO)  
No. 95-07.....Fast Drying Metal Primer  
No. 98-07.....High Build Epoxy Coating  
No. 101-07.....Epoxy Anti-Corrosive Metal Primer  
No. 108-07.....High Build Epoxy Coating, Low Gloss (EC)  
No. 114-07.....Interior Latex, Gloss (LE) and (LG)  
No. 119-07.....Exterior Latex, High Gloss (acrylic) (AE)  
No. 135-07.....Non-Cementitious Galvanized Primer  
No. 138-07.....Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 2  
(LF)  
No. 139-07.....Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 3  
(LL)  
No. 140-07.....Interior High Performance Latex, MPI Gloss Level 4  
No. 141-07.....Interior High Performance Latex (SG) MPI Gloss  
Level 5

H. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):

SSPC SP 1-04 (R2004)....Solvent Cleaning

SSPC SP 2-04 (R2004)....Hand Tool Cleaning

SSPC SP 3-04 (R2004)....Power Tool Cleaning

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**



**2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Cementitious Paint (CEP): TT-P-1411A [Paint, Copolymer-Resin, Cementitious (CEP)], Type 1 for exterior use.
- C. Plastic Tape:
  - 1. Pigmented vinyl plastic film in colors as specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES or specified.
  - 2. Pressure sensitive adhesive back.
  - 3. Widths as shown.
- D. Identity markers options:
  - 1. Pressure sensitive vinyl markers.
  - 2. Snap-on coil plastic markers.
- E. Aluminum Paint (AP): MPI 1.
- F. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler: MPI 4.
- I. Exterior Alkyd, Flat (EO): MPI 8.
- J. Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO): MPI 9.
- K. Exterior Latex, Flat (AE): MPI 10.
- L. Exterior Latex, Semi-Gloss (AE): MPI 11.
- M. Organic Zinc rich Coating (HR): MPI 22.
- N. High Heat Resistant Coating (HR): MPI 22.
- O. Cementitious Galvanized Metal Primer: MPI 26.
- P. Exterior/ interior Alkyd Floor Enamel, Gloss (FE): MPI 27.
- Q. Knot Sealer: MPI 36.
- MM. Exterior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (EO): MPI 94.
- SS. Exterior Latex, High Gloss (acrylic) (AE): MPI 119.
- TT. Waterborne Galvanized Primer: MPI 134.
- UU. Non-Cementitious Galvanized Primer: MPI 135.

**2.2 PAINT PROPERTIES**

- A. Use ready-mixed (including colors), except two component epoxies, polyurethanes, polyesters, paints having metallic powders packaged separately and paints requiring specified additives.
- B. Where no requirements are given in the referenced specifications for primers, use primers with pigment and vehicle, compatible with substrate and finish coats specified.

**2.3 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS/QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Paint materials shall conform to the restrictions of the local Environmental and Toxic Control jurisdiction.
  - 1. Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC): VOC content of paint materials shall not exceed 10g/l for interior latex paints/primers and 50g/l for exterior latex paints and primers.
  - 2. Lead-Base Paint:

- a. Comply with Section 410 of the Lead-Based Paint Poisoning Prevention Act, as amended, and with implementing regulations promulgated by Secretary of Housing and Urban Development.
  - b. Regulations concerning prohibition against use of lead-based paint in federal and federally assisted construction, or rehabilitation of residential structures are set forth in Subpart F, Title 24, Code of Federal Regulations, Department of Housing and Urban Development.
  - c. For lead-paint removal, see Section 02 83 33.13, LEAD-BASED PAINT REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL.
3. Asbestos: Materials shall not contain asbestos.
  4. Chromate, Cadmium, Mercury, and Silica: Materials shall not contain zinc-chromate, strontium-chromate, Cadmium, mercury or mercury compounds or free crystalline silica.
  5. Human Carcinogens: Materials shall not contain any of the ACGIH-BKLT and ACGHI-DOC confirmed or suspected human carcinogens.
  6. Use high performance acrylic paints in place of alkyd paints, where possible.
  7. VOC content for solvent-based paints shall not exceed 250g/l and shall not be formulated with more than one percent aromatic hydro carbons by weight.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 JOB CONDITIONS**

- A. Safety: Observe required safety regulations and manufacturer's warning and instructions for storage, handling and application of painting materials.
  1. Take necessary precautions to protect personnel and property from hazards due to falls, injuries, toxic fumes, fire, explosion, or other harm.
  2. Deposit soiled cleaning rags and waste materials in metal containers approved for that purpose. Dispose of such items off the site at end of each days work.
- B. Atmospheric and Surface Conditions:
  1. Do not apply coating when air or substrate conditions are:
    - a. Less than 3 degrees C (5 degrees F) above dew point.
    - b. Below 10 degrees C (50 degrees F) or over 35 degrees C (95 degrees F), unless specifically pre-approved by the Contracting Officer and the product manufacturer. Under no circumstances shall application conditions exceed manufacturer recommendations.
  3. Do no exterior painting when it is windy and dusty.
  4. Do not paint in direct sunlight or on surfaces that the sun will soon warm.
  5. Apply only on clean, dry and frost free surfaces except as follows:

- a. Apply water thinned acrylic and cementitious paints to damp (not wet) surfaces where allowed by manufacturer's printed instructions.
- b. Dampened with a fine mist of water on hot dry days concrete and masonry surfaces to which water thinned acrylic and cementitious paints are applied to prevent excessive suction and to cool surface.

### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Method of surface preparation is optional, provided results of finish painting produce solid even color and texture specified with no overlays.
- B. General:
  1. Remove prefinished items not to be painted such as lighting fixtures, escutcheon plates, hardware, trim, and similar items for reinstallation after paint is dried.
  2. Remove items for reinstallation and complete painting of such items and adjacent areas when item or adjacent surface is not accessible or finish is different.
  3. See other sections of specifications for specified surface conditions and prime coat.
  4. Clean surfaces for painting with materials and methods compatible with substrate and specified finish. Remove any residue remaining from cleaning agents used. Do not use solvents, acid, or steam on concrete and masonry.
- D. Ferrous Metals:
  1. Remove oil, grease, soil, drawing and cutting compounds, flux and other detrimental foreign matter in accordance with SSPC-SP 1 (Solvent Cleaning).
  2. Remove loose mill scale, rust, and paint, by hand or power tool cleaning, as defined in SSPC-SP 2 (Hand Tool Cleaning) and SSPC-SP 3 (Power Tool Cleaning). Exception: where high temperature aluminum paint is used, prepare surface in accordance with paint manufacturer's instructions.
  3. Fill dents, holes and similar voids and depressions in flat exposed surfaces of hollow steel doors and frames, access panels, roll-up steel doors and similar items specified to have semi-gloss or gloss finish with TT-F-322D (Filler, Two-Component Type, For Dents, Small Holes and Blow-Holes). Finish flush with adjacent surfaces.
    - a. This includes flat head countersunk screws used for permanent anchors.
    - b. Do not fill screws of item intended for removal such as glazing beads.

4. Spot prime abraded and damaged areas in shop prime coat which expose bare metal with same type of paint used for prime coat. Feather edge of spot prime to produce smooth finish coat.
  5. Spot prime abraded and damaged areas which expose bare metal of factory finished items with paint as recommended by manufacturer of item.
- E. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Metal, Aluminum, Surfaces Specified Painted:
1. Clean surfaces to remove grease, oil and other deterrents to paint adhesion in accordance with SSPC-SP 1 (Solvent Cleaning).
  2. Spot coat abraded and damaged areas of zinc-coating which expose base metal on hot-dip zinc-coated items with MPI 18 (Organic Zinc Rich Coating). Prime or spot prime with MPI 134 (Waterborne Galvanized Primer) or MPI 135 (Non- Cementitious Galvanized Primer) depending on finish coat compatibility.
- F. Masonry and Concrete:
1. Clean and remove dust, dirt, oil, grease efflorescence, form release agents, laitance, and other deterrents to paint adhesion.
  2. Use emulsion type cleaning agents to remove oil, grease, paint and similar products. Use of solvents, acid, or steam is not permitted.
  3. Remove loose mortar in masonry work.
  4. Replace mortar and fill open joints, holes, cracks and depressions with new mortar specified in Section 04 05 13, MASONRY MORTARING. Do not fill weep holes. Finish to match adjacent surfaces.
  5. Neutralize Concrete floors to be painted by washing with a solution of 1.4 Kg (3 pounds) of zinc sulfate crystals to 3.8 L (1 gallon) of water, allow to dry three days and brush thoroughly free of crystals.
  6. Repair broken and spalled concrete edges with concrete patching compound to match adjacent surfaces as specified in CONCRETE Sections. Remove projections to level of adjacent surface by grinding or similar methods.

### **3.3 PAINT PREPARATION**

- A. Thoroughly mix painting materials to ensure uniformity of color, complete dispersion of pigment and uniform composition.
- B. Do not thin unless necessary for application and when finish paint is used for body and prime coats. Use materials and quantities for thinning as specified in manufacturer's printed instructions.
- C. Remove paint skins, then strain paint through commercial paint strainer to remove lumps and other particles.
- D. Mix two component and two part paint and those requiring additives in such a manner as to uniformly blend as specified in manufacturer's printed instructions unless specified otherwise.

- E. For tinting required to produce exact shades specified, use color pigment recommended by the paint manufacturer.

### **3.4 APPLICATION**

- A. Start of surface preparation or painting will be construed as acceptance of the surface as satisfactory for the application of materials.
- B. Unless otherwise specified, apply paint in three coats; prime, body, and finish. When two coats applied to prime coat are the same, first coat applied over primer is body coat and second coat is finish coat.
- C. Apply each coat evenly and cover substrate completely.
- D. Allow not less than 48 hours between application of succeeding coats, except as allowed by manufacturer's printed instructions, and approved by Resident Engineer.
- E. Finish surfaces to show solid even color, free from runs, lumps, brushmarks, laps, holidays, or other defects.
- F. Apply by brush, roller or spray, except as otherwise specified.
- I. Do not paint in closed position operable items such as access doors and panels, window sashes, overhead doors, and similar items except overhead roll-up doors and shutters.

### **3.5 PRIME PAINTING**

- A. After surface preparation prime surfaces before application of body and finish coats, except as otherwise specified.
- B. Spot prime and apply body coat to damaged and abraded painted surfaces before applying succeeding coats.
- C. Additional field applied prime coats over shop or factory applied prime coats are not required except for exterior exposed steel apply an additional prime coat.
- D. Prime rebates for stop and face glazing of wood, and for face glazing of steel.
- F. Metals except boilers, incinerator stacks, and engine exhaust pipes:
  - 1. Steel and iron: MPI 95 (Fast Drying Metal Primer)
  - 2. Zinc-coated steel and iron: MPI 135 (Non-Cementitious Galvanized Primer).
  - 3. Aluminum scheduled to be painted: MPI 95 (Fast Drying Metal Primer).
  - 4. Terne Metal: MPI 95 (Fast Drying Metal Primer).
  - 5. Copper and copper alloys scheduled to be painted: MPI 95 (Fast Drying Metal Primer).
  - 6. Machinery not factory finished: MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO)).
  - 7. Asphalt coated metal: MPI 1 (Aluminum Paint (AP)).
  - 8. Metal over 94 degrees C. (200 degrees F), Boilers, Incinerator Stacks, and Engine Exhaust Pipes: MPI 22 (High Heat Resistant Coating (HR)).

2. Primer: MPI 50 (Interior Latex Primer Sealer) except use MPI 45 (Interior Primer Sealer)

I. Concrete Masonry Units except glazed or integrally colored and decorative units:

1. MPI 4 (Block Filler) on interior surfaces.
2. Prime exterior surface as specified for exterior finishes.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR FINISHES

A. Apply following finish coats where specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES or shown on drawings.

C. Steel and Ferrous Metal,

1. Two coats of MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO) on exposed surfaces, except on surfaces over 94 degrees C (200 degrees F).
2. One coat of MPI 22 (High Heat Resistant Coating (HR)) on surfaces over 94 degrees K (200 degrees F) and on surfaces of engine exhaust pipes.

D. Machinery without factory finish except for primer: One coat MPI 8 (Exterior Alkyd, Flat (EO)

E. Concrete Masonry Units and Concrete:

1. General:

- a. Where specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES or shown on drawings.
  - b. Mix as specified in manufacturer's printed directions.
  - c. Do not mix more paint at one time than can be used within four hours after mixing. Discard paint that has started to set.
  - d. Dampen warm surfaces above 24 degrees C (75 degrees F) with fine mist of water before application of paint. Do not leave free water on surface.
  - e. Cure paint with a fine mist of water as specified in manufacturer's printed instructions.
2. Use two coats of TT-P-1411 (Paint, Co-polymer-Resin, Cementitious (CEP)), unless specified otherwise.

### 3.9 PAINT COLOR

A. Color and gloss of finish coats is specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

B. For additional requirements regarding color see Articles, REFINISHING EXISTING PAINTED SURFACE and MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL FIELD PAINTING SCHEDULE.

C. Coat Colors:

1. Color of priming coat: Lighter than body coat.
2. Color of body coat: Lighter than finish coat.

3. Color prime and body coats to not show through the finish coat and to mask surface imperfections or contrasts.
- D. Painting, Caulking, Closures, and Fillers Adjacent to Casework:
  1. Paint to match color of casework where casework has a paint finish.
  2. Paint to match color of wall where casework is stainless steel, plastic laminate, or varnished wood.

### **3.10 MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL WORK FIELD PAINTING SCHEDULE**

- A. Field painting of mechanical and electrical consists of cleaning, touching-up abraded shop prime coats, and applying prime, body and finish coats to materials and equipment if not factory finished in space scheduled to be finished.
- B. In spaces not scheduled to be finish painted in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES paint as specified under paragraph H, colors.
- C. Paint various systems specified in Division 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS, Division 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION, Division 22 - PLUMBING, Division 23 - HEATING, VENTILATION AND AIR-CONDITIONING, Division 26 - ELECTRICAL, Division 27 - COMMUNICATIONS, and Division 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY.
- D. Paint after tests have been completed.
- E. Omit prime coat from factory prime-coated items.
- F. Finish painting of mechanical and electrical equipment is not required when located in interstitial spaces, above suspended ceilings, in concealed areas such as pipe and electric closets, pipe basements, pipe tunnels, trenches, attics, roof spaces, shafts and furred spaces except on electrical conduit containing feeders 600 volts or more.
- G. Omit field painting of items specified in paragraph, Building and Structural WORK NOT PAINTED.
- H. Color:
  1. Paint items having no color specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES to match surrounding surfaces.
  2. Paint colors as specified in Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES except for following:
    - a. White .....Exterior unfinished surfaces of enameled plumbing fixtures. Insulation coverings on breeching and uptake inside boiler house, drums and drum-heads, oil heaters, condensate tanks and condensate piping.
    - b. Gray: .....Heating, ventilating, air conditioning and refrigeration equipment (except as required to match surrounding surfaces), and water and sewage treatment equipment and sewage ejection equipment.

- c. Aluminum Color: Ferrous metal on outside of boilers and in connection with boiler settings including supporting doors and door frames and fuel oil burning equipment, and steam generation system (bare piping, fittings, hangers, supports, valves, traps and miscellaneous iron work in contact with pipe).
  - d. Federal Safety Red: Exposed fire protection piping hydrants, post indicators, electrical conducts containing fire alarm control wiring, and fire alarm equipment.
  - e. Federal Safety Orange: .Entire lengths of electrical conduits containing feeders 600 volts or more.
  - f. Color to match brickwork sheet metal covering on breeching outside of exterior wall of boiler house.
- I. Apply paint systems on properly prepared and primed surface as follows:
- 1. Exterior Locations:
    - a. Apply two coats of MPI 9 (Exterior Alkyd Enamel (EO) to the following ferrous metal items:  
Vent and exhaust pipes with temperatures under 94 degrees C (200 degrees F), roof drains, fire hydrants, post indicators, yard hydrants, exposed piping and similar items.
    - b. Apply two coats of MPI 11 (Exterior Latex, Semi Gloss (AE) to the following metal items:  
Galvanized and zinc-copper alloy metal.
    - c. Apply one coat of MPI 22 (High Heat Resistant Coating (HR)), 650 degrees C (1200 degrees F) to engine generator exhaust.
  - 2. Interior Locations:
    - a. Apply two coats of MPI 47 (Interior Alkyd, Semi-Gloss (AK)) to following items:
      - 1) Metal under 94 degrees C (200 degrees F) of items such as bare piping, fittings, hangers and supports.
      - 2) Equipment and systems such as hinged covers and frames for control cabinets and boxes, cast-iron radiators, electric conduits and panel boards.
      - 3) Heating, ventilating, air conditioning, plumbing equipment, and machinery having shop prime coat and not factory finished.
    - d. Apply two coats of MPI 22 (High Heat Resistant Coating (HR)) to ferrous metal surface over 94 degrees K (200 degrees F) of following items:
      - 5) Engine generator exhaust piping and muffler.
    - e. Paint electrical conduits containing cables rated 600 volts or more using two coats of MPI 8 (Exterior Alkyd, Flat (EO) in the Federal



Safety Orange color in exposed and concealed spaces full length of conduit.

3. Other exposed locations:

- a. Metal surfaces, except aluminum, of cooling towers exposed to view, including connected pipes, rails, and ladders: Two coats of MPI 1 (Aluminum Paint (AP)).
- b. Cloth jackets of insulation of ducts and pipes in connection with plumbing, air conditioning, ventilating refrigeration and heating systems: One coat of MPI 50 (Interior Latex Primer Sealer) and one coat of MPI 11 (Exterior Latex Semi-Gloss (AE)).

**3.11 BUILDING AND STRUCTURAL WORK FIELD PAINTING**

A. Painting and finishing of interior and exterior work except as specified under paragraph 3.11 B.

1. Painting and finishing of new work including colors and gloss of finish selected is specified in Finish Schedule, Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
2. Painting of disturbed, damaged and repaired or patched surfaces when entire space is not scheduled for complete repainting or refinishing.
3. Painting of ferrous metal and galvanized metal.
- .
5. Identity painting and safety painting.

B. Building and Structural Work not Painted:

1. Prefinished items:  
, elevator entrances and cabs, metal panels.
2. Finished surfaces:
  - a. Hardware except ferrous metal.
  - b. Anodized aluminum, stainless steel, chromium plating, copper, and brass, except as otherwise specified.
  - c. Signs, fixtures, and other similar items integrally finished.
3. Concealed surfaces:
  - a. Inside elevator shafts.
  - b. Inside walls or other spaces behind access doors or panels.
4. Moving and operating parts:
  - a. Shafts, chains, gears, mechanical and electrical operators, linkages, and sprinkler heads, and sensing devices.
  - b. Tracks for overhead or coiling doors, shutters, and grilles.
5. Labels:
  - a. Code required label, such as Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Inchcape Testing Services, Inc., or Factory Mutual Research Corporation.

- b. Identification plates, instruction plates, performance rating, and nomenclature.
- 6. Galvanized metal:
  - a. Exterior chain link fence and gates, corrugated metal areaways, and gratings.
  - b. Gas Storage Racks.
  - c. Except where specifically specified to be painted.
- 7. Metal safety treads and nosings.
- 8. Gaskets.
- 9. Concrete curbs, gutters, pavements, retaining walls, exterior exposed foundations walls and interior walls in pipe basements.
- 11. Structural steel encased in concrete, masonry, or other enclosure.
- 12. Structural steel to receive sprayed-on fire proofing.
- 13. Ceilings, walls, columns in interstitial spaces.
- 14. Ceilings, walls, and columns in pipe basements.

### **3.12 IDENTITY PAINTING SCHEDULE**

- A. Identify designated service in accordance with ANSI A13.1, unless specified otherwise, on exposed piping, piping above removable ceilings, piping in accessible pipe spaces, interstitial spaces, and piping behind access panels.
  - 1. Legend may be identified using 2.1 G options or by stencil applications.
  - 2. Apply legends adjacent to changes in direction, on branches, where pipes pass through walls or floors, adjacent to operating accessories such as valves, regulators, strainers and cleanouts a minimum of 12 000 mm (40 feet) apart on straight runs of piping. Identification next to plumbing fixtures is not required.
  - 3. Locate Legends clearly visible from operating position.
  - 4. Use arrow to indicate direction of flow.
  - 5. Identify pipe contents with sufficient additional details such as temperature, pressure, and contents to identify possible hazard. Insert working pressure shown on drawings where asterisk appears for High, Medium, and Low Pressure designations as follows:
    - a. High Pressure - 414 kPa (60 psig) and above.
    - b. Medium Pressure - 104 to 413 kPa (15 to 59 psig).
    - c. Low Pressure - 103 kPa (14 psig) and below.
    - d. Add Fuel oil grade numbers.
  - 6. Legend name in full or in abbreviated form as follows:

PIPING	COLOR OF EXPOSED PIPING	COLOR OF BACKGROUND	COLOR OF LETTERS	LEGEND BBREVIATIONS
Blow-off		Yellow	Black	Blow-off
Boiler Feedwater		Yellow	Black	Blr Feed
A/C Condenser Water Supply		Green	White	A/C Cond Wtr Sup
A/C Condenser Water Return		Green	White	A/C Cond Wtr Ret
Chilled Water Supply		Green	White	Ch. Wtr Sup
Chilled Water Return		Green	White	Ch. Wtr Ret
Shop Compressed Air		Yellow	Black	Shop Air
Air-Instrument Controls		Green	White	Air-Inst Cont
Drain Line		Green	White	Drain
Emergency Shower		Green	White	Emg Shower
High Pressure Steam		Yellow	Black	H.P. _____*
High Pressure Condensate Return		Yellow	Black	H.P. Ret _____*
Medium Pressure Steam		Yellow	Black	M. P. Stm _____*
Medium Pressure Condensate Return		Yellow	Black	M.P. Ret _____*
Low Pressure Steam		Yellow	Black	L.P. Stm _____*
Low Pressure Condensate Return		Yellow	Black	L.P. Ret _____*
High Temperature Water Supply		Yellow	Black	H. Temp Wtr Sup
High Temperature Water Return		Yellow	Black	H. Temp Wtr Ret
Hot Water Heating Supply		Yellow	Black	H. W. Htg Sup
Hot Water Heating Return		Yellow	Black	H. W. Htg Ret
Gravity Condensate Return		Yellow	Black	Gravity Cond Ret
Pumped Condensate Return		Yellow	Black	Pumped Cond Ret
Vacuum Condensate Return		Yellow	Black	Vac Cond Ret
Fuel Oil - Grade		Green	White	Fuel Oil-Grade _____*
Boiler Water Sampling		Yellow	Black	Sample
Chemical Feed		Yellow	Black	Chem Feed
Continuous Blow-Down		Yellow	Black	Cont. B D
Pumped Condensate		Black		Pump Cond
Pump Recirculating		Yellow	Black	Pump-Recirc.
Vent Line		Yellow	Black	Vent
Alkali		Yellow	Black	Alk
Bleach		Yellow	Black	Bleach
Detergent		Yellow	Black	Det
Liquid Supply		Yellow	Black	Liq Sup
Reuse Water		Yellow	Black	Reuse Wtr
Cold Water (Domestic)	White	Green	White	C.W. Dom

## Hot Water (Domestic)

Supply	White	Yellow	Black	H.W. Dom
Return	White	Yellow	Black	H.W. Dom Ret
Tempered Water	White	Yellow	Black	Temp. Wtr

## Ice Water

Supply	White	Green	White	Ice Wtr
Return	White	Green	White	Ice Wtr Ret

## Reagent Grade Water

Green	White	RG
-------	-------	----

## Reverse Osmosis

Green	White	RO
-------	-------	----

## Sanitary Waste

Green	White	San Waste
-------	-------	-----------

## Sanitary Vent

Green	White	San Vent
-------	-------	----------

## Storm Drainage

Green	White	St Drain
-------	-------	----------

## Pump Drainage

Green	White	Pump Disch
-------	-------	------------

## Chemical Resistant Pipe

Waste	Yellow	Black	Acid Waste
-------	--------	-------	------------

Vent	Yellow	Black	Acid Vent
------	--------	-------	-----------

## Atmospheric Vent

Green	White	ATV
-------	-------	-----

## Silver Recovery

Green	White	Silver Rec
-------	-------	------------

## Oral Evacuation

Green	White	Oral Evac
-------	-------	-----------

## Fuel Gas

Yellow	Black	Gas
--------	-------	-----

## Fire Protection Water

Sprinkler	Red	White	Auto Spr
-----------	-----	-------	----------

Standpipe	Red	White	Stand
-----------	-----	-------	-------

Sprinkler	Red	White	Drain
-----------	-----	-------	-------

7. Electrical Conduits containing feeders over 600 volts, paint legends using 50 mm (2 inch) high black numbers and letters, showing the voltage class rating. Provide legends where conduits pass through walls and floors and at maximum 6100 mm (20 foot) intervals in between. Use labels with yellow background with black border and words Danger High Voltage

**3.14 PROTECTION CLEAN UP, AND TOUCH-UP**

- A. Protect work from paint droppings and spattering by use of masking, drop cloths, removal of items or by other approved methods.
- B. Upon completion, clean paint from hardware, glass and other surfaces and items not required to be painted of paint drops or smears.

C. Before final inspection, touch-up or refinished in a manner to produce solid even color and finish texture, free from defects in work which was damaged or discolored.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 10 14 00**  
**SIGNAGE****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies interior signage for room numbers, directional signs, code required signs, telephone identification signs and temporary interior signs.
- B. This section also specifies exterior medical center identification signs, building identification signs, parking and traffic signs.
- C. Installation of Government furnished dedication plaque and VA seal.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Electrical: Related Electrical Specification Sections.
- B. Lighted EXIT signs for egress purposes are specified under Division 26, ELECTRICAL.
- C. Color Finish: To be selected by the Architect.

**1.3 MANUFACTURER'S QUALIFICATIONS**

Sign manufacturer shall provide evidence that they regularly and presently manufactures signs similar to those specified in this section as one of their principal products.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 00, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES.
- B. Samples: Sign panels and frames, with letters and symbols, each type. Submit 2 sets. One set of samples will be retained by Resident Engineer, other returned to Contractor.
  - 1. Sign Panel, 200 mm x 250 mm (8 inches x 10 inches), with letters.
  - 2. Color samples of each color, 150 mm x 150 mm (6 inches x 6 inches. Show anticipated range of color and texture.
  - 3. Sample of typeface, arrow and symbols in a typical full size layout.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature:
  - 1. Showing the methods and procedures proposed for the concealed anchorage of the signage system to each surface type.
  - 2. Manufacturer's printed specifications, anchorage details, installation and maintenance instructions.
- D. Samples: Sign location plan, showing location, type and total number of signs required.
- E. Shop Drawings: Scaled for manufacture and fabrication of sign types. Identify materials, show joints, welds, anchorage, accessory items, mounting and finishes.

F. Full size layout patterns for dimensional letters.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE**

- A. Deliver materials to job in manufacturer's original sealed containers with brand name marked thereon. Protect materials from damage.
- B. Package to prevent damage or deterioration during shipment, handling, storage and installation. Maintain protective covering in place and in good repair until removal is necessary.
- C. Deliver signs only when the site and mounting services are ready for installation work to proceed.
- D. Store products in dry condition inside enclosed facilities.

#### **1.6 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - B209-07.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
  - B221-08.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and tubes.
- C. Federal Specifications (Fed Spec):
  - MIL-PRF-8184F.....Plastic Sheet, Acrylic, Modified.
  - MIL-P-46144C.....Plastic Sheet, Polycarbonate

#### **1.7 MINIMUM SIGN REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Permanent Rooms and Spaces:
  - 1. Tactile and Braille Characters, raised minimum 0.793 mm (1/32 in). Characters shall be accompanied by Grade 2 Braille.
  - 2. Type Styles: Characters shall be uppercase, Helvetica Medium, Helvetica Medium Condensed and Helvetica Regular.
  - 3. Character Height: Minimum 16 mm (5/8 in) high, Maximum 50 mm (2 in).
  - 4. Symbols (Pictograms): Equivalent written description shall be placed directly below symbol, outside of symbol's background field. Border dimensions of symbol background shall be minimum 150 mm (6 in) high.
  - 5. Finish and Contrast: Characters and background shall be eggshell, matte or other non-glare finish with adequate contrast with background.
  - 6. Mounting Location and Height: As shown. Mounted on wall adjacent to the latch side of the door and to avoid door swing and protruding objects.
- B. Overhead Signs:

1. Type Styles: As shown. Characters shall have a width-to-height ratio between 3:5 and 1:1. Characters shall have a stroke width-to-height ratio of between 1:5 and 1:10.
2. Character Height: minimum 75 mm (3 in) high for overhead signs. As shown, for directional signs.
3. Finish and Contrast: Same as for signs of permanent rooms and spaces.
4. Mounting Location and Height: As shown.

#### **1.8 COLORS AND FINISHES:**

To be selected by the Architect.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 GENERAL**

- A. Signs of type, size and design shown on the drawings and as specified.
- B. Signs complete with lettering, framing and related components for a complete installation.
- C. Provide graphics items as completed units produced by a single manufacturer, including necessary mounting accessories, fittings and fastenings.
- D. Do not scale drawings for dimensions. Contractor to verify and be responsible for all dimensions and conditions shown by these drawings. Resident Engineer to be notified of any discrepancy in drawing, in field directions or conditions, and/or of any changes required for all such construction details.
- E. The Sign Contractor, by commencing work of this section, assumes overall responsibility, as part of his warranty of work, to assure that assemblies, components and parts shown or required within the work of the section, comply with the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall further warrant: That all components, specified or required to satisfactorily complete the installation are compatible with each other and with conditions of installations.

#### **2.2 PRODUCTS**

- A. Aluminum:
  1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209.
  2. Extrusions and Tubing: ASTM B221.
- B. Cast Acrylic Sheet: MIL-PRF-8184F; Type II, class 1, Water white non-glare optically clear. Matt finish water white clear acrylic shall not be acceptable.
- C. Polycarbonate: MIL-P-46144C; Type I, class 1.
- D. Vinyl: 0.1 mm thick machine cut, having a pressure sensitive adhesive and integral colors.
- E. Electrical Signs:



1. General: Furnish and install all lighting, electrical components, fixtures and lamps ready for use in accordance with the sign type drawings, details and specifications.
2. Refer to Electrical Specifications Section, Division 26, ELECTRICAL, to verify line voltages for sign locations that require electrical signs.
3. Quality Control: Installed electrical components and sign installations are to bear the label and certification of Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc., and are to comply with National Electrical Code as well as applicable federal, state and local codes for installation techniques, fabrication methods and general product safety.
4. Ballast and Lighting Fixtures: See Electrical Specifications.
- F. Concrete Post Footings: See Section 03 30 53, MISCELLANEOUS CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE, Cast-in-place Concrete.
- G. Steel: See Section 05 12 00, STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING.

### **2.3 SIGN STANDARDS**

- A. Topography:
  1. Type Style: Helvetica Medium and Helvetica Medium Condensed. Initial caps or all caps as indicated in Sign Message Schedule.
  2. Arrow: See graphic standards in drawings.
  3. Letter spacing: See graphic standards on drawings.
  4. Letter spacing: See graphic standards on drawings.
  5. All text, arrows, and symbols to be provided in size, colors, typefaces and letter spacing shown. Text shall be a true, clean, accurate reproduction of typeface(s) shown. Text shown in drawings are for layout purposes only; final text for signs is listed in Sign Message Schedule.
- B. Project Colors and Finishes: See Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

### **2.4 SIGN TYPES**

- A. General:
  1. The interior sign system is comprised of sign types families that are identified by a letter and number which identify a particular group of signs. An additional number identifies a specific type of sign within that family.
    - a. IN indicates a component construction based sign.
  2. The exterior sign system shall be comprised of sign types families that are identified by a letter and number which identify a

particular group of signs. An additional number identifies a specific type of sign within that family.

3. EI designation indicates exterior internally illuminated sign.

4. EN designation indicates exterior non-illuminated sign.

B. Interchangeable Component System:

1. Sign Type Families: 03, 04, 05, 06, 07, 08, 09 10, 11 12, 13, 14, 15, 16 and 17.

2. Interior sign system capable of being arranged in a variety of configurations with a minimum of attachments, devices and connectors.

a. Interchangeable nature of the system shall allow for changes of graphic components of the installed sign, without changing sign in its entirety.

b. Component Sign System is comprised of the following primary components:

1) Rail Back utilizing horizontal rails, spaced to allow for uniform, modular sizing of sign types.

2) Rail Insert mounted to back of Copy Panels to allow for attachment to Rail Back.

3) Copy Panels, made of a variety of materials to allow for different graphic needs.

4) End Caps which interlock to Rail Back to enclose and secure changeable Copy Panels.

5) Joiners and Accent Joiners connect separate Rail Backs together.

6) Top Accent Bars which provide decorative trim cap that encloses the top of sign or can connect the sign to a Type 03 Room Number Sign.

c. Rail Back, Rail Insert and End Caps in anodized extruded aluminum to allow for tight tolerances and consistent quality of fit and finish.

d. Signs in system shall be convertible in the field to allow for enlargement from one size to another in height and width through use of Joiners or Accent Joiners, which connect Rail Back panels together blindly, providing a butt joint between Copy Panels. Accent Joiners shall connect Rail Backs together with a visible 3 mm (1/8") horizontal rib, flush to the adjacent copy insert surfaces.

e. Sign configurations shall vary in width from 225 mm (9 inches) to 2050 mm (80 inches), and have height dimensions of 50 mm (2 inches), 75 mm (3 inches), 150 mm (6 inches), 225 mm (9 inches)

- and 300 mm (12 inches). Height shall be increased beyond 300 mm (12 inches), by repeating height module in full or in part.
3. Rail Back functions as internal structural member of sign using 6063T5 extruded aluminum and anodized black.
    - a. Shall accept an extruded aluminum or plastic insert on one sign or on both sides, depending upon sign type.
    - b. Shall be convertible in field to allow for connection to other Rail Back panels, so that additive changes can be made to sign unit.
    - c. Rail shall allow for a variety of mounting devices including wall mounting for screw-on applications, using pressure sensitive tape, freestanding mount, ceiling mount and other mounting devices as needed.
  4. Rail Insert functions as a mounting device for Copy Panels on to the Rail Back. The Rail Insert mounts to the back of the Copy Panel with adhesive suitable for use with the particular copy insert material.
    - a. Shall allow Copy Panels to slide or snap into the horizontal Rail Back for ease of changeability.
    - b. Shall mount to the back of the Copy Panel with adhesive suitable for use with particular Copy Panel material.
  5. Copy Panels shall accept various forms of copy and graphics, and attaches to the Rail Back with the Rail Insert. Copy Panels shall be either ABS plastic with integral color or an acrylic lacquer finish; photo polymer; or, acrylic.
    - a. Interchangeable by sliding horizontally from either side of sign, and to other signs in system of equal or greater width or height.
    - b. Cleanable without use of special chemicals or cleaning solutions.
    - c. Copy Insert Materials.
      - 1) ABS Inserts - 2.3 mm (.090 inches) extruded ABS plastic core with .07 mm (.003 inches) acrylic cap bonded during extrusion/texturing process. Pressure bonded to extruded Rail Insert using adhesive. Background color is either integral or painted in acrylic lacquer. ABS inserts finished in a chromium industries #HM335RA texture pattern to prevent glare.
      - 2) Photo polymer Inserts - 3 mm (.125 inches) phenolic photo polymer with raised copy etched to 2.3 mm (.0937 inches), bonded to an ABS plastic or extruded aluminum insert with adhesive. Background color is painted in acrylic enamel.
      - 3) Changeable Paper/ Insert Holder - Extruded insert holder with integral Rail Insert for connection with structural back panel

- in 6063T5 aluminum with a black anodized finish. Inserts into holder are paper with a clear 0.7 mm (.030 inches) textured cover. Background color is painted in acrylic lacquer.
- 4) Acrylic - 2 mm (.080 inches) non-glare acrylic. Pressure bonded to extruded Rail Insert using adhesive. Background color is painted in acrylic lacquer or acrylic enamel.
  - 5) Extruded 6063T5 aluminum with a black anodized finish Insert Holder with integral Rail Insert for connection with Structural Back Panel to hold a 0.7 mm (.030 inches) textured polycarbonate insert and a Sliding Tile which mounts in the Inset Holder and slides horizontally.
  - 6) End Caps - Extruded using 6063T5 aluminum with a black anodized. End Caps interlock with Rail Back with clips to form an integral unit, enclosing and securing the changeable Copy Panels, without requiring tools for assembly.
    - a) Shall be interchangeable to either end of sign and to other signs in the system of equal height.
    - b) Mechanical fasteners can be added to the End Caps that will secure it to Rail Back to make sign tamper resistant.
  - 7) Joiners - Extruded using 6063T5 aluminum with a black anodized finish. Rail Joiners connect Rail Backs together blindly, providing a butt joint between Copy Inserts.
  - 8) Accent Joiners - Extruded using 6063T5 aluminum with a mirror polished finish. Joiner shall connect Rail Backs together with a visible 3 mm (.125 inches) horizontal rib, flush to the adjacent Copy Panel surfaces.
  - 9) Top Accent Rail - Extruded using 6063T5 aluminum with a mirror polished finish. Rail shall provide 3 mm (.125 inches) high decorative trim cap, which butts flush to adjacent Copy Panel and encloses top of Rail Back and Copy Panel.
  - 10) Typography
    - a) Vinyl First Surface Copy (non-tactile) - Applied Vinyl copy.
    - b) Subsurface Copy Inserts - Textured 1 mm (.030 inches) clear polycarbonate face with subsurface applied Vinyl copy. Face shall be back sprayed with paint and laminated to an extruded aluminum carrier insert.
    - c) Integral Tactile Copy Inserts - phenolic photo polymer etched with 2.3 mm (.0937 inches) raised copy.

- d) Silk-screened First Surface Copy (non-tactile) - Injection molded or extruded ABS plastic or aluminum insert with first surface applied enamel silk-screened copy.

C. Sign Type Family 01, 02.01 thru 02.05, 08, 09 and 20:

- 1. All text and graphics are to be first surface silk-screened.
- 2. IN-01.12 & IN-01.13: Refer to Sign Type 03 specification for tactile and Braille portion of sign.
- 3. IN-02.4: All text and graphics are to be first surface vinyl letters.
- 4. IN-01.1: Preparation of artwork for reproduction of "fire and emergency evacuation maps" is by manufacturer.

D. Sign Type Families 03:

- 1. Tactile sign is to be made from a material that provides for letters, numbers and Braille to be integral with sign plaque material such as: photosensitive polyamide resin, etched metal, sandblasted phenolic or embossed material. Do not apply letters, numbers and Braille with adhesive.
- 2. Numbers, letters and Braille to be raised 0.793 mm (.0312 inches) from the background surface. The draft of the letters, numbers and Braille to be tapered, vertical and clean.
- 3. Braille dots are to conform with standard dimensions for literary Braille; (a) Dot base diameter: 1.5 mm (.059 inches) (b) Inter-dot spacing: 2.3 mm (.090 inches) (c) Horizontal separation between cells: 6.0 mm (.241 inches) (d) Vertical separation between cells: 10.0 mm (.395 inches)
- 4. Entire assembly is painted in specified color. After painting, apply white or other specified color to surface of the numbers and letters. Entire sign is to have a protective clear coat sealant applied.
- 5. Complete sign is to have an eggshell finish (11 to 19 degree on a 60 degree glossmeter).

E. Sign Type Family 04 and 11:

- 1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied vinyl letters.
- 2. IN-04: When a Type IN-04 is to be mounted under a Type IN03, a connecting Accent Joiner is to be used to create a singular integrated sign.

F. Sign Type 05:

- 1. Text if added to Copy Insert module to be first surface applied vinyl letters.

G. Sign Type Family 06 and 07:

- 1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied vinyl letters except for under sliding tile.

2. Protect text, which is covered by sliding tile, so tile does not wear away letters.
- H. Sign Type Family 10:
1. Pocket depth is to be 0.3 mm (.0150 inches).
- I. Sign Type Family 12 and 13:
1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied vinyl letters.
  2. IN-12: Provide felt, cork or similar material on bottom of desk mounting bracket to protect counter surfaces.
- J. Sign Type Family 14, 15, and 16:
1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied vinyl letters.
  2. IN-14.06: When added to top of IN-14.01, IN-14.04, or IN-14.05 a connecting Accent Joiner is to be used to create a singular integrated sign.
  3. Ceiling mounted signs required mounting hardware on the sign that allows for sign disconnection, removal and reinstallation and reconnection.
- K. Sign Type Family 17:
1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied vinyl letters.
  2. IN-17: Directory constructed using elements of the Component System.
- L. Sign Type Family 18:
1. All text and graphics are to be first surface applied stylus cut vinyl letters.
  2. Provide in specified typeface, color and spacing, with each message or message group on a single quick release backing sheet.
- M. Sign Type Family 19:
1. Dimensional letters are mill or laser cut acrylic in the size and thickness noted in the drawings.
  2. Draft of letters is perpendicular to letters face.
  3. All corners such as where a letter stem and bar intersect are to be square so the letter form is accurately reproduced.
  4. Paint letters with acrylic polyurethane in specified color and finish.
- N. Sign Type Family (See Specialty Signs Section) 21:
1. IN-21.01: 57 mm (2.25 inches) polished aluminum tube mounted to weighted 356 mm (14 inches) diameter polished aluminum base. Sign bracket to hold a 6 mm (.25 inches) sign plaque.
  2. IN-21.02: 57 mm (2.25 inches) polished aluminum tube vertical support mounted to a weighted polished 57 mm (2.25 inches) aluminum tubular base. Rail Back mechanically connected to vertical supports with Copy Panel attached to front and back.

3. IN-21.03 & 21.04: IN-21.02: 57 mm (2.25 inches) polished aluminum tube vertical support mounted to a weighted polished 57 mm (2.25 inches) aluminum tubular base. Rail Back mechanically connected to vertical supports with hinged locking glass door. Black felt covered changeable letter board or tan vinyl impregnated cork tack surface as background within case.

O. Sign Type Family 22:

1. IN-22.01: Extruded aluminum clip anodized black containing rollers to pinch and release paper. End caps are black plastic.
2. IN-22.02: Patient Information holder constructed of 18 gauge formed sheet metal painted in specified color. Polished aluminum connecting rods and buttons. Button covers for mounting screws are to permanently attach and securely conceal screws.

P. Temporary Interior Signs:

1. Fabricated from 50 kg (110 pound) matte finished white paper cut to 100 mm (4 inch) wide by 300 mm (12 inch) long. Punched 3 mm (.125 inch) hole with edge of hole spaced 13 mm (.5 inch) in from edge and centered on 100 mm (4 inch) side. Reinforce hole on both sides with suitable material that prevents tie from pulling through hole. Ties are steel wire 0.3 mm (0.120 inch) thick attached to tag with twist leaving 150 mm (6 inch) long free ends.
2. Mark architectural room number on sign, with broad felt marker in clearly legible numbers or letters that identify room, corridor or space as shown on floor plans.
3. Install temporary signs to all rooms that have a room, corridor or space number. Attach to door frame, door knob or door pull.
  - a. Doors that do not require signs are: corridor doors in corridor with same number, folding doors or partitions, toilet doors, bathroom doors within and between rooms, closet doors within rooms, communicating doors in partitions between rooms with corridor entrance doors.
  - b. Replace and missing damaged or illegible signs.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Design components to allow for expansion and contraction for a minimum material temperature range of 56 °C (100 °F), without causing buckling, excessive opening of joints or over stressing of adhesives, welds and fasteners.
- B. Form work to required shapes and sizes, with true curve lines and angles. Provide necessary rebates, lugs and brackets for assembly of units. Use concealed fasteners whenever and wherever possible.

- C. Shop fabricate so far as practicable. Joints fastened flush to conceal reinforcement, or welded where thickness or section permits.
- D. Contact surfaces of connected members be true. Assembled so joints will be tight and practically unnoticeable, without use of filling compound.
- E. Signs shall have fine, even texture and be flat and sound. Lines and miters sharp, arises unbroken, profiles accurate and ornament true to pattern. Plane surfaces be smooth flat and without oil-canning, free of rack and twist. Maximum variation from plane of surface plus or minus 0.3 mm (0.015 inches). Restore texture to filed or cut areas.
- F. Level or straighten wrought work. Members shall have sharp lines and angles and smooth surfaces.
- G. Extruded members to be free from extrusion marks. Square turns and corners sharp, curves true.
- H. Drill holes for bolts and screws. Conceal fastenings where possible. Exposed ends and edges mill smooth, with corners slightly rounded. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water.
- I. Finish hollow signs with matching material on all faces, tops, bottoms and ends. Edge joints tightly mitered to give appearance of solid material.
- J. All painted surfaces properly primed. Finish coating of paint to have complete coverage with no light or thin applications allowing substrate or primer to show. Finished surface smooth, free of scratches, gouges, drips, bubbles, thickness variations, foreign matter and other imperfections.
- K. Movable parts, including hardware, are to be cleaned and adjusted to operate as designed without binding or deformation of members. Doors and covers centered in opening or frame. All contact surfaces fit tight and even without forcing or warping components.
- L. Pre-assemble items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for re-assembly and coordinated installation.
- M. No signs are to be manufactured until final sign message schedule and location review has been completed by the Resident Engineer & forwarded to contractor.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Protect products against damage during field handling and installation. Protect adjacent existing and newly placed construction, landscaping and finishes as necessary to prevent damage during installation. Paint and



touch up any exposed fasteners and connecting hardware to match color and finish of surrounding surface.

- B. Mount signs in proper alignment, level and plumb according to the sign location plan and the dimensions given on elevation and sign location drawings. Where otherwise not dimensioned, signs shall be installed where best suited to provide a consistent appearance throughout the project. When exact position, angle, height or location is in doubt, contact Resident Engineer for clarification.
- C. Contractor shall be responsible for all signs that are damaged, lost or stolen while materials are on the job site and up until the completion and final acceptance of the job.
- D. Remove or correct signs or installation work Resident Engineer determines as unsafe or as an unsafe condition.
- E. At completion of sign installation, clean exposed sign surfaces. Clean and repair any adjoining surfaces and landscaping that became soiled or damaged as a result of installation of signs.
- F. Locate signs as shown on the Sign Location Plans.
- G. Certain signs may be installed on glass. A blank glass back up is required to be placed on opposite side of glass exactly behind sign being installed. This blank glass back up is to be the same size as sign being installed.
- H. Contractor will be responsible for verifying that behind each sign location there are no utility lines that will be affected by installation of signs. Any damage during installation of signs to utilities will be the sole responsibility of the Contractor to correct and repair.
- I. Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be set in concrete or other material for installation of signs. Provide setting drawings, templates, instructions and directions for installation of anchorage devices which may involve other trades.

- - - END - - -

**SECTION 10 44 13  
FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS****SPEC WRITER NOTE:****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

This section covers recessed fire extinguisher cabinets.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Acrylic glazing: Section 08 80 00, GLAZING.
- B. Field Painting: Section 09 91 00, PAINTING.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Fire extinguisher cabinet including installation instruction and rough opening required.

**1.4 APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS**

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM):  
D4802-10.....Poly (Methyl Methacrylate) Acrylic Plastic Sheet

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINET**

Recessed type with flat trim of size and design shown.

**2.2 FABRICATION**

- A. Form body of cabinet from 0.9 mm (0.0359 inch) thick sheet steel.
- B. Fabricate door and trim from 1.2 mm (0.0478 inch) thick sheet steel with all face joints fully welded and ground smooth.
  - 1. Glaze doors with 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick ASTM D4802, clear acrylic sheet, Category B-1, Finish 1.
  - 2. Design doors to open 180 degrees.
  - 3. Provide continuous hinge, pull handle, and adjustable roller catch.

**2.3 FINISH**

- A. Finish interior of cabinet body with baked-on semigloss white enamel.
- B. Finish door, frame with manufacturer's standard baked-on prime coat suitable for field painting.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- A. Install fire extinguisher cabinets in prepared openings and secure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Install cabinet so that bottom of cabinet is 975 mm (39 inches) above finished floor.

- - - E N D - - -

**SECTION 14 21 00  
ELECTRIC TRACTION ELEVATORS****PART 1 GENERAL****1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section specifies the engineering, furnishing and installation of complete and ready for operation electric traction elevator systems described herein and as indicated on the contract drawings.
- B. Items listed in the singular apply to each and every elevator in this specification except where noted.
- C. Passenger Elevators A&B shall be Machineroomless (MRL) gearless traction elevator type; with Variable Voltage Variable Frequency (VVVF) microprocessor based control system with regenerative drive duplex selective collective automatic and power operated single-speed side opening car and hoistway doors. Elevators shall have Class "A" loading.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 01 33 23 SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONSTRUCTION (FAR 52.236-21) and, SPECIAL NOTES (VAAR 852.236-91), in GENERAL CONDITIONS.
- B. SECTION 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES: As a master format for construction projects, to identify interior and exterior material finishes for type, texture, patterns, color and placement.
- C. Section 26 05 11, REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS: General electrical requirements that are common to more than one section.
- D. Section 26 05 21, LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES (600 VOLTS AND BELOW): Low Voltage power and lighting wiring.
- E. Section 26 05 26, GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS: Requirements for personnel safety and to provide a low impedance path for possible ground fault currents.
- F. Section 26 05 33, RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS: Conduits for cables and wiring.
- G. Section 26 05 71, ELECTRICAL SYSTEM PROTECTIVE DEVICE STUDY: Requirements for installing the over-current protective devices to ensure proper equipment and personnel protection.
- H. Section 26 22 00, LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS: Low voltage transformers.
- I. Section 26 24 16, PANELBOARDS: Low voltage panelboards.
- J. Section 26 51 00, INTERIOR LIGHTING: Fixture and ballast type for interior lighting.

## K. VA Barrier Free Design Handbook (H-18-13)

**1.3 QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. Approval by the Contracting Officer is required for products and services of proposed manufacturers, suppliers and installers and shall be contingent upon submission by Contractor of certificates stating the following:
1. Elevator contractor is currently and regularly engaged in the installation of elevator equipment as one of his principal products.
  2. Elevator contractor shall have three years of successful experience, trained supervisory personnel, and facilities to install elevator equipment specified herein.
  3. The installers shall be Certified Elevator Mechanics with technical qualifications of at least five years of successful experience and Apprentices actively pursuing certified mechanic status. Certificates shall be submitted for all workers employed in this capacity.
  4. Elevator contractor shall submit a list of two or more prior hospital installations where all the elevator equipment he proposes to furnish for this project functioned satisfactorily to serve varying hospital traffic and material handling demands. Provide a list of hospitals that have the equipment in operation for two years preceding the date of this specification. Provide the names and addresses of the Medical Centers and the names and telephone numbers of the Medical Center Administrators.
- B. Approval of Elevator Contractor's equipment will be contingent upon their identifying an elevator maintenance service provider that shall render services within one hour of receipt of notification, together with certification that the quantity and quality of replacement parts stock is sufficient to warranty continued operation of the elevator installation.
- C. Approval will not be given to elevator contractors and manufacturers who have established on prior projects, either government, municipal, or commercial, a record for unsatisfactory elevator installations, have failed to complete awarded contracts within the contract period, and do not have the requisite record of satisfactorily performing elevator installations of similar type and magnitude.
- D. All electric traction elevators shall be the product of the same manufacturer.

- E. The Contractor shall provide and install only those types of safety devices that have been subjected to tests witnessed and certified by an independent professional testing laboratory that is not a subsidiary of the firm that manufactures supplies or installs the equipment.
- F. Welding at the project site shall be made by welders and welding operators who have previously qualified by test as prescribed in American Welding Society Publications AWS D1.1 to perform the type of work required. Certificates shall be submitted for all workers employed in this capacity. A welding or hot work permit is required for each day and shall be obtained from the COTR of safety department. Request permit one day in advance.
- G. Electrical work shall be performed by Licensed Electricians as requirements by NEC. Certificates shall be submitted for all workers employed in this capacity.

#### 1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification. Elevator installation shall meet the requirements of the latest editions published and adopted by the United States Department of Veterans Affairs on the date contract is signed.
- B. Federal Specifications (Fed. Spec.):
  - J-C-30B.....Cable and Wire, Electrical (Power, Fixed Installation)
  - W-C-596F.....Connector, Plug, Electrical; Connector, Receptacle, Electrical
  - W-F-406E.....Fittings for Cable, Power, Electrical and Conduit, Metal, Flexible
  - HH-I-558C.....Insulation, Blankets, Thermal (Mineral Fiber, Industrial Type)
  - W-F-408E.....Fittings for Conduit, Metal, Rigid (Thick- Wall and Thin-wall (EMT) Type)
  - RR-W-410.....Wire Rope and Strand
  - TT-E-489J.....Enamel, Alkyd, Gloss, Low VOC Content
  - QQ-S-766 .....Steel, Stainless and Heat Resisting, Alloys, Plate, Sheet and Strip
- C. International Building Code (IBC)
- D. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME):
  - A17.1-07.....Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators
  - A17.2-07.....Inspectors Manual for Electric Elevators and Escalators

- E. National Fire Protection Association:
- NFPA 13-10.....Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems
  - NFPA 70-11.....National Electrical Code (NEC)
  - NFPA 72-10.....National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
  - NFPA 101-09.....Life Safety Code
  - NFPA 252-08.....Fire Test of Door Assemblies
- F. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- A1008/A1008M-10.....Steel, Sheet, Cold Rolled, Carbon, Structural,  
High-Strength Low-Alloy and High Strength Low-  
Alloy with Improved Formability
  - E1042-02 (R2008).....Acoustically Absorptive Materials Applied by  
Trowel or Spray
- G. Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. (SAE)
- J517-10.....Hydraulic Hose, Standard
- H. Gauges:
- For Sheet and Plate: U.S. Standard (USS)
  - For Wire: American Wire Gauge (AWG)
- I. American Welding Society (AWS):
- D1.1-10.....Structured Welding Code Steel
- J. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
- LD-3-05.....High-Pressure Decorative Laminates
- K. Underwriter's Laboratories (UL):
- 486A-03.....Safety Wire Connectors for Copper Conductors
  - 797-07.....Safety Electrical Metallic Tubing
- L. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
- M. Regulatory Standards:
- Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards
  - Americans with Disabilities Act

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Specification Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, and SAMPLES.
- B. Before execution of work, furnish information to evidence full compliance with contract requirements for proposed items. Such information shall include, as required: Manufacturer's Name, Trade Names, Model or Catalog Number, Nameplate Data (size, capacity, and rating) and corresponding specification reference (Federal or project specification number and paragraph). All submitted drawings and related elevator material shall be forwarded to the Contracting Officer.

## C. Shop Drawings:

1. Complete scaled and dimensioned layout in plan and section view showing the arrangement of equipment and all details of each and every elevator unit specified including:
  - a. Hoisting machines, controllers, power conversion devices, governors, and all other components located in machine room.
  - b. Car, counterweight, sheaves, supporting beams, guide rails, brackets, buffers, size of car platform, car frame members, and other components located in hoistway.
  - c. Rail bracket spacing and maximum vertical forces on guide rails in accordance with ASME A17.1 Section 2.23 and Section 8.4.8 for Seismic Risk Zone 2 or greater.
  - d. Reactions at points of supports and buffer impact loads.
  - e. Weights of principal parts.
  - f. Top and bottom clearances and over travel of car and counterweight.
  - g. Location of shunt trip circuit breaker, switchboard panel, light switch, and feeder extension points in the machine room.
2. Drawings of hoistway entrances and doors showing details of construction and method of fastening to the structural members of the building.
  - a. If drywall construction is used to enclose hoistway, submit details of interface fastenings between entrance frames and drywall.
  - b. Sill details including sill support.

## D. Samples:

1. One each of stainless steel, 75 mm x 125 mm (3 in. x 5 in.).
2. One each of baked enamel, 75 mm x 125 mm (3 in. x 5 in.).
3. One each of color vinyl floor tile.
4. One each of protection pads, 75 mm x 125 mm (3 in. x 5 in.) if used.
5. One each car and hoistway Braille plate sample.
6. One each car and hall button sample.
7. One each car and hall lantern/position indicator sample.
8. One each wall and ceiling material finish sample.
9. One each car lighting sample.
10. No other samples of materials specified shall be submitted unless specifically requested after submission of manufacturer's name. If additional samples are furnished pursuant to request, adjustment in



contract price and time will be made as provided in Section 00 72  
00, GENERAL CONDITIONS.

- E. Name of manufacturer, type or style designation, and applicable data of the following equipment shall be shown on the elevator layouts:
1. Hoisting Machine.
  2. Hoisting Machine Motor, HP and RPM ratings, Voltage, Starting and Full Load Ampere, and Number of Phases.
  3. Controller
  4. Starters and Overload Current Protection Devices.
  5. Car Safety Device; maximum and minimum rated loads and rated speeds.
  6. Governor
  7. Electric Door Operator; HP and RPM ratings, Voltage and Ampere rating of motor.
  8. Hoistway Door Interlocks.
  9. Car and Counterweight Buffers; maximum and minimum rated loads, maximum rated striking speed and stroke.
  10. Hoist and Compensation Ropes; ultimate breaking strength, allowable working load, and actual working load.
  11. Cab Ventilation Unit; HP rating and CFM rating.
- F. Complete construction drawings of elevator car enclosure, showing dimensioned details of construction, fastenings to platform, car lighting, ventilation, ceiling framing, top exits, and location of car equipment.
- G. Complete dimensioned detail of vibration isolating foundations for traction hoisting machines.
- H. Dimensioned drawings showing details of:
1. All signal and operating fixtures.
  2. Car and counterweight roller guides.
  3. Hoistway door tracks, hangers, and sills.
  4. Door operator, infrared curtain units.
- I. Drawings showing details of controllers and supervisory panels.
- J. Furnish certificates as required under: Paragraph "QUALIFICATIONS".

#### **1.6 WIRING DIAGRAMS**

- A. Provide three complete sets of field wiring and straight line wiring diagrams showing all electrical circuits in the hoistway, machine room and fixtures. Install one set coated with an approved plastic sealer and mounted in the elevator machine room as directed by the Resident Engineer.

- B. In the event field modifications are necessary during installation, diagrams shall be revised to include all corrections made prior to and during the final inspection. Corrected diagrams shall be delivered to the Resident Engineer within thirty (30) days of final acceptance.
- C. Provide the following information relating to the specific type of microprocessor controls installed:
  - 1. Owner's information manual, containing job specific data on major components, maintenance, and adjustment.
  - 2. System logic description.
  - 3. Complete wiring diagrams needed for field troubleshooting, adjustment, repair and replacement of components. Diagrams shall be base diagrams, containing all changes and additions made to the equipment during the design and construction period.
  - 4. Changes made during the warranty period shall be noted on the drawings in adequate time to have the finalized drawings reproduced for mounting in the machine room no later than six months prior to the expiration of the warranty period.

#### **1.7 ADDITIONAL EQUIPMENT**

- A. Additional equipment required to operate the specified equipment manufactured and supplied for this installation shall be furnished and installed by the contractor. The cost of the equipment shall be included in the base bid.
- B. Equipment not required by specification, which would improve the operation, may be installed in conjunction with the specified equipment by the contractor at his option at no additional cost to the Government, provided prior approval is obtained from the Contracting Officer's Technical Representative.

#### **1.8 TOOL CABINET**

- A. Provide a metal parts/tool cabinet, having two shelves and hinged doors. Cabinet size shall be 1220 mm (48 in.) high, 762 mm (30 in.) wide, and 457 mm (18 in.) deep.

#### **1.9 PERFORMANCE STANDARDS**

- A. The elevators shall be capable of meeting the highest standards of the industry and specifically the following:
  - 1. Contract speed is high speed in either direction of travel with rated capacity load in the elevator. Speed variation under all load conditions, regardless of direction of travel, shall not vary more than three (3) percent.

2. The controlled rate of change of acceleration and retardation of the car shall not exceed 0.1G per second and the maximum acceleration and retardation shall not exceed 0.2G per second.
3. Starting, stopping, and leveling shall be smooth and comfortable without appreciable steps of acceleration and deceleration.
- B. The door operator shall open the car door and hoistway door simultaneously at 2.5-feet per second and close at 1-foot per second.
- C. Elevator control system shall be capable of starting the car without noticeable "roll-back" of hoisting machine sheave, regardless of load condition in car, location of car, or direction of travel.
- D. Floor level stopping accuracy shall be within 3 mm (1/8 in.) above or below the floor, regardless of load condition.
- E. Noise and Vibration Isolation: All elevator equipment including their supports and fastenings to the building, shall be mechanically and electrically isolated from the building structure to minimize objectionable noise and vibration transmission to car, building structure, or adjacent occupied areas of building.
- F. Sound Isolation: Noise level relating to elevator equipment operation in machine room shall not exceed 80 dBA. All dBA readings shall be taken three (3) feet off the floor and three (3) feet from equipment.
- G. Airborne Noise: Measured noise level of elevator equipment during operation shall not exceed 50 dBA in elevator lobbies and 60 dBA inside car under any condition including door operation and car ventilation exhaust blower on its highest speed.

#### **1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. Submit all labor and materials furnished in connection with elevator system and installation to terms of "Warranty of Construction" articles of FAR clause 52.246-21. The one year Warranty shall commence after final inspection, completion of performance test, and upon full acceptance of the installation and shall concur with the guarantee period of service.
- B. During warranty period if a device is not functioning properly or in accordance with specification requirements, or if in the opinion of the Contracting Officer's Technical Representative, excessive maintenance and attention must be employed to keep device operational, device shall be removed and a new device meeting all requirements shall be installed as part of work until satisfactory operation of installation is obtained. Period of warranty shall start anew for such parts from date

of completion of each new installation performed, in accordance with foregoing requirements.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Where stainless steel is specified, it shall be corrosion resisting steel complying with Federal Specification QQ-S-766, Class 302 or 304, Condition A with Number 4 finish on exposed surfaces. Stainless steel shall have the grain of belting in the direction of the longest dimension and surfaces shall be smooth and without waves. During installation all stainless steel surfaces shall be protected with suitable material.
- B. Where cold rolled steel is specified, it shall be low-carbon steel rolled to stretcher leveled standard flatness, complying with ASTM A109.

### **2.2 MANUFACTURED PRODUCTS**

- A. Materials, devices, and equipment furnished shall be of current production by manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such items. Items not meeting this requirement, but meet technical specifications which can be established through reliable test reports or physical examination of representative samples, will be considered.
- B. When two or more devices of the same class of materials or equipment are required, these units shall be products of one manufacturer.
- C. Manufacturers of equipment assemblies which include components made by others shall assume complete responsibility for the final assembled unit.
  - 1. Individual components of assembled units shall be products of the same manufacturers.
  - 2. Parts which are alike shall be the product of a single manufacturer.
  - 3. Components shall be compatible with each other and with the total assembly for the intended service.
- D. Motor nameplates shall state manufacturers' name, rated horsepower, speed, volts, starting and full load amperes, and other characteristics required by NEMA Standards and shall be securely attached to the item of equipment in a conspicuous location.
- E. The elevator equipment, including controllers, door operators, and supervisory system shall be the product of manufacturers of established reputation, provided such items are capably engineered and produced under coordinated specifications to ensure compatibility with the total

operating system. Mixing of manufactures related to a single system or group of components shall be identified in the submittals.

- F. Where key operated switches are furnished in conjunction with any component of this elevator installation, furnish four (4) keys for each individual switch or lock. Provide different key tumblers for different switch and lock functions. Each and every key shall have a tag bearing a stamped or etched legend identifying its purpose. Barrel key switches are not acceptable, except where required by code.
- G. If the elevator equipment to be installed is not known to the Resident Engineer, the Contractor shall submit drawings in triplicate for approval to the Resident Engineer, Contracting Officer, and VA CFM Elevator Engineer showing all details and demonstrate that the equipment to be installed is in strict accordance with the specifications.

### **2.3 CAPACITY, SIZE, SPEED, AND TRAVEL**

- A. Each and every elevator shall have the capacity to lift and lower the live load, including the weight of the car and cables, at the speed specified in the following schedule:

ELEVATOR SCHEDULE	
Elevator Number	A & B
Overall Platform Size	6'-8" W x 5'-4 13/16 D
Rated Load - kg (lb)	4,000 lb
Contract Speed - m/s(fpm)	200 fpm
Total Travel - m/s(fpm)	45'-10"
Number of Stops	<b>3</b>
Number of Openings	<b>3</b> (x2)
Type of Roping	1:1
Entrance Type and Size	Side opening (3'-6" x 7'-0)

### **2.4 POWER SUPPLY**

- A. For power supply in each machine room, see Specification 26 05 21, Electrical specifications, and Electrical drawings.
- B. It shall be the Electrical contractor's responsibility to supply the labor and materials for the installation of the following:
1. Feeders from the power source indicated on the drawings to each elevator controller.

2. Shunt Trip Circuit Breaker for each controller shall be located inside machine room at the strike side of the machine room door and lockable in the "Off" position.
3. Provide Surge Suppressors to protect the elevator equipment.
- C. Power for auxiliary operation of elevator as specified shall be available from auxiliary power generator, including wiring connection to the elevator control system.

## **2.5 CONDUIT AND WIREWAY**

- A. Unless otherwise specified or approved, install electrical conductors, except traveling cable connections to the car, in rigid zinc-coated steel or aluminum conduit, electrical metallic tubing or metal wireways. Rigid conduit smaller than 3/4 inch or electrical metallic tubing smaller than 1/2 inch electrical trade size shall not be used. All raceways completely embedded in concrete slabs, walls, or floor fill shall be rigid steel conduit. Wireway (duct) shall be installed in the hoistway and to the controller and between similar apparatus in the elevator machine room. Fully protect self-supporting connections, where approved, from abrasion or other mechanical injury. Flexible metal conduit not less than 3/8 inch electrical trade size may be used, not exceeding 18 inches in length unsupported, for short connections between risers and limit switches, interlocks, and for other applications permitted by NEC.
- B. All conduits terminating in steel cabinets, junction boxes, wireways, switch boxes, outlet boxes and similar locations shall have approved insulation bushings. Install a steel lock nut under the bushings if they are constructed completely of insulating materials. Protect the conductors at ends of conduits not terminating in steel cabinets or boxes by terminal fittings having an insulated opening for the conductors.
- C. Rigid conduit and EMT fittings using set screws or indentations as a means of attachment shall not be used. All fittings shall be steel or malleable iron.
- D. Connect motor or other items subject to movement, vibration or removal to the conduit or EMT systems with flexible, steel conduits.

## **2.6 CONDUCTORS**

- A. Unless otherwise specified, conductors, excluding the traveling cables, shall be stranded or solid coated annealed copper in accordance with Federal Specification J-C-30B for Type RHW or THW. Where 16 and 18 AWG

are permitted by NEC, single conductors or multiple conductor cables in accordance with Federal Specification J-C-580 for Type TF may be used provided the insulation of single conductor cable and outer jacket of multiple conductor cable is flame retardant and moisture resistant. Multiple conductor cable shall have color or number coding for each conductor. Conductors for control boards shall be in accordance with NEC. Joints or splices are not permitted in wiring except at outlets. Tap connectors may be used in wireways provided they meet all UL requirements.

- B. Provide all conduit and wiring between machine room, hoistway and fixtures.
- C. All wiring must test free from short circuits or ground faults. Insulation resistance between individual external conductors and between conductors and ground shall be a minimum of one megohm.
- D. Where size of conductor is not given, voltage and amperes shall not exceed limits set by NEC.
- E. Provide equipment grounding. Ground the conduits, supports, controller enclosure, motor, platform and car frame, and all other non-current conducting metal enclosures for electrical equipment in accordance with NEC. The ground wires shall be copper, green insulated and sized as required by NEC. Bond the grounding wires to all junction boxes, cabinets, and wire raceways.
- F. Terminal connections for all conductors used for external wiring between various items of elevator equipment shall be solderless pressure wire connectors in accordance with Federal Specification W-S-610. The Elevator Contractor may, at his option, make these terminal connections on 10 gauge or smaller conductors with approved terminal eyelets set on the conductor with a special setting tool, or with an approved pressure type terminal block. Terminal blocks using pierce-through serrated washers are not acceptable.

## **2.7 TRAVELING CABLES**

- A. All conductors to the car shall consist of flexible traveling cables conforming to the requirements of NEC. Traveling cables shall run from the junction box on the car directly to the controller. Junction boxes on the car shall be equipped with terminal blocks. Terminal blocks having pressure wire connectors of the clamp type that meet UL 486A requirements for stranded wire may be used in lieu of terminal eyelet connections. Terminal blocks shall have permanent indelible identifying

numbers for each connection. Cables shall be securely anchored to avoid strain on individual terminal connections. Flame and moisture resistant outer covering must remain intact between junction boxes. Abrupt bending, twisting and distortion of the cables shall not be permitted.

- B. Provide spare conductors equal to 10 percent of the total number of conductors furnished, but not less than 5 spare conductors in each traveling cable.
- C. Provide shielded wires for the auto dial telephone system within the traveling cable. Add 5 pair shielded wires for card reader, 2 RG-6/U coaxial CCTV cables, and 2 pair 14 gauge wires for CCTV power as needed.
- D. If traveling cables come into contact with the hoistway or elevator due to sway or change in position, provide shields or pads to the elevator and hoistway to prevent damage to the traveling cables.
- E. Hardware cloth wide may be installed from the hoistway suspension point downward to the elevator pit to prevent traveling cables from rubbing or chafing. Hardware cloth shall be securely fastened and tensioned to prevent buckling. Hardware cloth is not required when traveling cable is hung against a flat wall.

## **2.8 CONTROLLER AND SUPERVISORY PANEL**

- A. UL/CSA Labeled Controller: Mount all assemblies, power supplies, chassis switches, and relays on a self-supporting steel frame. Completely enclose the equipment and provide a mean to control the temperature. Solid state components shall be designed to operate between 32 to 104 degrees Fahrenheit, humidity non-condensing up to 85 percent.
- B. All controller switches and relays shall have contacts of design and material to ensure maximum conductivity, long life and reliable operation without overheating or excessive wear, and shall provide a wiping action to prevent sticking due to fusion. Switches carrying highly inductive currents shall be provided with arc shields or suppressors.
- C. Where time delay relays are used in the circuits, they shall be of acceptable design, adjustable, reliable, and consistent such as condenser timing or electronic timing circuits.
- D. Properly identify each device on all panels by name, letter, or standard symbol which shall be neatly stencil painted or decaled in an indelible and legible manner. Identification markings shall be



coordinated with identical markings used on wiring diagrams. The ampere rating shall be marked adjacent to all fuse holders. All spare conductors to controller and supervisory panel shall be neatly formed, laced, and identified.

## **2.9 MICROPROCESSOR CONTROL SYSTEM**

- A. Provide a microprocessor based system with absolute position/speed feedback encoded tape to control the hoisting machine and signal functions in accordance with these specifications. Complete details of the components and printed circuit boards, together with a complete operational description, shall be submitted for approval.
  - 1. All controllers shall be non-proprietary.
  - 2. Proprietary tools shall not be necessary for adjusting, maintenance, repair, and testing of equipment.
  - 3. Controller manufacturer shall provide factory training, engineering and technical support, including all manuals and wiring diagrams to the VA Medical Center's designated Elevator Maintenance Service Provider.
  - 4. Replacement parts shall be shipped overnight within 48 hours of an order being received.
- B. All controller assemblies shall provide smooth, step-less acceleration and deceleration of the elevator, automatically and irrespective of the load in the car. All control equipment shall be enclosed in metal cabinets with lockable, hinged door(s) and shall be provided with a means of ventilation. All non-conducting metal parts in the machine room shall be grounded in accordance with NEC. Cabinet shall be securely attached to the building structure.
- C. Circuit boards for the control of each and every elevator system; dispatching, signals, door operation and special operation shall be installed in a NEMA Type 1 General Purpose Enclosure. Circuit boards shall be moisture resistant, non-corrosive, non-conductive, fabricated of non-combustible material and adequate thickness to support the components mounted thereon. Mounting racks shall be spaced to prevent accidental contact between individual circuit boards and modules.
- D. Modules shall be the type that plug into pre-wired mounting racks. Field wiring or alteration shall not be necessary in order to replace defective modules.
- E. Each device, module and fuse (with voltage and ampere rating) shall be identified by name, letter or standard symbol in an approved indelible

and legible manner on the device or panel. Coordinate identification markings with identical markings on wiring diagrams.

- F. The electrical connections between the printed circuit boards (modules) and the circuit connectors incorporated in the mounting racks shall be made through individual tabs which shall be an integral part of each module. The tabs shall be nickel-gold plated or other approved metal of equal electrical characteristics. Modules shall be keyed or notched to prevent insertion of the modules in the inverted position.
- G. Light emitting diodes (LED) shall be for visual monitoring of individual modules.
- H. Components shall have interlocking circuits to assure fail-safe operation and to prevent elevator movement should a component malfunction.
- I. Method of wire wrapping from point to point with connections on the mounting racks shall be submitted for approval.
- J. Field wiring changes required during construction shall be made only to the mounting rack connection points and not to the individual module circuitry or components. If it is necessary to alter individual modules they shall be returned to the factory where design changes shall be made and module design records changed so correct replacement units will be available.
- K. All logic symbols and circuitry designations shall be in accordance with ASME and NEC Standards.
- L. Solid state components shall be designed to operate within a temperature range of 32 to 104 degrees Fahrenheit, humidity non-condensing up to 85 percent.
- M. Wiring connections for operating circuits and for external control circuits shall be brought to terminal blocks mounted in an accessible location within the controller cabinet. Terminal blocks using pierce through serrated washers shall not be used.

## **2.10 VVVF AC MOTOR CONTROL WITH REGENERATIVE DRIVE**

- A. Variable Voltage Variable Frequency Motor Control:
  - 1. Elevator control shall be affected by means of a compact solid state motor control unit for each and every elevator with electrical characteristics to suit the power supply. The system shall consist of the necessary three phase, full-wave bridge rectifiers and be equipped with regenerative drive.

2. Solid state motor control unit shall operate with high efficiency and low power consumption, have the capacity to handle peak currents typical of elevator service and contain a balanced, coordinated fault protection system which shall accomplish the following:
  - a. Protect the complete power circuit and specifically the power semi-conductors from failure under short circuit (bolted fault) conditions.
  - b. Protect against limited faults arising from partial grounds, partial shorts in the motor armature or in the power unit itself.
  - c. Protect the drive motor against sustained overloads. A solid state overload circuit shall be used.
  - d. Protect motor and power unit against instantaneous peak overload.
  - e. Provide semi-conductor transient protection.
  - f. Provide phase sequence protection to ensure incoming line is phased properly.
  - g. Removable printed circuit boards shall be provided for the VVVF control. Design tabs so boards cannot be reversed.

#### **2.11 EMERGENCY RESCUE OPERATION**

- A. Provide a power source to send the elevator to the nearest landing. After the elevator has leveled at the nearest landing, provide power to open the car and hoistway doors automatically. After a predetermined time the doors shall close. Power shall stay applied to the door open button so the doors can be opened from the inside of the elevator. The elevator shall remain shut down at the landing until normal power is restored. Install a sign on the controller indicating that the power is applied to emergency rescue operator and door operator during loss of normal power.

#### **2.12 DUPLEX SELECTIVE COLLECTIVE AUTOMATIC OPERATION**

- A. Provide duplex selective collective automatic operation, for passenger elevators A&B.
- B. Operate elevators from push buttons inside the cars and located at each and every floor between elevators. When cars are available, park one car at main floor (home car) and the other car at last call (free car). Respond to car calls and hall calls above main floor using the "free" car. Once a car has started, respond to registered calls in the direction of travel and in the order the floors are reached. Do not reverse the car direction until all car calls have been answered, or

until all hall calls ahead of the car and corresponding to the direction of car travel have been answered.

Slow and stop elevators automatically at floors corresponding to registered calls in the order in which they are approached in each direction of travel. As slowdown is initiated, automatically cancel the hall call and car call. Hold car at arrival floor an adjustable time interval to allow passenger transfer.

When the "free" car is clearing calls, the "home" car shall respond to the following:

1. Calls registered on "home" car push buttons.
  2. Up hall calls registered below "free" car.
  3. Up or down calls registered above "free" car while "free" car is traveling down.
  4. Hall calls when "free" car is delayed in its normal operation for a predetermined period.
- C. When both cars are clearing calls, stop only one car in response to any registered hall call. Return the first car to clear its calls to the main floor. Should last service required bring both cars to main floor, the first arriving car becomes the "free" car. Illuminate floor push button to indicate call registration. Extinguish light when call is answered.
- D. If a landing button is operated while the car and hoistway doors are closing at that floor, the call shall be registered for the next available elevator. Calls registered shall be canceled if closing doors are reopened by means of "DOOR OPEN" button or infrared curtain unit.
- E. When an elevator is delayed for a predetermined time interval or shuts down after it receives a start signal, the system shall automatically permit the remaining car in the group to respond to hall calls and to be dispatched in normal manner. When cause of delay is corrected, car shall automatically resume normal operation unless it has been manually removed from the system.
- F. Auxiliary Landing Call Operation: In the event of corridor call button circuit failure, elevators are to service each floor in both directions in a predetermined pattern without registration of a call within the elevators. Provide illuminated signal in each the controller to indicate that emergency dispatch operation is in effect. Restoration of the landing call button system shall cause normal operation to resume.

- G. Car lights and fan in the elevator shall not shut off when elevator is idle. Arrange circuits so that power to lights and outlets on top and bottom of car shall not be interrupted.

### **2.13 LOAD WEIGHING**

- A. Provide means for weighing car load for each and every elevator. When load in a car reaches an adjustable predetermined level of the rated capacity, that car shall bypass registered landing calls until the load in the car drops below the predetermined level. Calls bypassed in this manner shall remain registered for the next car. The initial adjustment of the load weighting bypass setting shall be 60 to 100 percent.

### **2.14 ANTI-NUISANCE FEATURE**

- A. If weight in the car is not commensurate with the number of registered car calls, cancel car calls. Systems that employ either load weighing or door protective device for activation of this feature are acceptable.

### **2.15 FIREFIGHTERS' SERVICE**

- A. Provide Firefighters' Service as per ASME A17.1 Section 2.27.
- B. Smoke Detectors:
1. Smoke detection devices that are designated for actuation of Elevator Phase I "FIRE SERVICE" response in each elevator lobby, top of hoistway, and machine room shall be provided by others.
    - a. Elevator lobby smoke detectors shall activate only the elevators sharing the corresponding or common lobby.
    - b. Top of hoistway smoke detectors shall activate fire recall and the top of hoistway motorized vent.
    - c. Elevator or group of elevators serving separate isolated areas of the same floor shall have an independent smoke detection system.
    - d. Machine room smoke detectors shall activate fire recall for each and every elevator with equipment located in that machine room.
    - e. Hoistway ventilation, provided by others, located at the top of hoistway for elevators that penetrate more than three floors and meets the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 2.1.4 and IBC Section 3004. The vent shall stay closed under power. When the top of hoistway smoke detector is activated, the power is removed from the vent and the vent shall open. When the smoke detector is reset, the vent shall close by power.

**2.16 MEDICAL EMERGENCY SERVICE**

- A. Provisions shall be made for calling elevator A & B on "Medical Emergency" operating independently from the dispatch signals and landing call signals. Provide a two-position, key-operated, momentary contact, spring return switch at Ground Floor Level.
- B. Install key switch in the floor landing push button fixture above the push buttons.
- C. Landing key switches shall be momentary pressure-spring return to "OFF" position. Provide a call registered light indicator adjacent to key switch. The landing key switch and the "Medical Emergency" key switch in the car shall not be operable by keys used for any other purpose in the hospital.
- D. When switch is activated at any floor, the call register light indicator shall illuminate at that floor only, and the elevator supervisory control system shall instantly select the nearest available elevator in service to respond to the medical emergency call. Immediately upon selection, all car calls within that car shall be cancelled. Transfer any landing calls which had previously been assigned that car to another car. If the selected car is traveling away from the medical emergency call, it shall slow down and stop at the nearest floor, maintain closed doors, reverse direction and proceed nonstop to the medical emergency call floor. If the selected car is traveling toward the medical emergency call floor, it shall proceed to that floor nonstop. If at the time of selection it is slowing down for a stop, the car shall stop, maintain doors closed, and start immediately toward the medical emergency floor.
- E. Arriving at the medical emergency floor, the car shall remain with doors open for 30 seconds. After this interval has expired and the car has not been placed on medical emergency operation from within the car, the car shall automatically return to normal service.
  - 1. Locate a "Medical Emergency" key switch in the upper section of each main car operating panel for selecting medical emergency service. Activation of the key switch will allow the car to accept a car call for any floor, close doors, and proceed nonstop to the floor desired. The return of the key switch to normal position will restore the car to normal service. The key shall be removable only in the off position.

- F. Any car in the group which is in group service may be selected. Additional medical emergency calls, as they are registered in the system, shall cause additional cars to respond as described below, always on the basis of one medical emergency call per car.
- G. Provide an LED illuminated indicator light next to the Medical Emergency key switch the same size as the Fire Service indicator. In the center of the rear cab panel provide a back lighted "MEDICAL EMERGENCY" LED illuminated display that shall flash on and off continuously when the car is assigned to this operation and until it is restored to normal service. "MEDICAL EMERGENCY" indicator shall be a photographic negative type 1830 mm (72 in.) to center above the floor, 152 mm (6 in.) wide X 76 mm (3 in.) high, with 12 mm (1/2 in.) high letters and legible only when illuminated.
- H. All of the key switches in the "Medical Emergency" system for each and every elevator shall operate from the same key. The medical emergency call service key shall not operate any other key switch in the elevator system, nor shall any other key required by the elevator system be able to operate the medical emergency call service switches.
- I. Should all the cars be operating on "Independent Service", the medical emergency service indicator lights in the car operating panel and rear wall shall be illuminated, buzzer shall sound, and the "Audio Voice" system shall direct the attendant to return the car to automatic operation.
- J. Should all the cars be out of service and unable to answer medical emergency calls, the call register light shall not illuminate.
- K. Each switch faceplate shall have legible indelible legends engraved or etched to indicate its identity and positions. All letters in faceplates shall be 6 mm (1/4 in.) high, filled with black paint.
- L. When Phase I fire recall is activated it shall over-ride elevators on medical emergency service and return them to the main or alternate fire service recall floor. When the fire emergency floor has been identified the attendants may complete their medical emergency run on Phase II firefighters' operation if life safety is not affected.
- M. Provide four (4) keys for each "Medical Emergency" key cylinder furnished.

**2.17 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Meet the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 8.4, Elevator Safety Requirements for Seismic Risk Zone 2 or greater and VA Seismic Design Manual H-18-8.
- B. Support and maintain hoisting machines, controllers, supervisory panels, governors, pit sheaves, car and counterweight rails and brackets, conduit systems, buffers, and compensation sheaves in place to prevent any component from sliding, rotating, overturning, or jumping under conditions imposed by seismic forces not less than that required to produce an acceleration of gravity horizontally and 1/2 gravity vertically acting simultaneously. Design the total system to continue operation without interruption under specified seismic acceleration, as outlined in H-18-8.
- C. Support all vertical conduits or duct systems within the hoistway at points above the center of gravity of the riser. Provide lateral guides at regular intervals.
- D. Provide hoisting machines mounted on vibration isolators with separate isolated seismic restraints.
- E. Controllers and supervisory panel shall be bolted to the floor, and provided with sway braces at the top. Secure all electrical components within the panels to the panel frame. Fit cabinet doors with positive locking latches.
- F. Car and counterweight guide rail brackets and rail clip bolts shall be guarded against snagging the traveling cables on the side of the rail adjacent to the point of suspension of the traveling cables.
- G. Provide car guide rails with at least one intermediate bracket between brackets located at each floor so that bracket spacing does not exceed 2440 mm (8 ft). If intermediate brackets cannot be installed because of lack of structural support, reinforce rails with 229 mm (9 in.) channel or approved equal backing.
- H. Guide rails shall not be less than 22.5 kg/m (15 lb/ft).
- I. Provide counterweight guide rails with intermediate brackets in sufficient number so that the counterweight frame shall span no less than two brackets in its full length anywhere in the hoistway. Each pair of intermediate brackets as well as brackets located at each floor line shall have a horizontal tie of sufficient strength to contain the counterweight. Locate the horizontal tie member between the



counterweight and the elevator car, and do not attach to the car guide rail or channel backing.

- J. Provide two counterweight derailment sensing wires vertically on the car side of the counterweight the entire height of travel. The counterweight frame shall be equipped with four derailment rings. Provide counterweight displacement switch. In the event the switch is activated, the corresponding elevator shall stop immediately and then proceed in the direction away from the counterweight to the next floor at a speed not exceeding 0.76 m/s (150 FPM). Upon arrival at the next floor, the elevator shall shut down with its door open. An indicator pilot light shall illuminate when the counterweight derailment detector is activated. This pilot shall be fully identified and shall be located in the machine room indicator panel, or if no machine room indicator panel is specified, locate pilot light in a conspicuous place on the front of the elevator controller, not obstructed by controller door panels.
- K. Provide seismic switch to activate seismic operation, a minimum of one seismic switch per elevator or group of elevators.
- L. Provide an Annunciator in machine room connected to the essential electrical system. Annunciator will indicate if the seismic switch is not operative due to loss of power.
- M. Provide a sensor switch, installed on the governor rope tail sheave, to signal when the governor tail sheave is dislodged. The sensor shall prevent car movement when the governor tail sheave is dislodged from its normal position.
- N. The stresses in parts of structural members made of steel shall not exceed 88 percent of the minimum elastic strength of the material used in the fastenings.
- O. Provide car enclosure ceiling panels and fluorescent tubes with latching devices that shall restrain the panels and fluorescent tubes. Devices shall be readily removable for cleaning or replacing panels and re-lamping.
- P. Submittals are required for all equipment anchors, supports, restraints and detectors. Submittals shall include weight, dimensions, center of gravity, standard connections, calculations, manufacturer's recommendations, behavior problems (vibration, thermal, expansion, etc.) so that design can be properly reviewed.

Q. California only: provide an Earthquake Detection device in machine room to activate "GO SLOW ELEVATORS" operation. The following are references:

1. Emergency Service:
  - a. Earthquake emergency operation Section 304(d)
  - b. Title 8, Industrial Relations, Division 01
  - c. Department of Industrial Relations, Chapter 4
  - d. Division of Industrial Safety and Sub Chapter 6, Elevator Safety Order

## **2.18 ELEVATOR MACHINE BEAMS**

A. Overhead beams shall meet the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 2.9 to support machines and machinery in place to prevent any part from becoming loose or displaced under the conditions imposed in service.

Machine beams shall be designed as follows:

1. The load resting on the beams and supports shall include the complete weight of the machine, sheaves, controller, governor, and any other equipment, together with the portion of the machine room floor supported by the beams.
2. Two times the sum of the tensions in all wire ropes supported by the beams with rated load in the car.

## **2.19 GEARLESS AND GEARED TRACTION MACHINE**

A. Gearless Traction Hoist Machine:

1. Gearless traction machine with an AC motor, brake, drive sheave, and deflector sheave mounted in proper alignment on an isolated bedplate.
2. Provide hoist machine mounted direct drive, digital, closed-loop velocity encoder.
3. Armature must be electrically balanced and together with motor coupling and brake, mechanically balanced.
4. The structural design of the motor shall ensure perfect alignment of bearings. The rotating elements shall be dynamically balanced to minimize vibration.
5. Hoist machine shaft shall be supported by two bearings mounted on a bedplate or integral with machine frame. Shaft shall be of forged steel or close grain electric furnace cast steel.
6. Drive sheaves shall be free from cracks, sand holes, and other imperfections that would tend to injure the hoist ropes. Sheave shall be turned smooth and true with rope grooves of proper design

to ensure maximum traction and maximum life of the hoist ropes. Traction sheave shall be mechanically coupled to the hoist motor shaft centered in a positive manner.

7. Hoisting machine brake shall be drum or disc type and shall have the capacity to hold the elevator with 125 percent of rated load. Arrange brake circuits so that no current shall be applied to the brake coil prior to the establishment of the hoistway door interlock circuit, except during leveling, re-leveling, and hoistway access operation.

## **2.20 SHEAVES**

- A. Provide deflector sheaves with a metal basket type guard mounted below the sheave and a guard to prevent ropes from jumping out of grooves. Securely fasten guard to sheave beams.
- B. Two-to-one idler sheaves on car and counterweight, if used, shall be provided with metal guards that shall prevent foreign objects from falling between ropes and sheave grooves and accidental contact or injury to workers on top of the car. Fabricate sheave guards from not less than 10-gauge thick steel and install with minimum clearance between guard and cables to prevent ropes from jumping out of grooves.

## **2.21 HOIST ROPES**

- A. Provide elevator with the required number and size of ropes to ensure adequate traction for the range of loads with a factor of safety not less than that required by ASME A17.1 Section 2.20. Hoisting ropes shall be preformed 8 x 19 or 8 x 25 traction steel, conforming to Federal Specification RR-W-410 with minimum nominal diameter of 0.50 inch. For machines located overhead, 6 x 19 preformed traction steel hoisting ropes may be used in lieu of 8 x 19 that meet the requirements of the sheave manufacturer, at the elevator contractor's option.
- B. Securely attach a corrosion resistant metal data tag to one hoisting rope fastening on top of the elevator.
- C. Provide wedge type shackles.

## **2.22 HOIST ROPE COMPENSATION**

- A. Provide compensation when required by controller manufacturer for elevators with travel of 15.15 m (50ft) or more. Compensation shall consist of a necessary number and size of encapsulated chains or whisper flex attached to the underside of car and counterweight frames. Hoist rope compensation shall meet the requirements of ASME A17.1 Rule 2.21.4.

1. Provide pit guide to minimize chain sway.
  2. Provide take-up to compensate for hoist rope stretch.
  3. Pad areas where compensation may strike car or hoistway items.
- B. Compensation shall consist of a necessary number and size of iron or steel wire ropes attached to the underside of car and counterweight frames, passing under a weighted idler sheave in pit. A metal tag giving the number, diameter, type, month and year installed, and the name of manufacturer of compensating ropes shall be securely attached to one of the compensating rope fastenings.
1. Provide means for equalizing tension in the compensating ropes.
  2. Provide idler sheave with ball or roller bearings. Mount sheave on steel guide rails.
  3. Provide a metal guard over compensating sheave.
  4. Provide a sheave contact in accordance with ASME A17.1 Rule 2.26.2.3.
  5. Provide take-up to compensate for future cable stretch.

#### **2.23 GOVERNOR ROPE**

- A. Governor Rope shall be 6 x 19 or 8 x 19 wire rope, preformed traction steel, uncoated, fiber core, conforming to Federal Specification RR-W-410 with minimum nominal diameter of 0.375 inch having a minimum safety factor of 5. Tiller rope construction is not acceptable.
- B. Under normal operation rope shall run free and clear of governor jaws, rope guards, and other stationary parts.
- C. Securely attach governor rope tag to governor rope releasing carrier. Data tag shall be corrosion-resisting metal and bear data as required by ASME A17.1 Section 2.18.

#### **2.24 SPEED GOVERNOR**

- A. Provide Centrifugal type car driven governor, in accordance with ASME A17.1 Section 2.18, to operate the car safety device Governor shall be complete with weighted pit tension sheave, governor release carrier and mounting base with protected cable sleeves.
- B. Furnish overspeed switch and speed reducing switches when required.
- C. The governor rope clamping device shall be designed so that no appreciable damage to or deformation of the governor rope shall result from the stopping action of the device in operating the safety.
- D. Provide anti-friction metal bearings for the governor and pit tension sheaves. Bearing shall be either self-oiling or Zerk fitting type

connections. Ball or roller bearings may be used in lieu of sleeve type.

- E. Provide metal guard over top of governor rope and sheaves.
- F. Governor, with the exception of finished surfaces, screw threads, etc., shall be factory painted and shall operate freely. Field painting of governor parts shall be permitted in accordance with ASME A17.1 Rule 2.18.3.1.
- G. Where the elevator travel does not exceed 100 feet, the weight tension sheave may be mounted on a pivoted steel arm in lieu of operating in steel guides.

#### **2.25 CAR SAFETY DEVICE**

- A. Provide "Type B Safeties" on the elevator that meet the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 2.17.
- B. Field testing of car safety and governor shall be as specified in Section 3.7 PRETEST and TEST of this specification.

#### **2.26 ASCENDING CAR OVERSPEED PROTECTION**

- A. Provide a device to prevent ascending over speed and unintended motion away from the landing when the doors are not locked in accordance with ASME A17.1 Section 2.19.

#### **2.27 CAR AND COUNTERWEIGHT BUFFERS**

- A. Provide a minimum of two buffers for each car and one for each counterweight that meet the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 2.22. Securely fasten buffers and supports to the pit channels and in the alignment with striker plates on car and counterweight. Each installed buffer shall have a permanently attached metal plate indicating its stroke and load rating. Buffer anchorage shall not puncture pit waterproofing.
- B. Design and install buffers to provide minimum car runby required by ASME A17.1 Rule 2.4.2.
- C. Furnish pipe stanchions and struts as required to properly support the buffer.

#### **2.28 COUNTERWEIGHTS**

- A. Elevator shall be counterweighted with the weight of the car plus 40-50 percent of the rated capacity load as required by the controller manufacturer.
- B. Furnish two (2) tie rods with cotter pins and double nuts at top and bottom. Install counterweight retainer plates or other approved means

on tie rods to prevent counterweight sub-weights from jumping and/or rattling. Both ends of tie-rods shall be visible and accessible.

- C. Provide counterweight guards in the pit in accordance with ASME A17.1 Section 2.3.

## **2.29 CAR AND COUNTERWEIGHT ROLLER/SLIDE GUIDES**

- A. Provide car and counterweight with adjustable roller guides.
- B. Each guide shall be of an approved type consisting of not less than three (3) wheels, each with a durable, resilient oil-resistant material tire rotating on ball bearings having sealed-in lubrication. Assemble rollers on a substantial metal base and mount to provide continuous spring pressure contact of all wheels with the corresponding rail surfaces under all conditions of loading and operation. Secure the roller guides at top and bottom on each side of car frame and counterweight frame. All mounting bolts shall be fitted with nuts, flat washers, split lock washers, and if required, beveled washers.
- C. Provide sheet metal guards to protect wheels on top of car and counterweight.
- D. Minimum diameter of car rollers shall be 150 mm (6 in.) unless the six wheel roller type is used. The entire elevator car shall be properly balanced to equalize pressure on all guide rollers. Cars shall be balanced in post-wise and front-to-back directions. Test for this balanced condition shall be witnessed at time of final inspection.
- E. Minimum diameter of counterweight rollers shall not be less manufacturers recommendation as scheduled in Division 9. Properly balance counterweight frame to equalize pressure on all guide rollers. The Contractor shall have the option of furnishing, for counterweight only, mechanically adjusted roller guide in lieu of spring loaded roller guides as specified.
- F. Equip all cars and counterweight with an auxiliary guiding device for each guide shoe which shall prevent the car or counterweight from leaving the rails in the event that the normal guides are fractured. These auxiliary guides shall not, during normal operation, touch the guiding surfaces of the rails. Fabricate the auxiliary guides from hot rolled steel plate and mount between the normal guide shoes and the car and counterweight frames. The auxiliary guides may be an extension of the normal guide shoe mounting plate if that plate is fabricated from hot rolled steel. The portion of the auxiliary guide which shall come in contact with the rail guiding surfaces in the event of loss of the

normal guides shall be lined with an approved bearing material to minimize damage to the rail guiding surfaces.

## **2.30 GUIDE RAILS, SUPPORTS AND FASTENINGS**

- A. Guide rails shall conform to ASME A17.1 Section 2.23.
- B. Guide rails for car shall be designed by elevator manufacturer. Guide rails for counterweight shall be designed by elevator manufacturer.
- C. Securely fasten guide rails to the brackets or other supports by heavy duty steel rail clips.
- D. Provide necessary car and counterweight rail brackets and counterweight spreader brackets of sufficient size and design to secure substantial rigidity to prevent spreading or distortion of rails under any condition.
  - 1. Slotted or oversized holes shall be fitted with flat washers and shall conform to ASME A17.1 Rule 2.23.10.3.
  - 2. Where fastenings are over 4.2 m (14 ft) apart, rails shall be reinforced with 228 mm (9 in.) channel or approved equal backing to secure the rigidity required.
- E. Rail joints and fishplates shall be in accordance with ASME A17.1 Rule 2.23.7. Rail joints shall not interfere with clamps and brackets. Design rail alignment shims to remain in place if fastenings become loose.
- F. Guide rails shall extend from channels on pit floor to within 76 mm (3 in.) of the underside of the concrete slab or grating at top of hoistway with a maximum deviation of 3.2 mm (1/8 in.) from plumb in all directions. Provide a minimum of 19 mm (3/4 in.) clearance between bottom of rails and top of pit channels.
- G. Guide rail anchorages in pit shall be made in a manner that will not reduce effectiveness of the pit waterproofing.
- H. In the event inserts or bond blocks are required for the attachment of guide rails, the Contractor shall furnish such inserts or bond blocks and shall install them in the forms before the concrete is poured. Use inserts or bond blocks only in concrete or block work where steel framing is not available for support of guide rails. Expansion-type bolting for guide rail brackets will not be permitted.
- I. Guide rails shall be clean and free of any signs of rust, grease, or abrasion before final inspection. Paint the shank and base of the T-section with two field coats of manufacturer's standard enamel.

- J. After completion of car safety testing during final inspection, all marks left on rails by application of car safety shall be filed smooth.

### **2.31 NORMAL AND FINAL TERMINAL STOPPING DEVICES**

- A. Normal and final terminal stopping devices shall conform to ASME A17.1 Section 2.25.
- B. Mount terminal slowdown switches and direction limit switches on the elevator or in hoistway to reduce speed and bring car to an automatic stop at the terminal landings.
1. Switches shall function with any load up to and including 125 percent of rated elevator capacity at any speed obtained in normal operation.
  2. Switches, when opened, shall permit operation of elevator in reverse direction of travel.
- C. Mount final terminal stopping switches in the hoistway.
1. Switches shall be positively opened should the car travel beyond the terminal direction limit switches.
  2. Switches shall be independent of other stopping devices.
  3. Switches, when opened, shall remove power from hoist motor, apply hoist machine brake, and prevent operation of car in either direction.
- D. After final stopping switches have been adjusted, through bolt switches to guide rail.

### **2.32 CROSSHEAD DATA PLATE AND CODE DATA PLATE**

- A. Permanently attach a non-corrosive metal Data Plate to car crosshead. Data plate shall bear information required by ASME A17.1 Section 2.16.3 and 2.20.2.1.
- B. Permanently attach a Code Data Plate, in plain view, to the controller, ASME A17.1 Section 8.9.

### **2.33 WORKMAN'S LIGHTS AND OUTLETS**

- A. Provide duplex GFCI protected type receptacles and lamps with guards on top of each elevator car and beneath the platform. The receptacles shall be in accordance with Fed. Spec. W-C-596 for Type D7, 2-pole, 3-wire grounded type, rated for 15 amperes and 125 volts.

### **2.34 TOP-OF-THE CAR OPERATING DEVICE**

- A. Provide a cartop operating device that meets the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 2.26.



- B. The device shall be activated by a toggle switch mounted in the device. The switch shall be clearly marked "INSPECTION" and "NORMAL" on the faceplate, with 6 mm (1/4 in.) letters.
- C. Movement of the elevator shall be accomplished by the continuous pressure on a direction button and a safety button.
- D. Provide an emergency stop toggle type switch.
- E. Provide permanent identification for the operation of all components in the device.
- F. The device shall be permanently attached to the elevator crosshead on the side of the elevator nearest to the hoistway doors used for accessing the top of the car.

#### **2.35 CAR LEVELING DEVICE**

- A. Car shall be equipped with a two-way leveling device to automatically bring the car to within 3 mm (1/8 in.) of exact level with the landing for which a stop is initiated regardless of load in car or direction.
- B. If the car stops short or travels beyond the floor, the leveling device, within its zone shall automatically correct this condition and maintain the car within 3 mm (1/8 in.) of level with the floor landing regardless of the load carried.
- C. Provide encoded steel tape, steel tape with magnets or steel vanes with magnetic switches. Submit design for approval.

#### **2.36 EMERGENCY STOP SWITCHES**

- A. Provide an emergency stop switch for each top-of-car device, pit, machine spaces, service panel and firefighters' control panel inside the elevator. Mount stop switches in the pit adjacent to pit access door, at top of the pit ladder 1220 mm (48 in.) above the bottom landing sill and 1220 mm (48 in.) above the pit floor adjacent to the pit ladder.
- B. Each stop switch shall be red in color and shall have "STOP" and "RUN" positions legibly and indelibly identified.

#### **2.37 MAIN CAR OPERATING PANEL**

- A. Locate the main car operating panel in the car enclosure on the front return panel for passenger/service elevators and the front of the side wall for freight elevators. The top floor car call push button shall not be more than 1220 mm (48 in.) above the finished floor. Car call push buttons and indicator lights shall be round with a minimum diameter of 25 mm (1 in.), LED white light illuminated.

- B. One piece front faceplate, with edges beveled 15 degrees, shall have the firefighters' service panel recessed into the upper section and the service operation panel recessed into the lower section, fitted with hinged doors. Doors shall have concealed hinges, be in the same front plane as the faceplate and fitted with cylinder type key operated locks. Secure the faceplate with stainless steel tamperproof screws.
- C. All terminology on the main car operating panel shall be raised or engraved. Use 6 mm (1/4 in.) letters to identify all devices in upper section of the main car operating panel. The handicapped markings with contrasting background shall be recessed .030 inch in the faceplate, square or rectangular in shape, with the finished face of the 12 mm (1/2 in.) numerals and markings flush with the faceplates. Surface mounted plates are not acceptable.
- D. The upper section shall contain the following items in order listed from top to bottom:
  - 1. Engrave elevator number, 25 mm (1 in.) high with black paint for contrast.
  - 2. Engrave capacity plate information with black paint for contrast with freight loading class and number of passengers allowed.
  - 3. Emergency car lighting system consisting of a rechargeable battery, charger, controls, and LED illuminated light fixture. The system shall automatically provide emergency light in the car upon failure or interruption of the normal car lighting service, and function irrespective of the position of the light control switch in the car. The system shall be capable of maintaining a minimum illumination of 1.0 foot-candle when measured 1220 mm (48 in.) above the car floor and approximately 305 mm (12 in.) in front of the car operating panel, for not less than four (4) hours.
  - 4. LED illuminated digital car position indicator with direction arrows. Digital display floor numbers and direction arrows shall be a minimum of 50mm (2 in.) high.
  - 5. Firefighters' Emergency Operation Panel shall conform to the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 2.27. Firefighters' Panel shall be 1676 mm (66 in.) minimum to 1830 mm (72 in.) maximum to the top of the panel above finished floor.
  - 6. Firefighters' Emergency Indicator Light shall be round with a minimum diameter of 25 mm (1 in.).

7. Medical Emergency switch marked "MEDICAL EMERGENCY" with two positions labeled "ON" and "OFF" and Medical Emergency Indicator Light located next to the key switch shall be round with a minimum diameter of 25 mm (1 in.). Instruction for Medical Emergency operation shall be engraved below the key switch and light.
8. Key operated Independent Service; see Section 2.39 for detailed description.
9. Provide a Door Hold button on the faceplate next to the independent service key switch. It shall have "DOOR HOLD" indelibly marked on the button. Button shall light when activated. When activated, the door shall stay open for a maximum of one minute. To override door hold timer, push a car call button or door close button. Door Hold button is not ADA required and Braille is not needed.
10. Complete set of round car call push buttons, minimum diameter of 25 mm (1 in.), and LED white light illuminated, corresponding to the floors served. Car call buttons shall be legibly and indelibly identified by a floor number and/or letter not less than 12mm (1/2 in.) high in the face of the call button. Stack buttons in a single vertical column for low rise buildings up to six floors with front openings only.
11. Door Open and Door Close buttons shall be located below the car call buttons. They shall have "OPEN" and "CLOSE" legibly and indelibly identified by letters in the face of the respective button. The Door Open button shall be located closest to the door jamb as required by ADA.
12. Red Emergency Alarm button that shall be located below the car operating buttons. Mount the emergency alarm button not lower than 890 mm (35 in.) above the finished floor. It shall be connected to audible signaling devices as required by A17.1 Rule 2.27.1.2. Provide audible signaling devices including the necessary wiring.
13. Emergency Help push button shall activate two way communications by Auto Dial telephone system as required by ASME A17.1 Rule 2.27.1.1.3. Help button shall be LED white light illuminated and flash when call is acknowledged. Legibly and indelibly label the button "HELP" in the face of the button with 12 mm (1/2 in.) high letters.
14. Provide a corresponding Braille plate on the left side of each button. The handicapped markings with contrasting background shall

be recessed .030 inch in the faceplate, square or rectangular in shape, with the finished face of the 12 mm (1/2 in.) numerals and markings flush with the faceplates. Surface mounted plates are not acceptable.

- E. The service operation panel, in the lower section shall contain the following items:
1. Light switch labeled "LIGHTS" for controlling interior car lighting with its two positions marked "ON" and "OFF".
  2. Inspection switch that will disconnect normal operation and activate hoistway access switches at terminal landings. Switch shall be labeled "INSPECTION" with its two positions marked "ON" and "OFF".
  3. Three position switch labeled "FAN" with its positions marked "HIGH", "LOW" and "OFF" for controlling car ventilating blower.
  4. Two position, spring return, toggle switch or push button to test the emergency light and alarm device. It shall be labeled "TEST EMERGENCY LIGHT AND ALARM".
  5. Two position emergency stop switch, when operated, shall interrupt power supply and stop the elevator independently of regular operating devices. Emergency stop switch shall be marked "PULL TO STOP" and "PUSH TO RUN".

## **2.38 AUXILIARY CAR OPERATING PANEL**

- A. Provide an auxiliary car operating panel in the side wall of the elevator between the handrails immediately adjacent to the front entrance column strike jamb. The auxiliary car operating panel shall contain only those controls essential to passenger (public) operation. The auxiliary car operating panel faceplate shall match the main car operating panel faceplate in material and general design. Secure the faceplate with stainless steel tamperproof screws.
1. Mount door "OPEN" and door "CLOSE" buttons closest to the door jamb and mount the alarm button no lower than 875 mm (35 in.) above the finished floor. The Door Open button shall be located closest to the door as required by ADA.
  2. Complete set of round car call push buttons, minimum diameter 25 mm (1 in.), and LED white light illuminated, corresponding to the floors served. Car call button shall be legibly and indelibly identified by a floor number and/or letter not less than 12 mm (1/2 in.) high in the face of the call button corresponding to the numbers of the main car operating buttons. Install buttons in a

vertical stack on front mounted panel up to six floors and horizontally for side mounted panel.

3. Cross-connect all buttons in the auxiliary car operating panels to their corresponding buttons in the main car operating panel.

Registration of a car call shall cause the corresponding button to illuminate in the main and auxiliary car operating panel.

4. Emergency Help push button shall activate two way communications by Auto Dial telephone system as required by ASME A17.1 Rule

2.27.1.1.3. Help button shall be LED white light illuminated and flash when call is acknowledged. Legibly and indelibly label the button "HELP" in the face of the button with 12 mm (1/2 in.) high letters. Install emergency telephone system in the auxiliary car operating panel.

5. Provide a corresponding Braille plate on the left side of each button. The handicapped markings with contrasting background shall be recessed .030 inch in the faceplate, square or rectangular in shape, with the finished face of the 12 mm (1/2 in.) numerals and markings flush with the faceplates. Surface mounted plates are not acceptable.

#### **2.39 INDEPENDENT SERVICE**

- A. Provide a legibly and indelibly labeled "INDEPENDENT SERVICE", two-position key operated switch on the face of the main car operating panel that shall have its positions marked "ON" and "OFF". When the switch is in the "ON" position, the car shall respond only to calls registered on its car dispatch buttons and shall bypass all calls registered on landing push buttons. The car shall start when a car call is registered, car call button or door close button is pressed, car and hoistway doors are closed, and interlock circuits are made. When switch is returned to "OFF" position, normal service shall be resumed.

#### **2.40 CAR POSITION INDICATOR**

- A. Provide an alpha-numeric digital car position indicator in the main car operating panel, consisting of numerals and arrows not less than 50 mm (2 in.) high, to indicate position of car and direction of car travel. Locate position indicator at the top of the main car operating panel, illuminated by light emitting diodes.

#### **2.41 AUDIO VOICE SYSTEM**

- A. Provide digitized audio voice system activated by stopping at a floor. Audio voice shall announce floor designations, direction of travel, and

special announcements. The voice announcement system shall be a natural sounding human voice that receives messages and shall comply with ADA requirements for audible car position indicators. The voice announcer shall have two separate volume controls, one for the floor designations and direction of travel, and another for special announcements. The voice announcer shall have a full range loud speaker, located on top of the cab. The audio voice unit shall contain the number of ports necessary to accommodate the number of floors, direction messages, and special announcements. Install voice announcer per manufacturer's recommendations and instructions. The voice system shall be the product of a manufacturer of established reputation. Provide manufacturer literature and list of voice messages.

1. Fire Service Message
2. Medical Emergency Service Message
3. "Please do not block doors"
4. Provide special messages as directed by Resident Engineer.

#### **2.42 AUTO DIAL TELEPHONE SYSTEM**

- A. Furnish and install a complete ADA compliant intercommunication system.
- B. Provide a two-way communication device in the car with automatic dialing, tracking and recall features with shielded wiring to car controller in machine room. Provide dialer with automatic rollover capability with minimum two numbers.
- C. "HELP" button shall illuminate and flash when call is acknowledged. Button shall match floor push button design.
- D. Provide "HELP" button tactile symbol engraved signage and Braille adjacent to button mounted integral with car operating panels.
- E. The auto dial system shall be located in the auxiliary car operating panel. The speaker and unit shall be mounted on the backside of the perforated stainless steel plate cover.
- F. Each elevator shall have individual phone numbers.
- G. If the operator ends the call, the phone shall be able to redial immediately.

#### **2.43 CORRIDOR OPERATING DEVICE FACEPLATES**

- A. Fabricate faceplates for elevator operating and signal devices from not less than 3 mm (1/8 in.) thick flat stainless steel with all edges beveled 15 degrees. Install all faceplates flush with surface on which they are mounted.

- B. Corridor push button faceplates shall be at least 127 mm (5 in.) wide by 305 mm (12 in.) high. The centerline of the landing push buttons shall be 1067 mm (42 in.) above the corridor floor.
- C. Elevator Corridor Call Station Pictograph shall be engraved in the faceplate.
- D. Fasten all car and corridor operating device and signal device faceplates with stainless steel tamperproof screws.
- E. Design corridor push button faceplates so that pressure on push buttons shall be independent of pressure on push button contacts.
- F. Engraved legends in faceplates shall have lettering 6 mm (1/4 in.) high filled with black paint.
- G. Provide a corresponding Braille plate on the left side of each button. The handicapped markings with contrasting background shall be recessed .030 inch in the faceplate, square or rectangular in shape, with the finished face of the 12 mm (1/2 in.) numerals and markings flush with the faceplates. Surface mounted plates are not acceptable.

#### **2.44A CORRIDOR OPERATING DEVICES FOR PASSENGER ELEVATORS**

- A. Provide one risers of landing call buttons located as shown on contract drawings.
- B. Fixtures for intermediate landings shall contain "UP" and "DOWN" buttons. Fixtures for terminal landings shall contain a single "UP" or "DOWN" button.
- C. Each button shall contain an integral registration LED white light which shall illuminate upon registration of a call and shall extinguish when that call is answered.
- D. The direction of each button shall be legibly and indelibly identified by arrows not less than 12 mm (1/2 in.) high in the face of each button.
- E. Two or more risers of landing call buttons, if specified, shall be cross-connected so that either "UP" or "DOWN" buttons at a floor shall be capable of registering a call to that floor for the entire elevator group. Registration of a landing call shall illuminate "UP" or "DOWN" buttons simultaneously, and upon satisfaction of that call, both buttons shall be extinguished simultaneously.
- F. Landing push buttons shall not re-open the doors while the car and hoistway doors are closing at that floor, the call shall be registered for the next available elevator. Calls registered shall be canceled if

closing doors are re-opened by means of "DOOR OPEN" button or infrared curtain unit.

#### **2.45 DIGITAL CORRIDOR LANTERN/POSITION INDICATOR**

- A. Provide each car with combination corridor lantern/position indicator digital display mounted over the hoistway entrances at each and every floor. Provide each terminal landing with "UP" or "DOWN", minimum 64 mm (2 1/2 in.) high digital arrow lanterns and each intermediate landing with "UP" and "DOWN" digital arrow lanterns. Each lens shall be LED illuminated of proper intensity, so shielded to illuminate individual lens only. The lenses in each lantern shall be illuminated green to indicate "UP" travel and red to indicate "DOWN" travel. Lanterns shall signal in advance of car arrival at the landing indicating the direction of travel whether or not corridor button has been operated at that floor. Hall calls shall receive immediate assignment to individual cars and hall lantern shall sound and illuminate. Corridor lanterns shall not be illuminated when a car passes a floor without stopping. Each lantern shall be equipped with a clearly audible electronic chime which shall sound once for "UPWARD" bound car and twice for "DOWNWARD" bound car. Audible signal shall not sound when a car passes the floor without stopping. Provide adjustable sound level on audible signal. Car riding lanterns are not acceptable.
- B. Provide alpha-numeric digital position indicators directly over hoistway landing entranceways between the arrival lanterns at each and every floor. Indicator faceplate shall be stainless steel. Numerals shall be not less than 50 mm (2 in.) high with direction arrows. Cover plates shall be readily removable for re-lamping. The appropriate direction arrow shall be illuminated during entire travel of car in corresponding direction.
- C. Provide LED illumination in each compartment to indicate the position and direction the car is traveling by illuminating the proper alpha-numeric symbol. When the car is standing at a landing without direction established, arrows shall not be illuminated.

#### **2.46 HOISTWAY ACCESS SWITCHES**

- A. Provide hoistway access switches for elevator at top terminal landing to permit access to top of car, and at bottom terminal landing to permit access to pit. Elevators with side slide doors, mount the access key switch 1830 mm (6 ft) above the corridor floor in the wall next to the strike jamb. Exposed portion of each access switch or its faceplate



shall have legible, indelible legends to indicate "UP", "DOWN", and "OFF" positions. Submit design and location of access switches for approval. Each access switch shall be a constant pressure cylinder type lock having not less than five pins or five stainless steel disc combination with key removable only when switch is in the "OFF" position. Lock shall not be operable by any other key which will operate any other lock or device used for any other purpose at the VA Medical Center. Arrange the hoistway switch to initiate and maintain movement of the car. When the elevator is operated in the down direction from the top terminal landing, limit the zone of travel to a distance not greater than the top of the car crosshead level with the top floor.

- B. Provide emergency access for all hoistway entrances, keyways for passenger and service elevators and locked door release system (key access) for freight elevators.

#### **2.47 HOISTWAY ENTRANCES: PASSENGER ELEVATORS**

- A. Provide entrances of metal construction using cold rolled steel. Door frames shall be constructed of stainless steel. Complete entrances with sills, hanger supports, hangers, tracks, angle struts, unit frames, door panels, fascia plates, toe guards, hardware, bumpers, sight guards, and wall anchors.
- B. Provide one piece extruded stainless steelsills with non-slip wearing surface, grooved for door guides and recessed for fascia plates. Sills shall have overall height of not less than 19 mm (3/4 in.), set true, straight, and level, with hoistway edges plumb over each other, and top surfaces flush with finished floor. Grout sills full length after installation.
- C. Construct hanger supports of not less than 4.5 mm (3/16 in.) thick steel plate, and bolted to strut angles.
- D. Structural steel angles // 76 mm x 76 mm x 9 mm (3 in. x 3 in. x 3/8 in.) // 127 mm x 127 mm x 13 mm (5 in. x 5 in. x 1/2 in.) // shall extend from top of sill to bottom of floor beam above, and shall be securely fastened at maximum 457 mm (18 in.) on center and at each end with two bolts.
- E. Provide jambs and head soffits, of not less than 14-gauge stainless steel, for entrances. Jambs and head soffits shall be bolted or welded construction, and provided with three anchors each side. Side jambs shall be curved type. Radius of curvature shall be 89 mm (3 1/2 in.).

Head jamb shall be square type, and shall overhang corridor face of side jambs by 6 mm (1/4 in.). Rigidly fasten jambs and head soffits to building structure. Provide jambs with protective covering. After installation, protect jambs and head soffits with wood framing to prevent damage to finish during construction. Solidly grout jambs.

- F. Provide 14-gauge sheet steel fascia plates in hoistway to extend vertically from head of hanger support housing to sill above. Plates shall be the same width as the door opening of elevator and adequately reinforced to prevent waves and buckles. Below bottom terminal landing and over upper terminal landing provide shear guards beveled back to and fastened to the wall.
- G. Provide hoistway entrance with flush two speed side slide hoistway doors for Elevators   A&B   // S        //. Door panels shall be not less than 16-gauge stainless steel, flush type construction, and not less than 32 mm (1 1/4 in.) thick. Wrap stainless steel around the leading and trailing edges of the door panel. Top and bottom of door panels shall have continuous stiffener channels welded in place. Reinforcement of the door panels shall be approximately 1.0 mm (0.04 in.) in thickness and of the hat section type. At bottom of each and every panel, provide two removable laminated phenolic gibs or other approved material guides and a separate fire gib. Reinforce each door panel for hangers, interlock mechanism, drive assembly, and closer. One door panel for each entrance shall bear a BOCA label, Underwriters' label, or in lieu of this, labels from other accredited test laboratories may be furnished provided they are based on fire test reports and factory inspection procedures acceptable to the COTR. Fasten sight guard of 14-gauge stainless steel, extending full height of panel, to leading edge of fast speed panel of two-speed doors
- H. Provide hangers for hoistway door panels and provide relating devices to transmit motion from one door panel to the other. Fasten the hangers to the door sections. Provide reinforcements at the point of attachment. The hanger shall have provisions for vertical and lateral adjustments. Hang doors on two-point suspension hangers having sealed ball-bearing sheaves not less than 76 mm (3 in.) in diameter, with rubber or non-metallic sound-reducing tires mounted on a malleable iron or steel bracket. The hanger sheaves shall operate at a relatively low rotational speed, and shall roll on a high-carbon, cold-rolled or drawn steel track shaped to permit free movement of sheaves without regard to

vertical adjustment of sheave, bracket or housing. Beneath the track and each hanger sheave, provide a hardened steel up-thrust roller capable of withstanding a vertical thrust equal to the carrying capacity of adjacent upper sheave. The up-thrust shall have fine vertical adjustments, and the face of the roller shaped so as to permit free movement of the hanger sheave. The up-thrust roller shall have ball or roller bearings. Provide the hanger sheaves with steel fire stops to prevent disengagement from tracks.

- I. Do not use hangers that are constructed integrally with the door panels.
- J. Provide raised numerals on cast, rear mounted plates for all openings. Numerals shall be a minimum of 50 mm (2 in.) high, located on each side of entrance frame, with centerline of 1524 mm (5 ft) above the landing sill. The number plates shall contain Braille.
- K. Provide unique car number on every elevator entrance at designated main fire service floor level, minimum 76 mm (3 in.) in height.

#### **2.48 ELECTRIC INTERLOCKS**

- A. Equip each hoistway door with an interlock, functioning as hoistway unit system, to prevent operation of car until all hoistway doors are locked in closed position. Hoistway door interlocks shall not be accepted unless they meet the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 2.12.
- B. Equip car doors with electric contact that prevents operation of car until doors are closed unless car is operating in leveling zone or hoistway access switch is used. Locate door contact to prevent its being tampered with from inside of car. Car door contact shall not be accepted unless it meets the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 2.12.
- C. Wiring installed from the hoistway riser to each door interlock shall be NEC type SF-2 or equivalent.
  - 1. Type SF-2 cable terminations in the interlock housing shall be sleeved with glass braid fillers or equivalent.
- D. Provide devices, either mechanical or electrical, that shall prevent operation of the elevator in event of damaged or defective door equipment that has permitted an independent car or hoistway door panel to remain in the "unclosed" and "unlocked" position.

#### **2.49 CAR FRAME: PASSENGER ELEVATORS**

- A. Car frame shall conform to the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 2.15, constructed of steel plates and structural shapes securely riveted, bolted, or welded together. Iron casting shall not be permitted. The

entire assembly shall be rugged construction, and amply braced to withstand unequal loading of platform. Car frame members shall be constructed to relieve the car enclosure of all strains. Balance car front to back and side to side. Provide balancing weights and frames, properly located, to achieve the required true balance.

#### **2.50 CAR PLATFORM: PASSENGER ELEVATORS**

- A. Construct the car platform to comply with all the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 2.15.5. The platform shall be designed to withstand the forces developed under the loading conditions specified. Provide car entrances with extruded aluminum sill or better with machined or extruded guide grooves. Cover underside and all exposed edges of wood filled platform with sheet metal of not less than 27-gauge, with all exposed joints and edges folded under. Fire resistant paint is not acceptable. Platform shall have flexible composition flooring not less than 3 mm (1/8 in.) thick. For color, see Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES. Adhesive material shall be type recommended by manufacturer of flooring. Lay flooring flush with threshold plate and base.
- B. Provide a platform guard (toe guard) that meets the requirements of ASME A17.1 Section 2.15.9, of not less than 12-gauge sheet-steel on the entrance side, extend 76 mm (3 in.) beyond each side of entrance jamb. Securely brace platform guard to car platform, and bevel bottom edge at a 60-75 degree angle from horizontal. Install platform in the hoistway, so that the clearance between front edge and landing threshold shall not exceed 32 mm (1 1/4 in.).
- C. Isolate the platform from the car frame by approved rubber pads or other equally effective means.
- D. Provide adjustable diagonal brace rods to hold platform firmly within car suspension frame.
- E. Provide a bonding wire between frame and platform.

#### **2.51 CAR ENCLOSURE: PASSENGER ELEVATORS**

- A. Car enclosure shall have a dome height inside the cab of 2440 mm (8 ft).
- B. Securely fasten car enclosure to platform by through bolts located at intervals of not more than 457 mm (18 in.) running through an angle at the base of panels to underside of platform. Provide 6 mm (1/4 in.) bolts with nuts and lock washers.

- C. Car enclosure base shall be of 14-gauge stainless steel, 152 mm (6 in.) high. Provide straight type base at front return sides. Vertical face of base at sides and rear shall be flush with or recessed behind the wainscot directly above the base. There shall be no exposed fastenings in base. Provide natural ventilation openings divided equally between the bottom and top of the car enclosure that shall provide a minimum 3.5 percent of the inside car floor area.
- D. Construct canopy of not less than 12-gauge steel.
- E. Car top railings that meet the requirement of ASME A17.1 Rules 2.14.1.7 and 2.10.2.
- F. Front return wall panel, entrance columns, rear corner columns, entrance head-jamb and transom shall be 14-gauge stainless steel full height of car. Side and rear walls from top of base to top of panel shall be constructed of 14-gauge cold rolled steel. Side and rear walls up to 1220 mm (48 in.) above finished floor shall be covered with stainless steel. Side and rear walls from 1220 (48 in.) to the ceiling shall be covered with stainless steel. Apply directly to the cab walls or to 13 mm (1/2 in.) plywood/particle board that meets requirements of ASTM E 84, UL 723, and CAN/ULC-S102.2, whichever is applicable., Interior shall be flush panel construction with angles welded on exterior to ensure adequate rigidity. Coat exterior of panels with mastic sound insulation material approximately 2.5 mm (3/32 in.) thick followed by a prime coat of paint. Mastic material shall conform to ASTM E1042.
- G. Provide a hinged top emergency exit cover. Exit shall be unobstructed when open and shall have mechanical stops on the cover. Provide a code approved exit switch to prevent operation of the elevator when the emergency exit is open.
- H. Provide duplex, GFCI protected type receptacle in car. Locate flush-mounted receptacle on the centerline of the main car operating panel, 150 mm (6 in.) above the car floor.
- I. Lighting for passenger elevators:
  - 1. Provide stainless steel hanging ceiling frame. Construct frame of 1/8 in. x 1 1/2 in. x 1 1/2 in. "T" and "L" sections, divide ceiling into six panels.
  - 2. Provide fluorescent or LED illuminated car light fixtures above the ceiling panels. See Specification 265100, Interior Lighting for

fixture and ballast type. Maintain a minimum light level of 50-foot candles at 914 mm (36 in.) above the finished floor.

- K. Provide a blower unit arranged to exhaust through an opening in the canopy. Provide a stainless or chrome plated fan grill around the opening. Provide 2-speed fan, capable of rated free delivery air displacement of approximately 380 and 700 cfm at respective speeds. Mount fan on top of car with rubber isolation to prevent transmission of vibration to car structure. Provide screening over intake and exhaust end of blower. Provide a 3-position switch to control the unit in the service panel.
- L. Provide car enclosure with two sets of stainless steel handrails.
1. 75 mm (3 in.) wide x 9 mm (3/8 in.) thick flatstock located with centerlines 750 mm and 1050 mm (30 in. and 42 in.) above the car floor.
  2. Locate handrails 38 mm (1 1/2 in.) from cab wall. Install handrails on two side and rear walls. Curve ends of handrails to walls. Conceal all handrail fastenings. Handrails shall be removable from inside the car enclosure.
- M. Provide car entrance with single speed side opening horizontal sliding car doors, of same type as hoistway doors for Elevators // P\_\_A&B\_\_. Construct door panels to be flush hollow metal construction, not less than 32 mm (1 1/4 in.) thick, consisting of one continuous piece 16-gauge stainless steel on car side face wrapped around the leading and trailing edges. Separate two plates by a sound-deadening material, and reinforce by steel shapes welded to the plates at frequent intervals. Reinforce panels as required for installation of hangers, power-operating and door-opening devices. Hang doors on two-point suspension hangers having sealed ball-bearing sheaves not less than 76 mm (3 in.) in diameter, with rubber or non-metallic sound-reducing tires. Equip hangers with adjustable ball-bearing rollers to take upward thrust of panels. Upthrust rollers shall be capable of being locked in position after adjustment to a maximum of .38 mm (1/64 in.) clearance. Provide two laminated phenolic gibs on each door panel. Gibs shall be replaceable without removal of door panel. Provide door drive assembly, restrictor, gate switch, header, track, arms, and all related door hardware.

**2.52 POWER DOOR OPERATORS: PASSENGER ELEVATORS**

- A. Provide a high-speed heavy duty door operator to automatically open the car and hoistway doors simultaneously when the car is level with the floor, and automatically close the doors simultaneously at the expiration of the door-open time. Provide solid-state door control with closed loop circuitry to constantly monitor and automatically adjust door operation based upon velocity, position, and motor current. Motor shall be of the high-internal resistance type, capable of withstanding high currents resulting from stall without damage to the motor. The door operator shall be capable of opening a car door and hoistway door simultaneously, at a speed of .762 m (2.5 ft) per second. The closing speed of the doors shall be .3 m (1 ft) per second. A reversal of direction of the doors from the closing to opening operation, whether initiated by obstruction of the infrared curtain or the door "OPEN" button, shall be accomplished within 38 mm (1.5 in.) maximum of door movement. Emphasis is placed on obtaining quiet interlock and door operation; smooth, fast, dynamic braking for door reversals, stopping of the door reversal, and stopping of the doors at extremes of travel. Construct all levers and drive arms operating the doors, of heavy steel members, and all pivot points shall have ball or roller bearings. Auxiliary automatic door closers required under ASME A17.1 Section 2.11.3 shall be as recommended by elevator manufacturer.
- B. Hoistway doors and car gates shall be manually operable in an emergency without disconnecting the power door operating equipment unless the car is outside the unlocking zone.
1. It shall not be possible for the doors to open by power unless the elevator is within the leveling zone.
  2. Provide infrared curtain unit. The device shall cause the car and hoistway doors to reverse automatically to the fully-open position should the unit be actuated while the doors are closing. Unit shall function at all times when the doors are not closed, irrespective of all other operating features. The leading edge of the unit shall have an approved black finish.
- C. Should the doors be prevented from closing for more than a predetermined adjustable interval of 20 to 60 seconds by operation of the curtain unit, the doors shall stay open, the audio voice message and a buzzer located on the car shall sound only on automatic operation. **Do not provide door nudging.**

1. If an obstruction of the doors should not activate the photo-electric door control device and prevent the doors from closing for more than a predetermined adjustable interval of 15 to 30 seconds, the doors shall reverse to the fully open position and remain open until the "Door Close" button re-establishes the closing cycle.
- D. Provide door "OPEN" and "CLOSE" buttons. When the door "OPEN" button is pressed and held, the doors, if in the open position, shall remain open and if the doors are closing, they shall stop, reverse and re-open. Momentary pressure of the door "CLOSE" button shall initiate the closing of the doors prior to the expiration of the normal door open time.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Examine work of other trades on which the work of this Section depends. Report defects to the Resident Engineer in writing that may affect the work of this trade or equipment operation dimensions from site for preparation of shop drawings.
- B. Ensure that shafts and openings for moving equipment are plumb, level and in line, and that pit is to proper depth, waterproofed and drained with necessary access doors, ladder and guard.
- C. Ensure that machine room is properly illuminated, heated and ventilated, and equipment, foundations, beams correctly located complete with floor and access stairs and door.
- D. Before fabrication, take necessary job site measurements, and verify where work is governed by other trades. Check measurement of space for equipment, and means of access for installation and operation. Obtain dimensions from site for preparation of shop drawings.
- E. Ensure the following preparatory work, provided under other sections of the specification has been provided. If the Elevator Contractor requires changes in size or location of trolley beams or their supports and trap doors, etc., to accomplish their work, he must make arrangements, subject to approval of the Contracting officer, and include additional cost in their bid. Where applicable, locate controller near and visible to its respective hoisting machinery. Work required prior to the completion of the elevator installation:
  1. Supply of electric feeder wires to the terminals of the elevator control panel, including circuit breaker.
  2. Provide light and GFCI outlets in the elevator pit and machine room.



3. Furnish electric power for testing and adjusting elevator equipment.
  4. Furnish circuit breaker panel in machine room for car and hoistway lights and receptacles.
  5. Supply power for cab lighting and ventilation from an emergency power panel specified in Division 26, ELECTRICAL.
  6. Machine room enclosed and protected from moisture, with self closing, self locking door and access stairs.
  7. Provide fire extinguisher in machine room.
- F. Supply for installation, inserts, anchors, bearing plates, brackets, supports and bracing including all setting templates and diagrams for placement.

### **3.2 SPACE CONDITIONS**

- A. Attention is called to overhead clearance, pit clearances, overall space in machine room, and construction conditions at building site in connection with elevator work. Addition or revision of space requirements, or construction changes that may be required for the complete installation of the elevators must be arranged for and obtained by the Contractor, subject to approval by Resident Engineer. Include cost of changes in bid that become a part of the contract. Provide proper, code legal installation of equipment, including all construction, accessories and devices in connecting with elevator, mechanical and electrical work specified.
- B. Where concrete beams, floor slabs, or other building construction protrude more than 50 mm (2 in.) into hoistway, bevel all top surfaces of projections to an angle of at 75 degrees with the horizontal.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Perform work with competent Certified Elevator Mechanics and Apprentices skilled in this work and under the direct supervision of the Elevator Contractor's experienced foreman.
- B. Set hoistway entrances in alignment with car openings, and true with plumb sill lines.
- C. Erect hoistway sills, headers and frames prior to erection of rough walls and doors. Erect fascias and toe guards after rough walls are finished.
- D. Install machinery, guides, controls, car and all equipment and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, applicable codes and standards.

- E. Isolate and dampen machine vibration with properly sized sound-reducing anti-vibration pads.
- F. Grout sills and hoistway entrance frames.

### **3.4 ARRANGEMENT OF EQUIPMENT**

- A. Clearance around elevator, mechanical and electrical equipment shall comply with applicable provisions of NEC. Arrange equipment in machine room so that major equipment components can be removed for repair or replacement without dismantling or removing other equipment in the same machine room. Locate controller near and visible to its respective hoisting machine.

### **3.5 WORKMANSHIP AND PROTECTION**

- A. Installations shall be performed by Certified Elevator Mechanics and Apprentices to best possible industry standards. Details of the installation shall be mechanically and electrically correct. Materials and equipment shall be new and without imperfections.
- B. Recesses, cutouts, slots, holes, patching, grouting, refinishing to accommodate installation of equipment shall be included in the Contractor's work. All new holes in concrete shall be core drilled.
- C. Structural members shall not be cut or altered. Work in place that is damaged or defaced shall be restored equal to original new condition.
- D. Finished work shall be straight, plumb, level, and square with smooth surfaces and lines. All machinery and equipment shall be protected against dirt, water, or mechanical injury. At final completion, all work shall be thoroughly cleaned and delivered in perfect unblemished condition.
- E. Beams, slabs, or other building construction protruding more than four inches into the hoistway, all top surfaces shall be beveled at an angle of at least 75 degrees to the horizontal.
- F. Sleeves for conduit and other small holes shall project 50 mm (2 in.) above concrete slabs.
- G. Hoist cables that are exposed to accidental contact in the machine room and pit shall be completely enclosed with 16-gauge sheet metal or expanded metal or guards.
- H. Exposed gears, sprockets, and sheaves shall be guarded from accidental contact in accordance with ASME A17.1 Section 2.10.

### **3.6 CLEANING**

- A. Clean machine room and equipment.
- B. Perform hoistway clean down.

- C. Prior to final acceptance; remove protective coverings from finished or ornamental surfaces. Clean and polish surfaces with regard to type of material.

### **3.7 PAINTING AND FINISHING**

- A. Hoist machine, motor, shall be factory painted with manufacturer's standard finish and color.
- B. Controller, sheave, car frame and platform, counterweight, beams, rails and buffers, except their machined surfaces, cams, brackets and all other uncoated ferrous metal items shall be painted one factory priming coat or approved equal.
- C. Upon completion of installation and prior to final inspection, all equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned of grease, oil, cement, plaster and other debris. All equipment, except that otherwise specified as to architectural finish, shall then be given two coats of paint of approved color, conforming to manufacturer's standard.
- D. Field painting of governors shall be in accordance with ASME A17.1 Rule 2.18.3.1.
- E. Stencil or apply decal floor designations not less than 100 mm (4 in.) high on hoistway doors, fascias or walls within door restrictor areas as required by ASME A17.1 Rule 2.29.2. The color of paint used shall contrast with the color of the surfaces to which it is applied.
- F. Elevator hoisting machine, controller, governor, main line shunt trip circuit breaker, safety plank, and cross head of car shall be identified by 100 mm (4 in.) high numerals and letters located as directed. Numerals shall contrast with surrounding color and shall be stenciled or decaled.
- G. Hoistway Entrances of Passenger, and Service Elevators:
1. Door panels shall be parkerized or given equivalent rust resistant treatment and a factory finish of one coat of baked-on primer and one factory finish coat of baked-on enamel.
  2. Fascia plates, top and bottom shear guards, dust covers, hanger covers, and other metalwork, including built-in or hidden work and structural metal, (except stainless steel entrance frames and surfaces to receive baked enamel finish) shall be given one approved prime coat in the shop, and one field coat of paint of approved color.
- H. Hoistway Entrances of Freight Elevators:
1. Metal surfaces of doors and frames shall receive shop prime coat.

2. Finish painting, after installation, shall be one coat of paint of approved color. For color, see Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.

I. Elevator Cabs for Passenger and Service Elevators:

1. Interior and exterior steel surfaces shall be parkerized or given equivalent rust resistant treatment before finish is applied.
2. Interior steel surfaces shall be factory finished with one coat of baked on enamel or proxylin lacquer. For color, see Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
3. Give exterior faces of car doors one finish coat of paint of medium gray color.

J. Elevator Cabs for Freight Elevators:

1. Give interior of cab one prime coat and a minimum of one coat of enamel. For color, see Section 09 06 00, SCHEDULE FOR FINISHES.
2. Give exterior of cab one prime coat and one finish coat of an approved paint.
3. All surfaces of door frames, door panels, and cab interior surfaces that become damaged or marred shall be restored to original condition before final acceptance of work.

### **3.8 PRE-TESTS AND TESTS**

- A. Pre-test the elevators and related equipment in the presence of the Resident Engineer or his authorized representative for proper operation before requesting final inspection. Conduct final inspection at other than normal working hours, if required by Resident Engineer.

1. Procedure outlined in the Inspectors Manual for Electric Elevators, ASME A17.2 shall apply.
  - a. Final test shall be conducted in the presence of and witnessed by an ASME QEI-1 Certified Elevator Inspector.
  - b. Government shall furnish electric power including necessary current for starting, testing, and operating machinery of each elevator.
2. Contractor shall furnish the following test instruments and materials on-site and at the designated time of inspection: properly marked test weights, voltmeter, amp probe, thermometers, direct reading tachometer, megohm meter, vibration meter, sound meter, light meter, stop watch, and a means of two-way communication.

- B. Inspect workmanship, equipment furnished, and installation for compliance with specification.

- C. Balance Tests: The percent of counterbalance shall be checked by placing test weights in car until the car and counterweight are equal in weight when located at the mid-point of travel. If the actual percent of counter balance does not conform to the specification, the amount of counterweight shall be adjusted until conformance is reached.
- D. Full-Load Run Test: Elevators shall be tested for a period of one hour continuous run with full contract load in the car. The test run shall consist of the elevator stopping at all floors, in either direction of travel, for not less than five or more than ten seconds per floor.
- E. Speed Test: The actual speed of the elevator shall be determined in both directions of travel with full contract load, balanced load and no load in the elevator. Speed shall be determined by applying a certified tachometer to the car hoisting ropes or governor rope. The actual measured speed of the elevator with all loads in either direction shall be within three (3) percent of specified rated speed. Full speed runs shall be quiet and free from vibration and sway.
- F. Temperature Rise Test: The temperature rise of the hoisting motor shall be determined during the full load test run. Temperatures shall be measured by the use of thermometers. Under these conditions, the temperature rise of the equipment shall not exceed 50 degrees Centigrade above ambient temperature. Test shall start when all machine room equipment is within five (5) degrees Centigrade of the ambient temperature. Other tests for heat runs on motors shall be performed as prescribed by the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers.
- G. Car Leveling Test: Elevator car leveling devices shall be tested for accuracy of leveling at all floors with no load in car, balanced load in car, and with contract load in car, in both directions of travel. Accuracy of floor level shall be within plus or minus 3 mm (1/8 in.) of level with any landing floor for which the stop has been initiated regardless of load in car or direction of travel. The car leveling device shall automatically correct over travel as well as under travel and shall maintain the car floor within plus or minus 3 mm (1/8 in.) of level with the landing floor regardless of change in load.
- H. Brake Test: The action of the brake shall be prompt and a smooth stop shall result in the up and down directions of travel with no load and rated load in the elevator. Down stopping shall be tested with 125 percent of rated load in the elevator.

- I. Insulation Resistance Test: The elevator's complete wiring system shall be free from short circuits and ground faults and the insulation resistance of the system shall be determined by use of megohm meter, at the discretion of the Elevator Inspector conducting the test.
- J. Safety Devices and Governor Tests: The safety devices and governor shall be tested as required by ASME A17.1 Section 8.10.
- K. Overload Devices: Test all overload current protection devices in the system at final inspection.
- L. Limit Stops:
  - 1. The position of the car when stopped by each of the normal limit stops with no load and with contract load in the car shall be accurately measured.
  - 2. Final position of the elevator relative to the terminal landings shall be determined when the elevator has been stopped by the final limits. The lower limit stop shall be made with contract load in the elevator. Elevator shall be operated at inspection speed for both tests. Normal limit stopping devices shall be inoperative for the tests.
- M. Oil Buffer Tests: These tests shall be conducted with operating device and limit stops inoperative and with contract load in the elevator for the car buffer and with no load in the elevator for the counterweight buffer. Preliminary test shall be made at the lowest (leveling) speed. Final tests shall be conducted at contract speed. Buffers shall compress and return to the fully extended position without oil leakage.
- N. Setting of Car Door Contacts: The position of the car door at which the elevator may be started shall be measured. The distance from full closure shall not exceed that required by ASME A17.1. The test shall be made with the hoistway doors closed or the hoistway door contact inoperative.
- O. Setting of Interlocks: The position of the hoistway door at which the elevator may be started shall be measured and shall not exceed ASME A17.1 requirements.
- P. Operating and Signal System: The elevator shall be operated by the operating devices provided and the operation signals and automatic floor leveling shall function in accordance with requirements specified. Starting, stopping and leveling shall be smooth and comfortable without appreciable steps of acceleration or deceleration.

- Q. Performance of the Elevator supervisory system shall be witnessed and approved by the representative of the Resident Engineer.
- R. Evidence of malfunction in any tested system or parts of equipment that occurs during the testing shall be corrected, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost to the Government, and the test repeated.
- S. If equipment fails test requirements and a re-inspection is required, the Contractor shall be responsible for the cost of re-inspection; salaries, transportation expenses, and per-diem expenses incurred by the representative of the Resident Engineer.

### **3.9 INSTRUCTION OF VA PERSONNEL**

- A. Provide competent instruction to VA personnel regarding the operation of equipment and accessories installed under this contract, for a period equal to one eight hour day. Instruction shall commence after completion of all work and at the time and place directed by the Resident Engineer.
- B. Written instructions in triplicate relative to care, adjustments and operation of all equipment and accessories shall be furnished and delivered to the Resident Engineer in independently bound folders. DVD recordings will also be acceptable. Written instructions shall include correct and legible wiring diagrams, nomenclature sheet of all electrical apparatus including location of each device, complete and comprehensive sequence of operation, complete replacement parts list with descriptive literature, and identification and diagrammatic cuts of equipment and parts. Information shall also include electrical operation characteristics of all circuits, relays, timers, and electronic devices, as well as R.P.M. values and related characteristics for all rotating equipment.
- C. Provide supplementary instruction for any new equipment that may become necessary because of changes, modifications or replacement of equipment or operation under requirements of paragraph entitled "Warranty of Construction".

### **3.10 INSPECTIONS AND SERVICE: GUARANTEE PERIOD OF SERVICE**

- A. Furnish complete inspection and maintenance service on entire elevator installation for a period of one (1) year after completion and acceptance of all the elevators in this specification by the Resident Engineer. This maintenance service shall run concurrently with the warranty. Maintenance work shall be performed by Certified Elevator Mechanics and Apprentices employed and supervised by the company that

is providing guaranteed period of service on the elevator equipment specified herein.

- B. This contract will cover full maintenance including emergency call back service, inspections, and servicing the elevators listed in the schedule of elevators. The Elevator Contractor shall perform the following:
1. Bi-weekly systematic examination of equipment.
  2. During each maintenance visit the Elevator Contractor shall clean, lubricate, adjust, repair and replace all parts as necessary to keep the equipment in first class condition and proper working order.
  3. Furnishing all lubricant, cleaning materials, parts and tools necessary to perform the work required. Lubricants shall be only those products recommended by the manufacturer of the equipment.
  4. Equalizing tension, shorten or renew hoisting ropes where necessary to maintain the safety factor.
  5. As required, motors, controllers, selectors, leveling devices, operating devices, switches on cars and in hoistways, hoistway doors and car doors or gate operating device, interlock contacts, guide shoes, guide rails, car door sills, hangers for doors, car doors or gates, signal system, car safety device, governors, tension and sheaves in pit shall be cleaned, lubricated and adjusted.
  6. Guide rails, overhead sheaves and beams, counterweight frames, and bottom of platforms shall be cleaned every three months. Car tops and machine room floors shall be cleaned monthly. Accumulated rubbish shall be removed from the pits monthly. A general cleaning of the entire installation including all machine room equipment and hoistway equipment shall be accomplished quarterly. Cleaning supplies and vacuum cleaner shall be furnished by the Contractor.
  7. Maintain the performance standards set forth in this specification.
  8. The operational system shall be maintained to the standards specified hereinafter including any changes or adjustments required to meet varying conditions of hospital occupancy.
  9. Maintain smooth starting and stopping and accurate leveling at all times.
- C. Maintenance service shall not include the performance of work required as a result of improper use, accidents, and negligence for which the Elevator Contractor is not directly responsible.



- D. Provide 24 hour emergency call-back service that shall consist of promptly responding to calls within two hours for emergency service should a shutdown or emergency develop between regular examinations. Overtime emergency call-back service shall be limited to minor adjustments and repairs required to protect the immediate safety of the equipment and persons in and about the elevator.
- E. Service and emergency personnel shall report to the Resident Engineer or his authorized representative upon arrival at the hospital and again upon completion of the required work. A copy of the work ticket containing a complete description of the work performed shall be given to the Resident Engineer or his authorized representative.
- F. The Elevator Contractor shall maintain a log book in the machine room. The log shall list the date and time of all weekly examinations and all trouble calls. Each trouble call shall be fully described including the nature of the call, necessary correction performed or parts replaced.
- G. Written "Maintenance Control Program" shall be in place to maintain the equipment in compliance with ASME A17.1 Section 8.6.

- - - E N D - - -